7475210

THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

TO ALL TO WHOM THESE PRESENTS SHALL COME:

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

United States Patent and Trademark Office

April 24, 2014

THIS IS TO CERTIFY THAT ANNEXED IS A TRUE COPY FROM THE RECORDS OF THIS OFFICE OF THE FILE WRAPPER AND CONTENTS OF:

APPLICATION NUMBER: *11/229,762*
FILING DATE: *January 13, 2006*
PATENT NUMBER: *7237634*
ISSUE DATE: *July 03, 2007*

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE · DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Certified by

David J. Kappos

Under Secretary of Commerce
for Intellectual Property
and Director of the United States
Patent and Trademark Office

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

RULE 60 APPLICATION

Atty. Dkt. PAICE201.DIV.2

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Sir:

This is a request for filing a **divisional** application under 37 CFR § 1.60 of pending prior application Serial No. 10/382,577 filed on March 7, 2003 entitled Hybrid Vehicles

Full Name of first joint inventor: Alex J. Severinsky

Residence: Washington, D.C. Citizenship: U.S.

Post Office Address: 4704 Foxhall Crescent, Washington D. C. 20007

Full Name of second joint inventor: Theodore Louckes

Residence: Holly, Michigan Citizenship: U.S.

Post Office Address: 10398 Appomattox, Holly, MI 48442

X Enclosed is a copy of the prior application as originally filed. I hereby verify that the attached papers are a true copy of the prior application Serial No. 10/382,577 as originally filed on March 7, 2003.

X The filing fee is calculated below: Claims as filed, less any claims canceled:

								LARGE ENTITY
CLAIMS					Basic Filing Fee:			$300
Total	7	-	20	=	0	x	$50	$0
Indep.	3	-	3	=	0	x	$200	$0

Search fee	$500
Examination fee	$200

The PTO did not receive the following listed Items(s) page 8 of 109 of Spec.

Size fee (110 sheets text, 17 sheets of drawing) $500

Total Fee $1500

X The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge fees under 37 CFR § 1.16 and § 1.17 which may be required, or credit any overpayment of Deposit Account No. 04-0401. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.

___ Status as a "small entity" under 37 CFR 1.9 is claimed by way of the attached declaration.

___ A preliminary amendment is enclosed.

___ An information disclosure statement is enclosed.

X Cancel the following claims before calculating the filing fee: 1 - 9.

X A check in the amount of $ 1500.00 is enclosed.

___ Priority of application Serial No. _________ filed on _____ in (country) ___________ is claimed under 35 U.S.C. § 119.

a) ____ Certified copy is on file in prior application Serial No. _________ filed ____________________.

b) ____ Certified copy filed herewith.

X Amend the specification by inserting following before the first line thereof:

This is a **divisional** application of application Serial No. 10/382,577 filed March 7, 2003, which was a divisional application of Ser. No. 09/822,866 filed April 2, 2001, now Patent 6,554,088, which was a continuation-in-part of Ser. No 09/264,817 filed March 9, 1999, now U.S. patent 6,209,672, issued April 3, 2001, which in turn claimed priority from provisional application Ser. No. 60/100,095, filed September 14, 1998, and was also a continuation-in-part of Ser. No 09/392,743, filed September 9, 1999, now U. S. patent 6,338,391 issued January 15, 2002, in turn claiming priority from provisional application Ser. No. 60/122,296, filed March 1, 1999.

___ Transfer the drawings for the prior application to this application, and abandon said prior application as of the filing date accorded this application. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed for filing in the prior application file.

X New formal drawings are enclosed.

X The prior application is assigned of record to PAICE LLC via a document dated April 28, 2004 and recorded by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office on April 28, 2004 at Reel 014546 Frame 0351.

X The power of attorney in the prior application (filed in grandparent application Ser. No. 09/822,866) is to Michael de Angeli, Reg. No. 27,869. The power was filed June 26, 2001.

X Address all future communications to:

Michael de Angeli
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown RI 02835
401-423-3190

X The undersigned declare further that all statements made herein of his own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon.

Respectfully submitted,

Sept. 18, 2005
Dated

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown RI 02835
401-423-3190

HYBRID VEHICLES

Inventors: Alex J. Severinsky
Theodore N. Louckes

Cross-Reference to Related Applications

This application is a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 09/264,817, filed March 9, 1999, now U. S. patent 6,209,672, issued April 3, 2001, which in turn claims priority from provisional application Ser. No. 60/100,095, filed September 14, 1998, and is also a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 09/392,743, filed September 9, 1999, which in turn claims priority from provisional application Ser. No. 60/122,296, filed March 1, 1999.

Field of the Invention

This application relates to improvements in hybrid vehicles, that is, vehicles in which both an internal combustion engine and one or more electric motors are provided to supply torque to the driving wheels of the vehicle. More particularly, this invention relates to a hybrid electric vehicle that is fully competitive with presently conventional vehicles as regards performance, operating convenience, and cost, while achieving substantially improved fuel economy and reduced pollutant emissions.

Discussion of the Prior Art

For many years great attention has been given to the problem of reduction of fuel consumption of automobiles and other highway vehicles. Concomitantly very substantial attention has been paid to reduction of pollutants emitted by automobiles and other vehicles. To a degree, efforts to solve these problems conflict with one another. For example, increased thermodynamic efficiency and thus reduced fuel consumption can be realized if an engine is operated at higher temperatures. Thus there has been substantial interest in engines built of ceramic materials withstanding higher combustion temperatures than those now in use. However, higher combustion temperatures in gasoline-fueled engines lead to increase in certain undesirable pollutants, typically NO_x.

Another possibility for reducing emissions is to burn mixtures of gasoline and ethanol ("gasohol"), or straight ethanol. However, to date ethanol has not become economically competitive with gasoline, and consumers have not accepted ethanol to any great degree. Moreover, to make an alternate fuel such as ethanol available to the extent necessary to achieve appreciable improvements in nationwide air quality and fuel conservation would require immense costs for infrastructure improvements; not only the entire nation's motor fuel production and delivery system, but also the vehicle manufacture, distribution, and repair system, would have to be extensively revised or substantially duplicated.

One proposal for reducing pollution in cities is to limit the use of vehicles powered by internal combustion engines and instead employ electric vehicles powered by rechargeable batteries. To date, all such "straight electric" cars have had very limited range, typically no more than 150 miles, have insufficient power for acceleration and hill climbing except when the batteries are substantially fully charged, and require substantial time for battery recharging. Thus, while there are many circumstances in which the limited range and extended recharging time of the batteries would not be an inconvenience, such cars are not suitable for all the travel requirements of most individuals. Accordingly, an electric car would have to be an additional vehicle for most users, posing a substantial economic deterrent. Moreover, it will be appreciated that in the United States most electricity is generated in coal-fired power plants, so that using electric vehicles merely moves the source of the pollution, but does not eliminate it. Furthermore, comparing the respective net costs per mile of driving, electric vehicles are not competitive with ethanol-fueled vehicles, much less with conventional gasoline-fueled vehicles. See, generally, Simanaitis, "Electric Vehicles", *Road & Track*, May 1992, pp. 126-136; Reynolds, "AC Propulsion CRX", *Road & Track,* October 1992, pp. 126-129.

Brooks et al U.S. patent 5,492,192 shows such an electric vehicle; the invention appears to be directed to incorporation of antilock braking and traction control technologies into an otherwise conventional electric vehicle.

Much attention has also been paid over the years to development of electric vehicles including internal combustion engines powering generators, thus eliminating the defect of limited range exhibited by simple electric vehicles. The simplest such vehicles operate on the same general principle as diesel-electric locomotives used by most railroads. In such systems, an internal combustion engine drives a generator providing electric power to traction motors connected directly to the wheels of the vehicle. This system has the advantage that no variable gear ratio transmission is required between the engine and the wheels of the vehicle.

More particularly, an internal combustion engine produces zero torque at zero engine speed (RPM) and reaches its torque peak somewhere in the middle of its operating range. Accordingly, all vehicles driven directly by an internal combustion engine (other than certain single-speed vehicles using friction or centrifugal clutches, and not useful for normal driving) require a variable-ratio transmission between the engine and the wheels, so that the engine's torque can be matched to the road speeds and loads encountered. Further, some sort of clutch must be provided so that the engine can be mechanically decoupled from the wheels, allowing the vehicle to stop while the engine is still running, and to allow some slippage of the engine with respect to the drive train while starting from a stop. It would not be practical to provide a diesel locomotive, for example, with a multiple speed transmission, or a clutch. Accordingly, the additional complexity of the generator and electric traction motors is accepted. Electric traction motors produce full torque at zero RPM and thus can be connected directly to the wheels; when it is desired that the train should accelerate, the diesel engine is simply throttled to increase the generator output and the train begins to move.

The same drive system may be employed in a smaller vehicle such as an automobile or truck, but has several distinct disadvantages in this application. In particular, and as discussed in detail below in connection with Figs. 1 and 2, it is well known that a gasoline or other internal combustion engine is most efficient when producing near its maximum output torque. Typically, the number of diesel locomotives on a train is selected in accordance with the total tonnage to be moved and the grades to be overcome, so that all the locomotives can be operated at nearly full torque production. Moreover, such locomotives tend to be run at steady speeds for long periods of time. Reasonably efficient fuel use is thus achieved. However, such a direct drive vehicle would not achieve good fuel efficiency in typical automotive use, involving many short trips, frequent stops in traffic, extended low-speed operation and the like.

So-called "series hybrid" electric vehicles have been proposed for automotive use, wherein batteries are used as energy storage devices, so that an internal combustion engine provided to power a generator can be operated in its most fuel-efficient output power range while still allowing the electric traction motor(s) powering the vehicle to be operated as required. Thus the engine may be loaded by supplying torque to a generator charging the batteries while supplying electrical power to the traction motor(s) as required, so as to operate efficiently. This system overcomes the limitations of electric vehicles noted above with respect to limited range and long recharge times. Thus, as compared to a conventional vehicle, wherein the internal combustion engine delivers torque directly to the wheels, in a series hybrid electric vehicle, torque is delivered from the engine to the wheels via a serially connected generator used as a battery charger, the battery, and the traction motor. However, energy transfer between those components consumes at least approximately 25% of engine power. Further, such components add substantially to the cost and weight of the vehicle; in particular, an electric motor capable of providing sufficient torque to meet all expected demand, e.g., to allow reasonable performance under acceleration, during hill-climbing and the like, is rather heavy and expensive. Thus, series hybrid vehicles have not been immediately successful.

A more promising "parallel hybrid" approach is shown in U.S. Patent Nos. 3,566,717 and 3,732,751 to Berman et al. In Berman et al an internal combustion engine and an electric motor are matched through a complex gear train so that both can provide torque directly to the wheels, the vehicle being operated in several different modes. Where the output of the internal combustion engine is more than necessary to drive the vehicle ("first mode operation") the engine is run at constant speed and excess power is converted by a first motor/generator ("speeder") to electrical energy for storage in a battery. In "second mode operation", the internal combustion engine drives the wheels directly, and is throttled. When more power is needed than the engine can provide, a second motor/generator or "torquer" provides additional torque as needed.

Berman et al thus show two separate electric motor/generators separately powered by the internal combustion engine; the "speeder" charges the batteries, while the "torquer" propels the vehicle forward in traffic. This arrangement is a source of additional complexity, cost and difficulty, as two separate modes of engine control are required. Moreover, the operator must control the transition between the several modes of operation. Such a complex vehicle is unsuited for the automotive market. Automobiles intended for mass production can be no more complicated to operate than conventional vehicles, and must be essentially "foolproof", that is, resistant to damage that might be caused by operator error. Further, the gear train shown by Berman et al appears to be quite complex and difficult to manufacture economically. Berman et al also indicate that one or even two variable-speed transmissions may be required; see, e.g., col. 3, lines 19 - 22 and 36 - 38 of patent 3,566,717, and col. 2, lines 53 - 55 of patent 3,732,751.

Lynch et al patent 4,165,795 also shows an early parallel hybrid drive. Lynch argues that maximum fuel efficiency can be realized when a relatively small internal combustion engine is provided, such that when the engine is operated at an efficient speed, it produces approximately the average power required over a typical mission. The example given is of an engine producing 25 hp maximum and 17 hp at its most efficient speed, about 2500 rpm. This is to be combined with an electric motor-generator of about 30 peak hp. This vehicle requires a variable-ratio transmission to achieve reasonable performance. It appears that the engine is to be run continuously, at a steady speed, with additional torque provided by the motor when needed and excess torque produced by the engine being used to charge the batteries. In a first embodiment, torque provided by the motor is transmitted to the drive wheels through the engine, while in a second embodiment their respective positions are reversed.

Nishida U.S. patent 5,117,931 shows a parallel hybrid vehicle where torque from an electric motor may be combined with torque from an internal combustion engine in a "torque transmission unit" comprising paired bevel gears and means for controlling the relative rates of rotation of the motor and engine, so that the motor can be used to start the engine, absorb excess torque from the engine (by charging a battery), or provide additional propulsive torque. A variable-speed transmission is coupled between the torque transmission unit and the propelling wheels. Both the torque transmission unit and the variable-speed transmission are complex, heavy, and expensive components, the use of which would preferably be avoided.

Helling U.S. patent 3,923,115 also shows a hybrid vehicle having a torque transmission unit for combining torque from an electric motor and an internal combustion engine. However, in

Helling the relative rates of rotation of the motor and engine input shafts are fixed; a flywheel is provided to store excess mechanical energy as well as a battery to store excess electrical energy. Albright, Jr. et al patent 4,588,040 shows another hybrid drive scheme using a flywheel in addition to batteries to store excess energy; various complicated mechanical connections are provided between the various components. Capacitors have also been proposed for energy storage; see Bates et al U.S. patent 5,318,142.

Fjällström U.S. patent 5,120,282 shows a parallel hybrid drive train wherein torque from two electric motors is combined with torque produced by an internal combustion engine; the combination is performed by a complex arrangement of paired planetary gearsets, and unspecified control means are alleged to be able to allow variation of road speed without a variable-ratio transmission.

Hunt U.S. Patent Nos. 4,405,029 and 4,470,476 also disclose parallel hybrids requiring complex gearing arrangements, including multiple speed transmissions. More specifically, the Hunt patents disclose several embodiments of parallel hybrid vehicles. Hunt indicates (see col. 4, lines 6 - 20 of the '476 patent) that an electric motor may drive the vehicle at low speeds up to 20 mph, and an internal combustion engine used for speeds above 20 mph, while "in certain speed ranges, such as from 15 - 30 mph, both power sources may be energized... Additionally, both power sources could be utilized under heavy load conditions." Hunt also indicates that "the vehicle could be provided with an automatic changeover device which automatically shifts from the electrical power source to the internal combustion power source, depending on the speed of the vehicle" (col. 4, lines 12 - 16).

However, the Hunt vehicle does not meet the objects of the present invention, as discussed in detail below. Hunt's vehicle in each embodiment requires a conventional manual or automatic transmission. See col. 2, lines 6 - 7. Moreover, the internal combustion engine is connected to the transfer case (wherein torque from the internal combustion engine and electric motor is combined) to provide additional torque and additional regenerative braking as needed.

More particularly, the latter Kawakatsu patent asserts that a single electric motor sized to provide sufficient torque to propel the vehicle would not be capable of providing sufficient regenerative braking force; see col. 1, line 50 - col. 2 line 8. Accordingly, Kawakatsu provides two separate motor/generators, as noted; a separate engine starting motor is also provided. See col. 6, lines 22 - 23. In the embodiment shown, the larger motor/generator is connected to the wheel drive shaft, while the engine and the smaller motor/generator are connected to the wheels through a complex mechanism comprising three separately-controllable clutches. See col. 5, lines 50 - 62.

Numerous patents disclose hybrid vehicle drives tending to fall into one or more of the categories discussed above. A number of patents disclose systems wherein an operator is required to select between electric and internal combustion operation; for example, an electric motor is provided for operation inside buildings where exhaust fumes would be dangerous, and an internal combustion engine provided for operation outdoors. It is also known to propose a hybrid vehicle comprising an electric motor for use at low speeds, and an internal combustion engine for use at higher speed. The art also suggests using both when maximum torque is required. In several cases the electric motor drives one set of wheels and the internal combustion engine drives a different set. See generally Shea (4,180,138); Fields et al (4,351,405); Kenyon (4,438,342); Krohling (4,593,779); and Ellers (4,923,025).

Many of these patents show hybrid vehicle drives wherein a variable speed transmission is required, as do numerous additional references. A transmission as noted above is typically required where the internal combustion engine and/or the electric motor are not capable of supplying sufficient torque at low speeds. See Rosen (3,791,473); Rosen (4,269,280); Fiala (4,400,997); and Wu et al (4,697,660). Kinoshita (3,970,163) shows a vehicle of this general type wherein a gas turbine engine is coupled to the road wheels through a three-speed transmission; an electric motor is provided to supply additional torque at low speeds.

For further examples of series hybrid vehicles generally as discussed above, see Bray (4,095,664); Cummings (4,148,192); Monaco et al (4,306,156); Park (4,313,080); McCarthy (4,354,144); Heidemeyer (4,533,011); Kawamura (4,951,769); and Suzuki et al (5,053,632). Various of these address specific problems arising in the manufacture or use of hybrid vehicles, or specific alleged design improvements. For example, Park addresses certain specifics of battery charging and discharge characteristics, while McCarthy shows a complex drive system involving an internal combustion engine driving two electric motors; the torque generated by the latter is combined in a complex differential providing continuously variable gear ratios. Heidemeyer shows connecting an internal combustion engine to an electric motor by a first friction clutch, and connecting the motor to a transmission by a second friction clutch.

Other patents of general relevance to this subject matter include Toy (3,525,874), showing a series hybrid using a gas turbine as internal combustion engine; Yardney (3,650,345), showing use of a compressed-air or similar mechanical starter for the internal combustion engine of a series hybrid, such that batteries of limited current capacity could be used; and Nakamura (3,837,419), addressing improvements in thyristor battery-charging and motor drive circuitry. Somewhat further afield but of general interest are the disclosures of Deane (3,874,472); Horwinski (4,042,056); Yang (4,562,894); Keedy (4,611,466); and Lexen (4,815,334); Mori (3,623,568); Grady, Jr. (3,454,122); Papst (3,211,249); Nims et al (2,666,492); and Matsukata (3,502,165). Additional references showing parallel hybrid vehicle drive systems include Froelich (1,824,014) and Reinbeck (3,888,325).U.S. Patent No. 4,578,955 to Medina shows a hybrid system wherein a gas turbine is used to drive a generator as needed to charge batteries. Of particular interest to certain aspects of the present invention is that Medina discloses that the battery pack should have a voltage in the range of 144, 168 or 216 volts and the generator should deliver current in the range of 400 to 500 amperes. Those of skill in the art will recognize that these high currents involve substantial resistance heating losses, and additionally require that all electrical connections be made by positive mechanical means such as bolts and nuts, or by welding. More specifically, for reasons of safety and in accordance with industry practice, currents in excess of about 50 amperes cannot be carried by the conventional plug-in connectors preferred for reasons of convenience and economy, but must be carried by much heavier, more expensive and less convenient fixed connectors (as used on conventional starter and battery cable connections). Accordingly, it would be desirable to operate the electric motor of a hybrid vehicle at lower currents.

U.S. patent 5,765,656 to Weaver also shows a series hybrid wherein a gas turbine is used as the internal combustion engine; hydrogen is the preferred fuel.

U.S. Patent No. 4,439,989 to Yamakawa shows a system wherein two different internal combustion engines are provided, so that only one need be run when the load is low. This arrangement would be complex and expensive to manufacture.

Detailed discussion of various aspects of hybrid vehicle drives may be found in Kalberlah, "Electric Hybrid Drive Systems for Passenger Cars and Taxis", SAE Paper No. 910247 (1991). Kalberlah first compares "straight" electric, series hybrid, and parallel hybrid drive trains, and concludes that parallel hybrids are preferable, at least when intended for general use (that is, straight electric vehicles may be useful under certain narrow conditions of low-speed, limited range urban driving). Kalberlah then compares various forms of parallel hybrids, with respect to his Fig. 4, and concludes that the most practical arrangement is one in which an internal combustion engine drives a first pair of wheels, and an electric motor the second; more particularly, Kalberlah indicates that mechanical combination of the torque from an internal combustion engine and an electric motor is impractical.

Gardner U.S. patents 5,301,764 and 5,346,031 follow Kalberlah's teachings, in that Gardner shows separately driving at least two pairs of wheels; one pair is driven by a first electric motor, and the second by a second electric motor or alternatively by a small internal combustion engine. Three different clutches are provided to allow various sources of drive torque to be connected to the wheels, and to a generator, depending on the vehicle's operation mode. The internal combustion engine is run continuously, and provides the driving torque when the vehicle is in a cruise mode; at other times it is used to charge the batteries powering the electric motors.

Bullock, "The Technological Constraints of Mass, Volume, Dynamic Power Range and Energy Capacity on the Viability of Hybrid and Electric Vehicles", SAE Paper No. 891659 (1989) provides a detailed theoretical analysis of electric vehicles in terms of the loads thereon, and a careful analysis of the various battery types then available. Bullock concludes that a vehicle having two electric motors of differing characteristics, driving the wheels through a variable-speed transmission, would be optimal for automotive use; see the discussion of Fig. 8. Bullock also suggests the use of an internal combustion engine to drive battery charging, but does not address combining the engine's torque with that from the motors; see pp. 24 - 25.

Further related papers are collected in Electric and Hybrid Vehicle Technology, volume SP-915, published by SAE in February 1992. See also Wouk, "Hybrids: Then and Now"; Bates, "On the road with a Ford HEV", and King et al, "Transit Bus takes the Hybrid Route", all in IEEE Spectrum, Vol. 32, 7, (July 1995).

Urban et al U.S. patent 5,667,029 shows two embodiments of parallel hybrids; a first embodiment is shown in Figs. 1 - 9 and 11, and a second in Figs. 12 - 17. Both embodiments have numerous common features, including similar operating modes. Referring to the first embodiment, an internal combustion engine provides torque to the road wheels or to a generator; two electric motors can provide torque to the road wheels, or charge batteries during regenerative braking. Torque from the engine and motors is combined at the input shaft to a variable-ratio transmission. Overrunning clutches are provided, e.g., to allow the engine's torque to be applied to the road wheels without also rotating the motors.

As indicated at col. 6, lines 25 - 54, certain transitions between various operating modes are made automatically, responsive to the position of the accelerator pedal; for example, if the operator does not depress the pedal beyond a given point, only the internal combustion engine is employed to propel the vehicle; if the operator depresses the pedal more fully, the electric motors are also energized. Other changes in the operational mode must be made by the operator directly; for example, the vehicle may be operated as a "straight electric" vehicle, e.g. for short duration trips, by the operator's making an appropriate control action. See col. 7, lines 49 - 56.

The Urban et al design appears to suffer from a number of significant defects. First, the internal combustion engine is stated to provide all torque needed to accelerate the vehicle to cruising speed under normal circumstances (see col. 5, lines 3 - 10), and also to propel the vehicle during cruising (see col. 6, lines 48 - 54). The electric motors are to be used only during rapid acceleration and hill-climbing; col. 5, lines 10 - 13. A 20 horsepower engine, operated through a continuously variable-ratio transmission and a torque converter, is stated to be adequate for this purpose. Such components are clearly complex and expensive; further, torque converters are notoriously inefficient. Moreover, using the internal combustion engine as the sole source of power for low-speed running would require it to be run at low speeds, e.g., at traffic lights, which is very inefficient and highly polluting. (Various additional references suggest that excess torque can be used to charge batteries; if this were incorporated in the Urban system, the engine might be run at a reasonably efficient output level while the vehicle was stationary, but this would lead to high levels of noise and vibration. In any event Urban does not appear to consider this possibility.)

On the other hand, Urban does suggest that the vehicle can be operated as a "straight electric" under low-speed conditions, but this requires the operator to provide an explicit control input; this complexity is unacceptable in a vehicle intended to be sold in quantity, as would be required in order to reach Urban's stated goals of reduction of atmospheric pollution and reduced energy consumption. As noted, hybrid vehicle operation must be essentially "foolproof", or "transparent" to the user, to have any chance of commercial success.

Urban's second embodiment is mechanically simpler, employing but a single "dynamotor", through which torque is transmitted from the engine to the variable-ratio transmission, but suffers from the same operational deficiencies.

A second Urban et al patent, 5,704,440, is directed to the method of operation of the vehicle of the '029 patent and suffers the same inadequacies.

Various articles describe several generations of Toyota Motor Company hybrid vehicles, believed to correspond to that available commercially as the "Prius". See, for example, Yamaguchi, "Toyota readies gasoline/electric hybrid system", Automotive Engineering, July 1997, pp. 55 - 58; Wilson, "Not Electric, Not Gasoline, But Both", Autoweek, June 2, 1997, pp. 17 - 18; Bulgin, "The Future Works, Quietly", Autoweek February 23, 1998, pp. 12 and 13; and "Toyota Electric and Hybrid Vehicles", a Toyota brochure. A more detailed discussion of the Toyota vehicle's powertrain is found in Nagasaka et al, "Development of the Hybrid/Battery ECU for the Toyota Hybrid System", SAE paper 981122 (1998), pp. 19 - 27. According to the Wilson article, Toyota describes this vehicle as a "series-parallel hybrid"; regardless of the label applied, its powertrain appears to be similar to that of the Berman patents described above, that is, torque from either or both of an internal combustion engine and an electric motor are controllably combined in a "power-split mechanism" and transmitted to the drive wheels through a planetary gearset providing the functionality of a variable-ratio transmission. See the Nagasaka article at pp. 19 - 20.

Furutani U.S. patent 5,495,906 describes a vehicle having an internal combustion engine driving a first set of wheels through a variable-ratio transmission and an electric motor driving a second set of wheels. The engine is apparently intended to be run continuously; at low speeds, it drives a generator to charge batteries providing energy to the motor, and at higher speeds the engine or both engine and motor propel the vehicle. In some circumstances the transmission may not be required; compare, for example, col. 3, lines 4 - 8 with col. 5, lines 59 - 64.

U.S. patent 5,842,534 to Frank shows a "charge depletion" control method for hybrid vehicles; in this scheme, the internal combustion engine is essentially used only when the state of the batteries is such that the vehicle cannot otherwise reach a recharging point. See col. 3, lines 50 - 55. In normal operation, the batteries are recharged from an external power source. Frank also discusses two-mode brake pedal operation, wherein mechanical brakes are engaged in addition to regenerative braking when the pedal is depressed beyond a preset point.

U.S. patent 5,823,280 to Lateur et al shows a parallel hybrid wherein the shafts of an internal combustion engine and first and second electric motors are all coaxial; the engine is connected to the first motor by a clutch, and the first motor to the second by a planetary gearset, allowing the speeds of the motors to be varied so as to operate them in their most efficient range. See col. 4, line 57 - col. 5, line 60.

U.S. patent 5,826,671 to Nakae et al shows a parallel hybrid wherein torque from an internal combustion engine is combined with that from a motor in a planetary gearset; a clutch is provided therebetween. The specific invention relates to sensing of engine warmup conditions, so as to limit emission of unburnt fuel and thus lower emissions.

U.S. patent 5,846,155 to Taniguchi et al shows a parallel hybrid wherein torque from an internal combustion engine and a motor is again combined in a planetary gearset; the specific improvement appears to be the use of a continuously-variable transmission.

It will be appreciated by those of skill in the art that there are significant limitations inherent in the use of planetary gearsets as a means for connecting different sources, e.g., an internal combustion engine and an electric motor, to the drive wheels of a vehicle, namely, that unless the planetary gearset is effectively locked (anathematic to its use as a continuously-variable transmission, e.g., in the Toyota vehicle) it is capable of additive combination of shaft speeds, but not of output torque. Hence, the principal advantage of the parallel hybrid drivetrain, additive combination of the output torque of both the electric motor and the internal combustion engine, is only available when the planetary gearset is locked. This fact is acknowledged by Lateur, for example, at col. 6, line 27.

Additional disclosures of possible interest include U.S. patent 5,845,731 to Buglione et al; this patent issued December 8, 1998, and therefore is not necessarily available as a reference against the claims of the present application. The basic powertrain shown by Buglione et al includes an internal combustion engine 12, coupled through a first clutch 18 to a first electric motor 20, coupled to a second electric motor 26 through a second clutch 24; the wheels are (apparently; see col. 3, line 8) driven by the second motor 26. The overall hybrid operational scheme provided by Buglione et al is illustrated in Fig. 4. At low speeds one or both motors may be used to propel the vehicle, with the engine off, idling, or running to drive one motor as a generator. During low-speed cruising the second motor propels the vehicle, while during high-speed cruising, the engine propels the vehicle. When acceleration is required at high speed, the engine and both motors may be used to propel the vehicle. Buglione et al also indicates that a variable-ratio transmission may be unnecessary, col. 3, line 9, and that the first motor can be used to start the engine, col. 4, lines 8 - 15.

U.S. patent 5,586,613 to Ehsani, showing an "electrically peaking hybrid" vehicle is also of interest. Ehsani's vehicle is shown in several embodiments; in each, an engine is apparently to be run continuously, with excess torque used to charge the batteries, and one or more motors used to provide additional propulsive torque when the engine's output torque is inadequate. A transmission is provided in some embodiments of the Ehsani vehicle. An embodiment involving two motors is shown in Fig. 7, and can be modified as discussed in the text at col. 9, lines 4 - 5. Fig. 7 itself shows driving a first set of wheels by a first "electric machine", i.e., a motor capable of operation as a generator. This drive arrangement is independent of a second drive arrangement, whereby a second set of wheels is driven by an engine connected through a first clutch to a second electric machine, connected to the second set of wheels by a second clutch. Ehsani suggests at col. 9, lines 4 - 5 that the drive shaft otherwise coupled to the first electric machine could also be driven by the engine. Although it is not made explicit that the first electric machine is to be retained, this seems likely; otherwise, the modified Fig. 7 embodiment would be the same as Ehsani's Fig. 1, modified to have all four wheels driven by a common driveshaft.

This application discloses a number of improvements over and enhancements to the hybrid vehicles disclosed in U.S. patent 5,343,970 (the "'970 patent"), to one of the present inventors, which is incorporated herein by this reference. Where differences are not mentioned, it is to be understood that the specifics of the vehicle design shown in the '970 patent are applicable to the vehicles shown herein as well. Discussion of the '970 patent herein is not to be construed to limit the scope of its claims.

Generally speaking, the '970 patent discloses hybrid vehicles wherein a controllable torque transfer unit is provided capable of transferring torque between an internal combustion engine, an electric motor, and the drive wheels of the vehicle. The direction of torque transfer is controlled by a microprocessor responsive to the mode of operation of the vehicle, to provide highly efficient operation over a wide variety of operating conditions, and while providing good performance. The flow of energy - either electrical energy stored in a substantial battery bank, or chemical energy stored as combustible fuel - is similarly controlled by the microprocessor.

For example, according to the operating scheme of the hybrid vehicle disclosed in the '970 patent, in low-speed city driving, the electric motor provides all torque needed responsive to energy flowing from the battery. In high-speed highway driving, where the internal-combustion engine can be operated efficiently, it typically provides all torque; additional torque may be provided by the electric motor as needed for acceleration, hill-climbing, or passing. The electric motor is also used to start the internal-combustion engine, and can be operated as a generator by appropriate connection of its windings by a solid-state, microprocessor-controlled inverter. For example, when the state of charge of the battery bank is relatively depleted, e.g., after a lengthy period of battery-only operation in city traffic, the internal combustion engine is started and drives the motor at between 50 and 100% of its maximum torque output, for efficient charging of the battery bank. Similarly, during braking or hill descent, the kinetic energy of the vehicle can be turned into stored electrical energy by regenerative braking.

The hybrid drive train shown in the '970 patent has many advantages with respect to the prior art which are retained by the present invention. For example, the electric drive motor is selected to be of relatively high power, specifically, equal to or greater than that of the internal combustion engine, and to have high torque output characteristics at low speeds; this allows the conventional multi-speed vehicle transmission to be eliminated. As compared to the prior art, the battery bank, motor/generator, and associated power circuitry are operated at relatively high voltage and relatively low current, reducing losses due to resistive heating and simplifying component selection and connection.

It can thus be seen that while the prior art, including the '970 patent, clearly discloses the desirability of operating an internal combustion engine in its most efficient operating range, and that a battery may be provided to store energy to be supplied to an electric motor in order to even out the load on the internal combustion engine, there remains substantial room for improvement. In particular, it is desired to obtain the operational flexibility of a parallel hybrid system, while optimizing the system's operational parameters and providing a substantially simplified parallel hybrid system as compared to those shown in the prior art, again as including the '970 patent.

As noted above, the present application is a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 09/264,817, filed March 9, 1999 (the '817 application), which discloses and claims several distinct improvements over the hybrid vehicles shown in the '970 patent, as discussed in further detail below. Similarly, the present application is a continuation-in-part of Ser. No. 09/392,743, filed September 9, 1999 (the '743 application), which discloses and claims several distinct improvements over the hybrid vehicles shown in the '970 patent and the '817 application, as discussed in further detail below. The present application discloses and claims further improvements over the vehicles of the '817 and '743 applications.

As discussed in detail below, the '817 and '743 applications (which are not to be limited by this brief summary) disclose a new "topology" for a hybrid vehicle, wherein an internal combustion engine and a first electric "starting" motor, which can be operated as a starter, to start the engine, a generator, to charge the battery bank responsive to torque from the engine or the wheels (i.e., during regenerative braking) or as a source of torque, to propel the vehicle, are connected to the road wheels of the vehicle through a clutch, so that the engine can be decoupled from the wheels during starting and battery charging, but can be connected to the wheels to propel the vehicle. A second "traction" motor is directly connected to the road wheels to propel the vehicle. The vehicle operating mode is determined by a microprocessor responsive to the "road load", that is, the vehicle's instantaneous torque demands. The '743 application further discloses that a turbocharger may be provided, and operated when needed to increase the torque output of the engine when torque in excess of its normally-aspirated capacity is required for more than a minimum time. The present application builds further on these concepts.

Koide U.S. patent 5,934,395 and Schmidt-Brücken U.S. patent 6,059,059 were addressed during the prosecution of the '817 application. Tsuzuki 6,018,198 and Werson 5,986,376 were also each applied against one claim. As indicated, the '817 application discloses a hybrid vehicle comprising a controller, a battery bank, an internal combustion engine, and two electric motors, a starting motor and a traction motor. The starting motor and engine are connected to the road wheels through a clutch, while the traction motor is connected directly and permanently to the road wheels for torque transmission therebetween, i.e., without a clutch therebetween. Koide does not show this "topology" for a hybrid vehicle; although Koide does show a hybrid vehicle having first and second motors along with an engine, the components are not connected as described. Specifically, in Koide, both motors and the engine are connected to the road wheels by way of a variable-ratio transmission and a clutch, while, as noted, in the '817 application only the combination of the engine and starting motor is connected to the wheels through a clutch, while the traction motor is connected directly to the wheels for torque transmission therebetween, that is, without a clutch or variable-ratio transmission. More specifically, Koide's entire disclosure is premised on being able to vary the ratios between the torque-producing components of his system and the road wheels, in order that the engine can be smoothly started when needed. According to the '817 application, only the starter motor and engine need to be disconnectible from the wheels for smooth starting, while the traction motor can be connected to the road wheels at all times. This represents a substantial simplification with respect to the system shown by Koide.

The Schmidt-Brücken patent also fails to show the topology shown in the '817 application. Schmidt-Brücken shows an engine 1 in combination with a starting motor 7, connected to the road wheels through a first clutch 11, and a traction motor 19 connected to the road wheels through a second clutch 23.

The '817 and '743 applications also disclose that the vehicle operating mode is determined by a microprocessor responsive to the "road load", that is, the vehicle's instantaneous torque demands, i.e., that amount of torque required to propel the vehicle at a desired speed. The operator's input, by way of the accelerator or brake pedals, or a "cruise control" device, indicates that continuing at steady speed is desired, or that a change in vehicle speed is called for. For example, the operator's depressing the accelerator pedal signifies an increase in desired speed, i.e., an increase in road load, while reducing the pressure on the accelerator or depressing the brake pedal signifies a desired reduction in vehicle speed, indicating that the torque being supplied is to be reduced or should be negative. More particularly, it is important to note that the road load can vary between wide limits, independent of vehicle speed, and can be positive or negative, i.e., when decelerating or descending a hill, in which case the negative road load (that is, torque available at the wheels in excess of that required to propel the vehicle) is usually employed to charge the battery bank.

More particularly, it is important to recognize that road load is not the same thing as vehicle velocity. Indeed, as noted, road load can be negative while vehicle velocity is positive, as during deceleration or descent. Moreover, widely differing road loads may be encountered during operation at the same velocity; for example, operation at 50 mph on a flat road may involve a road load of only 30 - 40% of the engine's maximum output torque (MTO), while accelerating from the same speed while climbing a hill may involve a road load of well over 100% of MTO.

By the same token, control of the vehicle's operating mode in response to monitoring of road load is not the same as controlling its operating mode in response to vehicle speed. Numerous prior art references, including the Koide and Schmidt-Brücken patents, teach the latter, i.e., indicate the vehicle operating mode should be controlled in response to vehicle speed. See Koide at col. 12, lines 45 - 48, and Schmidt-Brücken at col. 5, line 56 - col. 6 line 29. Neither Koide nor Schmidt-Brücken, nor any other reference of which the inventors are aware, recognizes that the desired vehicle operational mode should preferably be controlled in response to the vehicle's actual torque requirements, i.e., the road load. Doing so according to the invention provides superior performance, in terms of both vehicle response to operator commands and fuel efficiency, under the widely-varying conditions encountered in "real world" driving situations, than is possible according to the prior art.

Moreover, as set forth in the '817 and '743 applications, in order to provide maximum efficiency in use of fuel, it is essential to operate the internal combustion engine of a hybrid vehicle only under circumstances where the engine will be loaded so as to require at least 30% of its maximum torque output ("MTO")(it being understood throughout this specification and the appended claims that this 30% figure is arbitrary and can be varied). If the vehicle is controlled to shift into an engine-only mode whenever it exceeds some arbitrary road speed, as in Koide and Schmidt-Brücken, it is apparent that the engine will be operated at various times when the road load is less than 30% of MTO, for example, during deceleration or during descents. Moreover, as noted above, the torque actually required can vary widely irrespective of vehicle speed. For example, 30% of MTO may be sufficient to maintain steady speed on a flat road, but 150% of MTO may be required for acceleration from the same speed. If the vehicle's operational mode is selected based solely on speed, as taught by Koide and Schmidt-Brücken, it will be incapable of responding to the operator's commands, and will ultimately be unsatisfactory.

By comparison, according to the invention of the '817 and '743 applications, and as further disclosed and claimed herein, the vehicle's operating mode -- that is, the selection of the source of torque needed to propel the vehicle -- is determined based on the amount of torque actually required. In this way the proper combination of engine, traction motor, and starting motor is always available. This apparently-simple point has evidently been missed entirely by the art.

Moreover, according to this aspect of the invention, the engine is used to propel the vehicle only when it is efficient to do so. This is in accordance with another aspect of the invention, wherein the engine is operated only at high efficiency, leading directly to improved fuel economy. For example, the engine is also used as needed to charge the battery bank, e.g., in low-speed city driving, where the battery bank may become depleted. The starter motor, which is operated as a generator in these circumstances, is accordingly sized so as be able to accept at least 30% of MTO as input torque; the battery bank is likewise sized so as to be able to accept a corresponding amount of charging current. Therefore the engine is never operated at less than 30% of MTO, and is thus never operated inefficiently. Koide and Schmidt-Brücken, because they teach switching the vehicle's operational mode based on vehicle speed and not its torque requirements, would inherently operate the engine under less efficient conditions.

Furutani patent 5,495,906 discloses selection of operating mode based on a combination of vehicle speed and "vehicle load"; see, e.g., col. 2, lines 39 - 47: "It is preferable that the running state detection means detects vehicle speed and vehicle load...[and] that the control means transfers the driving force generated by the engine to the power generator and changes the electric power generated by the power generator [i.e., more of the engine power is used to charge the batteries] in accordance with the vehicle load if the vehicle speed is the predetermined value or less. Moreover, it is preferable to change the predetermined value of the vehicle speed in accordance with the vehicle load." It thus appears that Furutani determines the vehicle operating state based on vehicle speed, although the change-over speed can be varied responsive to the vehicle load. Furutani's "vehicle load" thus apparently includes the torque required to charge the battery, as distinguished from applicants' "road load", i.e., the torque required to propel the vehicle. Even assuming that Furutani's "vehicle load", which is not defined, were suggestive of "road load" as used by applicants, Furutani clearly does not suggest determining the operating mode based on road load. More specifically, although Furutani recognizes a distinction between differing vehicle loads, and that the vehicle load can vary independent of vehicle speed, the vehicle operating mode is nonetheless selected based on vehicle speed; see col. 3, line 62 - col. 4, line 32. Instead of varying the operating mode of the vehicle based on road load, Furutani directs more or less of the engine's torque to battery charging; see col. 4, lines 24 - 32.

Frank 6,054,844 shows several embodiments of hybrid vehicles. In those where an engine is used to provide torque to the vehicle wheels, a continuously-variable transmission is employed, and the ratio R is considered in determining the response to be made to operator input, e.g., accelerator and brake pedal positions. Frank's control strategy is to operate the engine along a line of optimal efficiency and use an electric motor to add to or subtract from the engine's output torque as appropriate. See col. 6, line 49 - col. 7, line 7 and col. 10, line 33 - col. 11, line 22. Frank thus does not suggest control of the vehicle operating mode responsive to road load.

Patent 6,018,694 to Egami et al shows a controller for a hybrid vehicle comprising an internal combustion engine and first and second "rotary electric units". Although the question is not free from doubt, it appears from a detailed review of Egami's disclosure that torque from the engine is not supplied directly to the road wheels, but instead is used to drive one of the rotary electric units as a generator, in turn supplying the second with current to provide torque for propelling the vehicle. Hence Egami does not show selection of the operational mode of the vehicle (that is, the determination whether propulsive torque is to be provided from the engine, one or both of the motors, or all three) in response to the road load, since it does not appear that propulsive torque is ever supplied from the engine to the wheels. Moreover, despite making reference to a "vehicle driving torque demand Mv*", which might be misunderstood to be equivalent to applicant's road load, Egami in fact does not determine the road load. More specifically, Mv* is determined by consulting a "map", using "the vehicle speed V, the accelerator lift ACC, the brake state BRK, and the shift position SFT as the input parameters". See col. 22, lines 23 - 26. The same point, i.e., that the "vehicle driving torque demand Mv*" is not equivalent to applicant's claimed road load, is made throughout Egami's extensive specification; see, for example, col. 10, lines 28 - 32 and col. 27, lines 58 - 65.

Deguchi patent 5,993,351 refers to decision-making regarding the vehicle mode of operation "based on the vehicle speed detected value and the required motive force detected value" (Abstract; see also col. 1, line 41); the latter might be misunderstood to be equivalent to the road load. Deguchi also states (col. 2, lines 7

- 9) that the vehicle "runs on the motor at times of low load and runs on the internal combustion engine at times of high load". However, Deguchi makes it clear that in fact the operational-mode decision is made "based on the accelerator aperture detected value θ which represents the required driving force of the vehicle and the detected vehicle speed" (col. 5, lines 19 - 21). The accelerator position and vehicle speed signals are the only relevant inputs to the vehicle controller shown in Fig. 2. Hence Deguchi does not show controlling the vehicle operating mode responsive to road load as defined by applicants.

Along generally similar lines, Boll patent 5,327,992 teaches a hybrid vehicle comprising a diesel engine and a motor on a common shaft, and intended to be operated such that the engine is only operated efficiently, i.e., under relatively high load. The torque required to overcome the "instantaneous tractive resistance" is determined responsive to the deflection of the accelerator pedal, i.e., in response to operator command (see col. 3, line 13 and line 35); when this is less than the minimum amount of torque that can be produced efficently by the engine, the excess torque is used to power the motor as a generator. Boll also suggests that both the motor and engine can be used to propel the vehicle when needed, e.g., during acceleration, and that the vehicle can be operated in four different modes: (a) engine alone powering the vehicle; (b) motor only powering the vehicle, with the engine "generally switched off"; (c)engine and motor both powering the vehicle; and (d) engine powering vehicle, with excess torque powering motor in generator mode. Boll also teaches that a second motor can be provided, operable as a generator and then driven either by the engine directly or by exhaust gas, and that the resulting current can be used to charge the battery or to power the other motor.

Other references of interest are directed to the braking systems of hybrid vehicles, see for example German patent 19 05 641 to Strifler, discussing a method of control of a braking system providing both regenerative and mechanical braking, and the powering of ancillary systems, such as power steering pumps, see U.S. patent 5,249,637 to Heidl. These references are discussed in further detail below with reference to improvements provided in these areas by the present application.

Objects of the Invention

It is an object of the invention to provide an improved hybrid electric vehicle realizing substantially increased fuel economy and reduced pollutant emissions as compared to present day internal combustion and hybrid vehicles while suffering no significant penalty in performance, operating convenience, cost, complexity, or weight, which can be operated efficiently by an operator accustomed to conventional vehicles without special training, and which does not require modification of the existing infrastructure developed over the years to support conventional vehicles.

More specifically, it is an object of the invention to provide such an improved vehicle that operates on fuel now widely available and uses batteries already well understood and widely available, so that the operator need not learn new driving techniques, deal with new fuel supply arrangements, nor be obliged to be attentive to maintenance of batteries employing complex new technologies.

It is a more particular object of the present invention to provide an improved series-parallel hybrid electric vehicle wherein an internal combustion engine and two separately-controlled electric motors can separately or simultaneously apply torque to the driving wheels of the vehicle, controlled to realize maximum fuel efficiency at no penalty in convenience, performance, or cost.

It is a further object of the invention to provide a series-parallel hybrid electric vehicle comprising two electric motors together providing output power equal to at least 100 percent of the rated output power of the internal combustion engine, and more preferably up to about 150 - 200 percent thereof, so that the engine operates under substantially optimum conditions in order to realize substantial fuel economy and reduced emission of undesirable pollutants in operation.

More particularly, it is an object of the invention to provide a series-parallel hybrid electric vehicle wherein the internal combustion engine is sized to efficiently provide the average power required for operation at moderate and highway speeds, with two)or more) separately-controlled electric motors together sized to deliver the additional power needed for acceleration and hill climbing.

Still another object of the invention is to provide a series-parallel hybrid electric vehicle wherein the electric motor and battery charging circuits operate at no more than about 30 - 50 amperes continuous current (although significantly greater currents may flow for short periods, under peak load conditions), whereby resistance heating losses are greatly reduced, and whereby inexpensive and simple electrical manufacturing and connection techniques can be employed.

It is a more specific object of the present invention to provide a hybrid drive system for vehicles that does not require the controllable torque-transfer unit shown in the '970 patent, while providing the functional advantages of the hybrid vehicle shown in the '970 patent.

It is a more specific object of the invention to employ the control flexibility provided by the improved hybrid drive train of the invention to allow starting of the engine at comparatively high RPM, while controlling the fuel/air mixture supplied during starting, throttling the engine, and providing a preheated catalytic converter, minimizing emission of unburned fuel and further improving fuel economy.

It is a more specific object of the invention to employ the control flexibility provided by the improved hybrid drive train of the invention to allow employment of a motor producing substantially constant torque up to a base speed, and substantially constant power thereafter, as the engine starting motor, so that torque produced thereby can also be used to propel the vehicle.

In addition to the above objects of the invention, which are similar to those listed in the '817 and '743 applications, the invention of the present continuation-in-part application has as objects the broadening of the useful ranges of loading of vehicles according to the invention, e.g., to provide highly efficient hybrid operation for a vehicle that may weigh 7,000 pounds empty but which can be loaded to weigh 10,000 pounds or more, and may be expected to pull a trailer also weighing 10,000 pounds or more.

A further object of the present invention is to provide further improvements in methods of control of internal combustion engines for hybrid vehicles, to obtain very efficient use of fuel.

Another object of the present invention is to provide an optimal HVAC system for hybrid vehicles.

Still a further object of the invention is to provide a braking system for hybrid vehicles including regenerative braking that provides optimal operator feedback despite changes in operation responsive to the state of charge of the battery bank.

Other aspects and objects of the invention will become clear as the discussion below proceeds.

Summary of the Invention

As discussed above, the '970 patent discloses hybrid vehicles wherein a controllable torque transfer unit is provided capable of transferring torque between an internal combustion engine, an electric motor, and the drive wheels of the vehicle. See Figs. 3 - 11 thereof. The direction of torque transfer is controlled by a microprocessor responsive to the mode of operation of the vehicle, to provide highly efficient operation over a wide variety of operating conditions, and while providing good performance. The flow of energy - either electrical energy stored in a substantial battery bank, or chemical energy stored as combustible fuel - is similarly controlled by the microprocessor.

According to one aspect of the invention of the '817 and '743 applications, which is also employed according to the present continuation-in-part application, the controllable torque-transfer unit shown in the '970 patent is eliminated by replacing the single electric motor shown therein by two separate motors, both operable as generators and as traction motors when appropriate. See Figs. 3 and 4 hereof. As in the '970 patent, an internal combustion engine is provided, sized to provide sufficient torque to be adequate for the range of cruising speeds desired, and is used for battery charging as needed. The internal combustion engine is connected to the drive wheels by a clutch operated by the microprocessor responsive to its selection of the vehicle's mode of operation in response to evaluation of the road load, that is, the vehicle's instantaneous torque demands and input commands provided by the operator of the vehicle. A relatively high-powered "traction" motor is connected directly to the output shaft of the vehicle; the traction motor provides torque to propel the vehicle in low-speed situations, and provides additional torque when required, e.g., for acceleration, passing, or hill-climbing during high-speed driving.

According to the invention of the '817 and '743 applications, a relatively low-powered starting motor is also provided, and can be used to provide torque propelling the vehicle when needed. This second motor is connected directly to the internal combustion engine for starting the engine. Unlike a conventional starter motor, which rotates an internal combustion engine at low speed (e.g., 60 - 200 rpm) for starting, necessitating provision of a rich fuel/air mixture for starting, the starter motor according to the invention spins the engine at relatively high speeds, e.g., 300 - 600 rpm, for starting; this allows starting the engine with a much less fuel-rich fuel/air mixture than is conventional, significantly reducing undesirable emissions and improving fuel economy at start-up. A catalytic converter provided to catalytically combust unburnt fuel in the engine exhaust is preheated to an effective working temperature before starting the engine, further reducing emissions.

In the embodiment discussed in detail, the starting motor is connected directly to the engine, and this combination is connected to the traction motor by a clutch for transfer of torque; the output shaft of the traction motor is then connected to the road wheels of the vehicle. In other embodiments, the engine/starting motor combination may be connected to a first set of road wheels through a clutch, with the traction motor connected to another set of road wheels directly; in a further embodiment, plural traction motors may be provided. In each case, the engine is controllably disconnected from the road wheels by control of the clutch. Engagement of the clutch is controlled by the microprocessor, e.g., controlling an electrical or hydraulic actuator as part of controlling the state of operation of the vehicle in response to the road load.

For example, during low-speed operation, the clutch will be disengaged, so that the engine is disconnected from the wheels; the vehicle is then operated as a "straight" electric car, i.e., power is drawn from the battery bank and supplied to the traction motor. Should the batteries become relatively depleted (e.g., become discharged to 50% of full charge), the starter motor is used to start the internal combustion engine, which then runs at relatively high torque output (e.g., at least about 30% of its maximum torque), for efficient use of fuel, and the starting motor is operated as a high-output generator to recharge the battery bank.

Similarly, when the operator calls for more power than available from the traction motor alone, e.g., in accelerating onto a highway, the starter motor starts the internal combustion engine; when it reaches an engine speed at which it produces useful torque, the clutch is engaged, so that the engine and starter motor can provide additional torque. As noted above, the engine is rotated at relatively high speed for starting, so that the engine rapidly reaches a useful speed.

As in the '970 patent, the engine is sized so that it provides sufficient power to maintain the vehicle in a range of suitable highway cruising speeds, while being operated in a torque range providing good fuel efficiency; if additional power is then needed, e.g., for hill-climbing or passing, the traction and/or starter motors can be engaged as needed. Both motors can be operated as generators, e.g., to transform the vehicle's kinetic energy into electrical power during descent or deceleration. Also as in the '970 patent, the peak power of the two motors together at least equals the rated power of the engine, as is necessary to provide good performance without employment of a variable-speed transmission or the equivalent.

In each of these aspects of the operation of the vehicle, and as in the '970 patent, the operator of the vehicle need not consider the hybrid nature of the vehicle during its operation, but simply provides control inputs by operation of the accelerator and brake pedals. The microprocessor determines the appropriate state of operation of the vehicle based on these and other inputs and controls the various components of the hybrid drive train accordingly.

It is also within the scope of the invention to operate one or both of the motors at differing rotational speeds than the engine, so that each can be optimized for the demands thereon. More specifically, motors can in general be made smaller if they can be operated at relatively high RPM. Motors operating at up to 9000 - 18,000 RPM appear appropriate for the present application. However, operating the internal combustion engine at this speed would likely lead to undesirable levels of noise and vibration, and might constrain its performance characteristics in an undesirable manner. Accordingly, for example, the starter motor might drive the engine through a pinion geared to a larger toothed flywheel, as conventional. Similarly, it might be desirable to provide the traction motor as a relatively high-speed unit, driving the road wheels through a chain, belt, or gear reduction unit. The starter motor may be configured as a "faceplate" or "pancake" motor, essentially forming the flywheel of the engine, and rotating at engine speed, while the traction motor is a much higher speed induction motor connected to the vehicle driveshaft by a chain drive reduction unit. It is also within the scope of the invention, as noted above, to operate the engine and the two motors at the same speed when the clutch is engaged, avoiding intermediate gear trains or like mechanical components and the attendant cost, complexity, weight, audible noise, and frictional losses occasioned by their use.

Other improvements provided according to the invention include providing the batteries in two series-connected battery banks, with the vehicle chassis connected to the batteries at a central point, between the banks. This "center-point-chassis" connection reduces the voltage between various circuit components and the vehicle chassis by half, significantly reducing the electrical insulation required and simplifying such issues as heat-sinking of power semiconductors used in the inverter circuitry. Providing dual battery banks and dual electric motors, as above, also provides a degree of redundancy, permitting certain component failures without loss of vehicle function.

In the preferred embodiment, both the traction and starting motors are AC induction motors of four or more phases and the accompanying power circuitry provides current of more than three, preferably five, phases, allowing the vehicle to function even after failure of one or more components. These motors, and the inverter/chargers driving them, should be chosen and operated such that the motors have torque output characteristics varying as a function of rpm as illustrated in Fig. 14 of the '970 patent; that is, the motors should produce substantially constant torque up to a base speed and should produce substantially constant power at higher speeds. The ratio of the base to maximum speed can vary between about 3 to 1 and about 6 to 1. By comparison, the series-wound DC motors conventionally used as engine starting motors provide very high torque, but only at very low speeds; their torque output drops precipitously at higher speeds. Such conventional starter motors would be unsatisfactory in the present system.

During substantially steady-state operation, e.g., during highway cruising, the control system operates the engine at varying torque output levels, responsive to the operator's commands. The range of permissible engine torque output levels is constrained to the range in which the engine provides good fuel efficiency. Where the vehicle's torque requirements exceed the engine's maximum efficient torque output, e.g., during passing or hill-climbing, one or both of the electric motors are energized to provide additional torque; where the vehicle's torque requirements are less than the minimum torque efficiently provided by the engine, e.g., during coasting, on downhills or during braking, the excess engine torque is used to charge the batteries. Regenerative charging may be performed simultaneously, as torque from the engine and the vehicle's kinetic energy both drive either or both motors in generator mode. The rate of change of torque output by the engine may be controlled in accordance with the batteries' state of charge.

The vehicle is operated in different modes, depending on its instantaneous torque requirements, and the state of charge of the battery, and other operating parameters. The mode of operation is selected by the microprocessor in response to a control strategy discussed in detail below; the values of the sensed parameters in response to which the operating mode is selected may vary depending on recent history, or upon analysis by the microprocessor of trips repeated daily, and may also exhibit hysteresis, so that the operating mode is not repetitively switched simply because one of the sensed parameters fluctuates around a defined setpoint.

None of the implementations of the invention shown in the '970 patent or the '817 and '743 applications include a conventional multi-speed transmission between the motors and engine and the road wheels, and it was stated that a desirable aspect of the invention was to avoid such transmissions, so that the rotational speeds of the two motors and the engine were fixed with respect to one another, and to the speed of the road wheels. However, it now appears that in some circumstances a two-speed transmission may be desired in some cases to broaden the range of utility of the vehicles of the invention (principally to extend their load-carrying capabilities) while still providing highly efficient operation, and to include such a two-speed transmission is accordingly part of the invention of the present continuation-in-part application. Such a two-speed transmission could be operated infrequently as a two-speed "range selector", or could be operated essentially as a conventional automatic transmission, that is, be repetitively shifted during acceleration, upon "kick-down" and the like.

More specifically, it is of great present interest to optimize the hybrid power train of the invention for use with relatively heavy vehicles, such as vans, pickup trucks and "sport-utility vehicles" (SUVs). Such vehicles have become increasingly popular in recent years, despite their generally poor fuel mileage; it would be highly desirable to provide vehicles with generally similar load-carrying abilities and performance with better fuel economy. Still more particularly, heretofore large classes of such vehicles have not been subject to certain emission regulations; however, such regulations are expected to take effect shortly. Accordingly, it would be very desirable to provide such vehicles with hybrid power trains that will allow their owners to enjoy the load-carrying and performance abilities of the existing vehicles with improved fuel economy and reduced emissions.

One of the aspect of SUVs and similar vehicles that must be considered in design of a suitable hybrid powertrain is that their owners use them to carry and tow widely-varying loads. That is, a conventional SUV might weigh 5,500 pounds, and might typically be used during the week to transport a 140 pound person, up to 300 pounds of children, and 50 pounds of groceries. However, on the weekend the family might load the vehicle with half a ton of camping gear and the like and set off for the mountains towing a

7,500 pound trailer. The vehicle must provide adequate acceleration, passing, and hill-climbing performance in both uses. In order to have sufficient power at times of maximum loading, the vehicle is grossly overpowered under all different circumstances; that is, only when the vehicle is laden to near-maximum capacity and pulling up a long hill does the engine deliver near maximum torque for any length of time. Under all other circumstances, it is run very inefficiently, as noted in connection with Figs. 1 and 2 (reproduced herein from the '970 patent).

An important aspect of the invention as described by the present continuation-in-part application as well as the predecessor applications and the '970 patent lies in controlling the operation of the internal combustion engine of a hybrid vehicle so that it is *only* operated at high efficiency, that is, only when is it loaded to require a substantial fraction e.g., 30% of its maximum torque output. That is, the engine is *never* run at less than 30% of maximum torque output ("MTO"). As discussed in the '970 patent and the '817 application, this can be accomplished by sizing the engine so that it can efficiently propel the vehicle unassisted at highway speeds; if additional torque is required for passing or hill-climbing, the traction motor is operated. Application Ser. No. 392,743 further adds the idea of providing a turbocharger, controlled by the microprocessor only to operate when torque in excess of the engine's rated normally-aspirated maximum torque output (MTO) is needed for an extended period of time, for example in towing a trailer. By employing the turbocharger only when actually needed, many of the drawbacks inherent in conventional turbocharger uses are eliminated. Typically the turbocharger may be sized such that the engine provides up to 150% of MTO when turbocharged.

According to one aspect of the invention of the present continuation-in-part application, the range of efficient use of the hybrid vehicle of the invention is further broadened by providing a two-speed transmission between the engine and road wheels, so as to allow variation in the overall gear ratio and therefore vary the amount of torque available at the wheels. As noted above, this could be a manually- or automatically-operated "range shifting" gearbox akin to those presently provided on SUVs and the like, to allow shifting into a "low range", for example, when a heavy trailer is be towed, or could be operated similarly to a conventional multispeed transmission, that is, to provide a sequence of effective overall gear ratios each time the vehicle is accelerated.

A further improvement made according to the present continuation-in-part application has to do with the braking system. As noted above, the '970 patent (as well as numerous other prior art references) disclose regenerative braking, that is, employing the microprocessor to control the operation of inverter/chargers connected between the motor and battery bank so that when the operator desires to slow the vehicle, its momentum is used to drive the motor in generator mode, charging the battery. There are certain limitations on this as a method of vehicle braking, which must be addressed by any useful vehicle. In particular, a hydraulic braking system of generally conventional design must be provided for several reasons: first, for safety, in the event that the regenerative system fails for any reason; second, to provide braking in the event the battery bank is fully charged and cannot accept further charge (since overcharging is highly detrimental to battery life); and to provide braking when regenerative braking is not available, e.g., when at a standstill. The present application discloses certain improvements in hydraulic braking systems desired to optimize their design for use with hybrid vehicles, as well as a mechanism providing optimized brake "feel" to the driver, regardless whether conventional, regenerative, or both braking systems are in use.

The present application also discloses certain problems inherent in application of conventional vehicles' heating, ventilation and air conditioning systems to hybrid vehicles, and describes preferred solutions to these problems.

A further improvement according to the present invention includes the provision of an auxiliary 12 volt supply system, allowing the hybrid vehicle of the invention to "jumpstart" another vehicle, or likewise to be jumpstarted as might be necessary after a long hiatus, and to allow use of conventional 12 volt accessories, such as radios and other electronic items.

The present application also discloses further useful modifications and enhancements to the hybrid vehicles of the predecessor applications.

The above and still further objects, features and advantages of the present invention will become apparent upon consideration of the following detailed description of a specific embodiment thereof, especially when taken in conjunction with the accompanying drawings, wherein like reference numerals in the various figures are utilized to designate like components.

Brief Description of the Drawings

The invention will be better understood if reference is made to the accompanying drawings, in which:

Fig. 1 is a plot of output power versus rotational speed (RPM) for a typical internal combustion engine, illustrating the relative fuel consumption of the engine as used in a conventional automobile in gallons/horsepower-hour;

Fig. 2 is a similar plot describing operation of a relatively small internal combustion engine used in the present invention under circumstances similar to those depicted in Fig. 1;

Fig. 3 shows a schematic diagram of the principal components of a first embodiment of the hybrid vehicle drive system according to the invention;

Fig. 4 shows a block diagram of the principal components of the drive system of the invention in a second embodiment, differing in certain mechanical arrangements from that of Fig. 3, and illustrating various control signals provided in both embodiments;

Fig. 5 shows a partial schematic diagram of the battery bank, inverter, and motor circuitry;

Fig. 6 is a diagram illustrating differing modes of vehicle powertrain operation, plotted on a three dimensional chart, illustrating that the mode of vehicle operation is a function of the state of charge of the battery bank, the instantaneous road load, and time;

Fig. 7, comprising Figs. 7 (a)-(c), and extending over two sheets, is a timing diagram showing road load, engine torque output, the state of charge of the battery bank, and engine operation as functions of time, thus illustrating a typical control strategy employed during low-speed city driving, highway cruising, and extended high-load driving;

Fig. 8, comprising Figs. 8 (a)-(d), are diagrams indicating the flow of torque and of energy among the components of the hybrid powertrain of the invention, in various modes of operation;

Fig. 9 is a simplified flow chart of the algorithm employed by the microprocessor to implement the control strategies provided by the vehicle according to the invention;

Fig. 9(a) is a flow chart of an engine starting subroutine employed in the flowchart of Fig. 9;

Fig. 9(b) is an alternate version of one of the steps of the flowchart of Fig. 9, implementing a modification to the vehicle control strategy;

Fig. 9(c) is an alternate version of another of the steps of the flowchart of Fig. 9, similarly implementing a modification to the vehicle control strategy;

Fig. 10 illustrates the preferred torque versus speed characteristics of the electric starting and traction motors, and of the internal combustion engine;

Fig. 11 is a schematic diagram similar to Fig. 3, illustrating an alternative embodiment of the hybrid vehicle powertrain according to the invention, wherein the engine is provided with a turbocharger which is controllably operable, so as to be employed only when needed;

Fig. 12 is a three-dimensional diagram comparable to Fig. 6, showing the modes of operation of the turbocharged hybrid vehicle of Fig. 11;

Fig. 13 is a timing diagram similar to Fig. 7, again comprising Figs. 13(a) - (c), extending over two sheets, and illustrating typical operation of the turbocharged hybrid vehicle of Fig. 11;

Fig. 14 is a schematic diagram similar to Figs. 3 and 11, illustrating a further alternative embodiment of the hybrid vehicle powertrain according to the invention, wherein a second traction motor is connected to a second set of road wheels, providing a particularly convenient way of providing four-wheel drive;

Fig. 15 is a schematic diagram of the preferred brake system of a hybrid vehicle according to the invention; and

Fig. 16 is a is a schematic diagram of the preferred heating, ventilation and air conditioning system of a hybrid vehicle according to the invention.

Description of the Preferred Embodiments

Referring specifically to Fig. 1, which is reproduced here from the '970 patent for convenience, curve 10 represents the output power versus engine speed (RPM) of a typical spark ignition gasoline-fueled internal combustion engine as used with an automatic transmission in a typical sedan of 3,300 pounds. As can be seen, the maximum engine power available is about 165 horsepower at about 5,000 RPM. Also shown in Fig. 1 by the curve labeled "Large Car Average Power Requirements" are the average power requirements of such a vehicle. Points C, S, and H on this curve show average fuel consumption in city, suburban, and highway driving, respectively; in particular, point C shows that the average power required in typical city driving is less than 5 hp. Point S shows that the average power consumed in suburban driving is 10 hp, and point H shows that the power needed for steady-speed highway driving is only about 30 hp. Thus, the vehicle is vastly overpowered at all times except during acceleration or hill-climbing.

Fig. 1 also includes dashed-line curves indicating the relative fuel consumption of the engine. As can be seen, reasonable fuel efficiency, that is, at least about 105 percent relative fuel consumption (100% being ideal), is reached only when the engine is operated at between about 2,000 and 4,000 RPM, and when producing between about 75 and 150 horsepower. Fig. 1 thus indicates that the typical internal combustion engine is operated with reasonable efficiency only when producing between about 50 and about 90% of its maximum output power. The typical automobile only requires such substantial power under conditions of extreme acceleration or hill climbing.

Accordingly, it will be appreciated that the typical engine is operated efficiently only during relatively brief intervals; more specifically, at lower power outputs, losses due to friction and pumping consume larger fractions of the engine's total torque, so that a lower fraction is available to propel the vehicle. As can be seen, during typical highway driving, shown by point H, the relative fuel consumption is on the order of 190 percent of that required during the most efficient operation of the engine. The situation is even worse in suburban driving, where the relative fuel consumption is nearly 300 percent of the most efficient value, and in city driving, where the relative fuel consumption is almost 350 percent of that required at most efficient operation.

Fig. 1 thus demonstrates that an internal combustion engine having sufficient horsepower for adequate acceleration and hill climbing capability must be so oversized with respect to the loads encountered during most normal driving that the engine is grossly inefficient in its consumption of fuel. As noted, Fig. 1 further shows that only about 30 horsepower is needed to cruise on the highway even in a relatively large car.

Fig. 2 (again reproduced from the '970 patent for convenience) is similar to Fig. 1, and illustrates the operational characteristics of the same 3,300 pound car if driven by a relatively small engine having a maximum horsepower rating of about 45 horsepower at 4,000 RPM. The power requirement of the vehicle during highway cruising, shown by point H on the curve marked "Large Car Average Power Requirements", is in the center of the most efficient region of operation of the engine. However, even with this small engine thus optimized for highway cruising, there is a substantial gap between the "Engine Operating Power" curve and the Average Power Requirement curve 14. That is, even this small engine produces substantially more power at low RPM than needed for city driving (point C) or for suburban driving (point S). Accordingly, even with a small engine sized appropriately for highway cruising, substantial inefficiencies persist at lower speeds. Moreover, of course, such a vehicle would have unsatisfactory acceleration and hill climbing ability. Therefore, the answer is not simply to replace large internal combustion engines with smaller internal combustion engines.

The prior art recognizes that there are substantial advantages to be gained by combining the virtues of a gasoline or other internal combustion engine with those of an electric motor running from a battery charged by the internal combustion engine. However, the prior art has failed to provide a solution which is directly price- and performance-competitive with vehicles now on the market; moreover, in order that such a vehicle can be commercially successful, it must also be no more complex to operate than existing vehicles.

As indicated above, "straight" electric vehicles, that is, vehicles having electric traction motors and batteries requiring recharge at the end of each day's use, do not have sufficient range and require too much time to recharge to fully replace conventional automobiles. Further, the operational costs of such vehicles are not competitive with internal combustion vehicles operated on fuels derived from renewable resources such as ethanol, and are even less competitive with gasoline-fueled automobiles.

A first type of series hybrid vehicles, involving a gasoline engine driving a generator charging a battery powering an electric traction motor, are limited in acceleration and hill climbing ability unless the electric motor is made very large, costly, and bulky. The alternative series hybrid approach, involving a transmission between a relatively smaller electric motor and the wheels to provide the torque needed to accelerate quickly, loses the virtue of simplicity obtained by elimination of a multi-speed transmission. These vehicles fail to realize the advantages provided by the parallel hybrid system in which both an internal combustion engine and an electric motor provide torque to the wheels as appropriate.

However (apart from the '970 patent) the prior art relating to parallel hybrid vehicles fails to disclose a system sufficiently simple for economical manufacture. The art further has failed to teach the optimum method of operation of a parallel hybrid vehicle. Moreover, the art relating to parallel hybrids (again, apart from the '970 patent) does not teach the appropriate operational parameters to be employed, relating to the relative power outputs of the internal combustion engine and the electric motor; the type of electric motor to be employed; the frequency, voltage, and current characteristics of the motor/battery system; the proper control strategy to be employed under various conditions of use; and combinations of these.

As shown in the '970 patent with reference to Figs. 1 and 2 thereof, and again above, typical modern automobiles operate at very low efficiency, due principally to the fact that internal combustion engines are very inefficient except when operating at near peak torque output; this condition is only rarely met. (The same is true, to greater or lesser degree, of other road vehicles powered by internal combustion engines.) According to an important aspect of the invention of the '970 patent, substantially improved efficiency is afforded by operating the internal combustion engine only at relatively high torque output levels, typically at least 35% and preferably at least 50% of peak torque. When the vehicle operating conditions require torque of this approximate magnitude, the engine is used to propel the vehicle; when less torque is required, an electric motor powered by electrical energy stored in a substantial battery bank drives the vehicle; when more power is required than provided by either the engine or the motor, both are operated simultaneously. The same advantages are provided by the system of the present invention, with further improvements and enhancements described in detail below.

According to one aspect of the invention of the '970 patent, the internal combustion engine of a hybrid vehicle is sized to supply adequate power for highway cruising, preferably with some additional power in reserve, so that the internal combustion engine operates only in its most efficient operating range. The electric motor, which is substantially equally efficient at all operating speeds, is used to supply additional power as needed for acceleration and hill climbing, and is used to supply all power at low speeds, where the internal combustion engine is particularly inefficient, e.g., in traffic.

As indicated above, this application discloses certain modifications, improvements, and enhancements of the hybrid vehicles shown in U.S. patent 5,343,970; where not otherwise stated, the design of the vehicle of the present invention is similar to that shown in the '970 patent. Components commonly numbered in this application and the '970 patent are functionally similar, with detail differences as noted. The advantages of the system shown in the '970 patent with respect to the prior art are provided by that of the present invention, with further improvements provided by the latter, as detailed herein.

In the system of the '970 patent, torque from either or both the engine and motor is transferred to the drive wheels of the vehicle by a controllable torque-transfer unit. This unit also allows torque to be transferred between the motor and engine, for starting the engine, and between the wheels and motor, for regenerative battery charging during deceleration of the vehicle. This unit, while entirely practical, comprises gears for power transfer, which are inevitably a source of audible noise and frictional losses. According to one aspect of the present invention, the controllable torque-transfer unit is eliminated. Instead, two electric motors are provided, each separately controlled by a microprocessor controller responsive to operator commands and sensed operating conditions.

In this connection, it will be understood that the terms "microprocessor" and "microprocessor controller" are used interchangeably throughout the present application, and it is to be further understood that these terms as used herein include various types of computerized control devices not always referred to as "microprocessors" per se, such as computers themselves incorporating microprocessors, digital signal processors, fuzzy logic controllers, analog computers, and combinations of these. In short, any controller capable of examining input parameters and signals and controlling the mode of operation of the vehicle according to a stored program, as discussed below in detail, is considered to be a "microprocessor" or "microprocessor controller" as used herein. Furthermore, the electronic fuel injection and electronic engine management devices shown in Figs. 3 and 4 as separate elements might also be integrated within the "microprocessor" or "microprocessor controller" as described herein.

Fig. 3 of the present application shows a first embodiment of the present invention, while Fig. 4, discussed below, shows a second embodiment illustrating certain alternative mechanical arrangements; overall the two embodiments are very similar, and functionally they are substantially identical. Fig. 11, also discussed below, illustrates a further embodiment, and Fig. 14 incorporates still further improvements.

In the Fig. 3 embodiment, a traction motor 25 is connected directly to the vehicle differential 32, and thence to the road wheels 34. A starting motor 21 is connected directly to the internal combustion engine 40. The motors 21 and 25 are functional as motors or generators by appropriate operation of corresponding inverter/charger units 23 and 27, respectively, connected between the motors and battery bank 22. At present, essentially conventional lead-acid batteries are preferred for battery bank 22, since these are widely available and well understood. More advanced batteries may be used if and when they become widely available and economically competitive.

Motors 21 and 25 are controllably connected for torque transfer by a clutch 51, mechanically interlocking the shafts 15 and 16 of motors 21 and 25 respectively. As discussed further below in connection with Fig. 4, microprocessor ("μP") 48 is provided with signals indicative of the rotational speeds of shafts 15 and 16, and controls operation of engine 40, motor 21, and motor 25 as necessary to ensure that the shafts are rotating at substantially the same speed before engaging clutch 51. Accordingly, clutch 51 need not necessarily be an ordinary automotive friction clutch (as illustrated schematically in Fig. 1), as conventionally provided to allow extensive relative slipping before the shafts are fully engaged. More particularly, as slipping of clutch 51 is not required to propel the vehicle initially from rest, as is the case in conventional vehicles, clutch 51 need not allow for extensive slipping when being engaged. In some cases it may be satisfactory to provide clutch 51 as a simple self-aligning mechanical interlock (as shown in Fig. 4), wherein positive mechanical connection is made between the shafts 15 and 16 upon engagement. Such a mechanical interlock is much simpler and less expensive than a friction clutch. In either case, clutch 51 is operated by microprocessor 48, e.g., through a known electric or hydraulic actuator 53, together with the other components of the system, in accordance with the operational state of the vehicle and the operator's input commands.

The respective positions of motor 21 and engine 40 with respect to clutch 51, motor 25, and wheels 34 could be reversed as compared to their positions in Figs. 3 and 4 without affecting the function of the system, although as engine 40 would then require torque transmitting connection at both ends of its crankshaft, some additional complexity would result.

As shown in Fig. 4, shaft encoders 18 and 19 may be mounted on the shafts 15 and 16 of starting motor 21 and traction motor 25, respectively, to provide signals to microprocessor 48 indicative of the relative rotational speeds of the shafts, and their respective rotational positions. Such shaft encoders are well-known and commercially available. Alternatively, signals indicative of the rotational speeds of the shafts may be derived from the inverter control signals, in accordance with well-known principles of control of "sensorless" motor drives (see, for example, Bose, "Power Electronics and Variable Frequency Drives", IEEE, 1996). However, provision of encoders 18 and 19 will allow better low-speed torque characteristics of motor 21 and 25, and thus reduction in cost.

Thus being provided with signals indicative of the rotational speeds of shafts 15 and 16, microprocessor 48 controls operation of engine 40, motor 21, and motor 25 as necessary to ensure that the shafts are rotating at substantially the same speed before engaging clutch 51; therefore, clutch 51 need not be an ordinary automotive friction clutch (as illustrated schematically in Fig. 3), as conventionally provided to allow extensive slipping before the shafts are fully engaged. According to this aspect of the invention, and particularly if microprocessor 48 is made capable of ensuring that shafts 15 and 16 bear a desired relative angular relationship, clutch 51 instead may be a simple, relatively inexpensive self-aligning mechanical interlock (as illustrated schematically in Fig. 4), wherein positive mechanical connection is made between the shafts 15 and 16 upon engagement.

Fig. 4 also shows additional signals provided to microprocessor 48 in both the Fig. 3 and the Fig. 4 embodiments. These include operator input commands, typically acceleration, direction, deceleration, and "cruise mode" commands, as shown. The acceleration and deceleration commands may be provided by position-sensing encoders 71 and 72 (Fig. 3)(which could be configured as rheostats, Hall-effect sensors, or otherwise) connected to microprocessor 48 by lines 67 and 68, to inform the microprocessor of the operator's commands responsive to motion of accelerator and brake pedals 69 and 70 respectively. The microprocessor monitors the rate at which the operator depresses pedals 69 and 70 as well as the degree to which pedals 69 and 70 are depressed. The operator may also provide a "cruise mode" signal, as indicated, when a desired cruising speed has been reached. The microprocessor uses this information, and other signals provided as discussed herein, in accordance with the operational strategy discussed in detail below in connection with Figs. 6 - 9, to properly control operation of the vehicle according to the invention by appropriate control signals provided to its various components.

For example, suppose the vehicle has been operated in city traffic for some time, that is, under battery power only. Typically the operator will only depress the accelerator pedal 69 slightly to drive in traffic. If the operator then depresses accelerator pedal 69 significantly farther than he or she had, for example, the prior few times acceleration was required, this may be taken as an indication that an amount of torque that can efficiently be provided by engine 40 will shortly be required; microprocessor will then initiate the sequence whereby starting motor 21 will be used to start engine 40.

Upon initiation of the engine starting sequence, a heater 63 (Fig. 3) will first be used to preheat a catalytic converter 64 provided in the engine exhaust system 62, so that any fuel that is not combusted during starting and subsequent running of the engine 40 will be catalytically combusted, reducing emission of undesirable pollutants. A temperature sensor 102 is preferably provided, so as to ensure the engine is not started until the catalytic material is heated to effective working temperature. As noted above, engine starting is preferably performed with the engine turning at a higher speed than is conventional, so that a the fuel/air ratio need only be slightly (e.g., 20%) richer than stoichiometric. As a result, only very limited amounts of pollutants are emitted during engine starting. By comparison, in conventional vehicles, a very significant fraction of the total pollutants emitted during any given trip are emitted during the first 30 - 60 seconds of operation, due to the extremely rich mixtures normally supplied during starting, and to the ineffectiveness of the catalyst until it has been heated by the exhaust.

If the operator depresses the pedal 69 rapidly, indicating an immediate need for full acceleration, the preheating step may be omitted; however, a preferable alternative may be to allow the traction and starting motors to be driven at or slightly beyond their rated power, providing adequate torque, for a short time sufficient to allow the catalyst to be warmed and the engine started.

Similarly, if the operator depresses the brake pedal 70 relatively gently, all braking may be provided by regenerative charging of the batteries; if the operator instead presses aggressively on brake pedal 70, and/or presses brake pedal 70 beyond a predetermined point, both mechanical and regenerative braking will be provided. Mechanical braking is also provided on long downhills when the batteries are fully charged, and in case of emergency. Further aspects of the preferred brake system of the hybrid vehicles of the invention are added by the present continuation-in-part application, and are discussed below.

In addition to engine and starting motor speed and traction motor speed, monitored by shaft encoders 18 and 19 as discussed above, battery voltage, battery charge level, and ambient temperature are also either monitored directly or derived from monitored variables. In response to these inputs, and the operator inputs, microprocessor controller 48 operates a control program (see the high-level flowchart of an exemplary control program provided as Fig. 9), and provides output control signals to engine 40, by commands provided to its electronic fuel injection unit (EFI) 56 and electronic engine management system (EEM) 55, and to starting motor 21, clutch 51, traction motor 25, inverter/charger units 23 and 27, and other components.

As indicated in Fig. 4, the control signals provided to inverter/chargers 23 and 27 by microprocessor 48 allow control of the current (represented as *I*), of the direction of rotation of the motor 25 (represented as +/-), allowing reversing of the vehicle, and of the frequency of switching (represented as *f*), as well as control of operation of the motors 21 and 25 in motor or generator mode. Inverter/chargers 23 and 27 are separately controlled to allow independent operation of motors 21 and 25. Inverter/charger operation is discussed further below in connection with Fig. 5.

As noted above, the Figs. 3 and 4 embodiments of the system of the invention differ in certain mechanical arrangements, intended to illustrate variations within the scope of the invention, and Fig. 4 also provides more detail concerning the specific control signals passing between various elements of the system.

Referring to the differing mechanical arrangements, it will be observed that in Fig. 3 the shafts of motors 21 and 25 are illustrated as coaxial with that of engine 40; this is the simplest arrangement, of course, but would require the engine 40 and starter motor 21 to rotate at the same speed at all times, and at the same speed as traction motor 25 when clutch 51 is engaged. As noted above, it may be preferable to design motors 21 and 25 to have maximum speeds of 9000 - 15,000 rpm, so that they could be made smaller, lighter, and less costly than slower-rotating motors. However, it is envisioned that a preferred maximum speed for engine 40 is 6000 rpm, as internal combustion engines running at substantially higher speeds wear rapidly and tend to have limited torque at low speed, and because higher frequency engine noise and vibration can also be difficult to absorb. It is within the scope of the invention to provide the motors coaxial with the engine shaft, as illustrated in Fig. 3, but to provide a planetary gearset(s) between the shafts of either or both of traction motor 25 and starting motor 21 and the output shaft to permit differing engine and motor speeds. Further alternatives to this aspect of the invention are again added by the present continuation-in-part application, and are discussed below.

Fig. 4 illustrates an alternative construction, also permitting differing engine and motor speeds. In this case, the output shaft of starting motor 21 is shown connected to that of engine 40 by spur gears 52, and traction motor 25 is connected to the output shaft 55 by chain drive indicated at 54. Numerous other arrangements will occur to those of skill in the art. However, in each case there is no variable-ratio transmission between the sources of torque -- that is, the motors 21 and 25, and the engine 40 -- and the road wheels 34. Again, further alternatives to this aspect of the invention are added by the present continuation-in-part application, and are discussed below.

It is also within the scope of the invention to connect the traction motor to one set of wheels, and to connect the combination of the engine 40 and starting motor 21 to another set of wheels through clutch 51, thus providing a four-wheel drive vehicle with differing power sources for the alternate pairs of wheels. In this embodiment, the torque from the traction motor 25 is effectively combined with that from engine 40 (and from starting motor 21, when used as a source of propulsive torque) by the road surface, rather than by mechanical connection, as in the Figs. 3 and 4 embodiment. A further alternative would be to provide a complete system as in Fig. 3 driving one pair of road wheels, and a separate traction motor driving a second pair of road wheels.

Both embodiments are within the scope of the invention, and the control strategy is essentially the same as to both. See Fig. 14 and the related text below for further discussion.

Other elements of the system as illustrated in Figs. 3 and 4 are generally as discussed in the '970 patent, including supply of fuel 36 from tank 38, air filter 60, and throttle 61.

Control of engine 40 by microprocessor 48 is accomplished by way of control signals provided to electronic fuel injection (EFI) unit 56 and electronic engine management (EEM) unit 55, responsive to throttle operation; preferably, the throttle in turn is operated electronically responsive to the opertor's depression of the accelerator pedal. Control of starting of engine 40, and using either or both of starting motor 21 and traction motor 25 as motors, providing propulsive torque, or as generators, providing recharging current to battery bank 22, is accomplished by microprocessor 48 by way of control signals provided to inverter/charger units 23 and 27.

Under deceleration, for example, during descents, or as needed for braking, or when the engine's instantaneous torque output exceeds the vehicle's current torque requirements, either or both of motors 21 and 25 are operated as generators, providing regenerative recharging of battery bank 22. Fig. 7, discussed below, illustrates this aspect of the operation of the vehicle of the invention in further detail.

Thus, as indicated above, when microprocessor 48 detects a continued operator requirement for additional power, such as during transition from slow-speed to highway operation, or by measuring the rate at which the operator depresses accelerator pedal 69, engine 40 is started using starter motor 21 and brought up to speed before clutch 51 is engaged, to ensure a smooth transition. As cruising speed is reached (as determined by monitoring the operator's commands), power to traction motor 25 (and to starter motor 21, if also used to accelerate the vehicle) is gradually reduced. Provision of the clutch 51 and separate starter motor 21, as compared to using the single traction motor to start engine 40 while simultaneously accelerating the vehicle, that is, as in the '970 patent, simplifies the control arrangements somewhat.

In one possibly preferred embodiment, both motors 21 and 25 and clutch 51 may be provided in a single sealed housing, possibly bathed in oil for cooling and protection from dust and the like. It is also known to control auxiliary motors, such as conventional starter motors, to absorb or add torque to that provided by an associated internal combustion engine, to damp out vibration caused by fluctuation of the torque provided by the engine; doing so herein using either or both of motors 21 and 25 is within the scope of the invention, and is simplified by virtue of the direct connection of the engine 40 to the drive wheels through motors 21 and 25 according to the invention.

Provision of the clutch 51 and separate starter motor 21 also allows another important improvement to be provided according to the present invention, namely starting engine 40 at high speed, e.g., about 300 -600 rpm, as compared to the 60 - 200 rpm starts conventionally provided. As is generally known in the art (see Simanaitis, "What goes around comes around", *Road & Track*, November 1998, p. 201) high-rpm starting allows substantial elimination of the usual necessity of providing a fuel-rich air/fuel mixture to start engine 40, reducing emission of unburned fuel and improving fuel economy at start-up, particularly from cold.

More particularly, in conventional low-rpm starts, a rich mixture comprising up to on the order of 6 to 7 times the stoichiometric amount of fuel is provided, to ensure that some fraction of the fuel is in the vapor phase, as only fuel in the vapor phase can be ignited by a spark. Most of the excess fuel condenses as liquid on the cold cylinder walls, and thus does not burn efficiently, if at all, and is immediately emitted unburned. By comparison, at high starting speeds according to the invention, turbulence in the combustion chamber is sufficient to ensure the presence of vapor, so that a near-stoichiometric mixture, typically including only 1.2 times the stoichiometric amount of fuel, can be provided to engine 40 during the starting phase. The avoidance of rich mixtures at starting significantly reduces emission of unburned fuel - since most of the fuel provided to a conventional engine at starting is immediately exhausted unburnt - and provides some improvement in overall fuel efficiency.

Furthermore, as noted above, whenever possible - that is, whenever the engine is started except when immediate full torque is required by the operator - a catalytic converter 64 is preheated to an effective working temperature of at least about 350° C before starting the engine, to prevent even this relatively small emission of unburned fuel.

Thus, the primary consideration in selecting the torque of starting motor 21 is that it be capable of rotating the engine 40 at about 300 - 600 rpm for starting, and that it be capable of accepting at least about 30% of the engine's maximum torque output when operated as a generator, so that the engine can be efficiently employed when charging the battery bank during extended low-speed operation; the main consideration in specification of the torque of engine 40 is that it provides sufficient power for highway cruising while being operated at high efficiency, i.e., that its maximum power output be sufficent to cruise in a range of desired cruising speeds; and the principal consideration defining the power required of the traction motor 25 is that it be sufficiently powerful to provide adequate acceleration in combination with the engine 40 and starting motor 21. Stated differently, the total power available provided by all of these torque-producing components should be at least equal to and preferably exceeds the peak power provided by the internal combustion engines of conventional vehicles of similar intended use, both as measured at the wheels. Moreover, as set forth in the '970 patent, the total torque provided by motors 21 and 25 should be at least equal to that produced by engine 40, in order to provide adequate low-speed performance under motor alone, and without necessity of a variable-ratio transmission.

At the same time, motors 21 and 25 are also sized to be capable of recovering almost all of the vehicle's kinetic energy when operated as generators in the regenerative braking mode. A particularly high fraction of the vehicle's kinetic energy can be recovered during low-speed operation; as compared to high-speed operation, where air resistance and road friction consume a relatively large fraction of the total energy required, in low speed operation much energy is lost by conventional vehicles as heat released during braking.

Given the above considerations, the following are typical power specifications for the engine 40, starting motor 21 and traction motor 25 of a 3000 pound vehicle having performance approximately equivalent to that of a "mid-size" sedan of United States manufacture. It should be understood that in these specifications, reference is made to the rated power produced continuously by the engine, not to the rated peak power of the motors, as is generally conventional in the art. Further, the motors are specified assuming the direct-drive embodiment of Fig. 3; if the motors run at higher speeds, their ratings would be determined accordingly.

Engine 40: 40 to 50 horsepower at 6000 rpm

Starting motor 21: 10 - 15 horsepower at approximately 1500 rpm and higher speeds

Traction motor 25: 50 - 75 horsepower from 1500 to 6000 rpm.

The same starting motor would be satisfactory for a larger, 4000 pound sedan, but the engine would typically provide 70 - 90 horsepower at 6000 rpm and the traction motor 75 - 100 horsepower.

In both cases, the total power available from the electric motors together should equal, and preferably exceeds, the maximum power available from the engine.

In the hybrid vehicle of the invention, which as noted does not require a complex, heavy, and costly variable-ratio transmission, these components would provide acceleration much superior to that of typical similarly-sized automobiles of United States manufacture, together with far better fuel economy and substantially reduced emission of pollutants. It will be apparent that these specifications may vary over relatively wide ranges depending on the intended use of the vehicle of the invention, and should not be construed to limit the scope of the invention.

As indicated above, in the preferred embodiment, both the starting and traction motors are AC induction motors, although other types may also be employed. These motors, and the inverter/chargers controlling them in response to control signals from the microprocessor (as discussed further below), should be chosen and operated such that the motors have torque output characteristics varying as a function of rpm as illustrated by curve A in Fig. 10. That is, the motors are operated by the inverter/chargers, in response to control signals from the microprocessor, so as produce constant torque up to a base speed C, typically 1500 rpm for a motor having a top speed of 6000 rpm, as employed in the direct-drive embodiment of Fig. 3, and should produce constant power at higher speeds; accordingly, the torque drops off at speeds above the base speed C, as shown. The ratio of the base to maximum speed, 4 : 1 in this example, can vary between about 3 to 1 and about 6 to 1. This torque output characteristic essentially allows the vehicle of the invention to provide quite acceptable performance, especially acceleration, without the weight, complexity and cost of a variable-ratio transmission.

By comparison, the series-wound DC motors conventionally used as automotive engine starting motors provide very high torque, but only at very low speeds; their torque output drops precipitously at higher speeds. Such conventional starter motors would be unsatisfactory in the present system.

Fig. 10 also shows the torque curve of a typical internal combustion engine at B; as noted, the torque is zero at zero rpm, so that a clutch allowing slippage is required to allow the engine to move the vehicle from rest. Fig. 10 shows at D typical curves for torque as measured at the wheels of a vehicle propelled by a typical internal combustion engine driving the vehicle through a four-speed transmission, used to provide additional torque at low speeds; the vertical spaces between sections of curve D represent changes in gear ratio, that is, the vehicle will be shifted to move between the sections of curve D. As shown by Fig. 10, the desired torque characteristics of the starting and traction motors discussed above allow the vehicle of the invention to provide low-speed performance comparable to or better than a conventional vehicle, while eliminating the necessity of a variable-ratio transmission. However, as discussed further below, it is within the invention of the present continuation-in-part application to extend the load-carrying capabilities of the hybrid vehicle of the invention by also providing a variable-ratio, e.g., two-speed, transmission, where not excluded by the appended claims. This should not be necessary with respect to passenger cars.

The ratio between the base speed and maximum speed of the motors as used according to the invention is thus comparable to the ratio between the lowest and highest gears of a conventional transmission; for passenger cars, the latter ratio is typically between 3 and 4 : 1, so that the engine's torque is relatively well matched to the road load over a reasonable range of road speeds.

As discussed above, while it is within the scope of the invention to operate the motors 21 and 25 and the internal combustion engine 40 at the same maximum speed, so that no gearing is required to couple these elements, it is presently preferred that at least traction motor 25 have a maximum speed substantially higher than that of the internal combustion engine 40; the output shaft of motor 25 can be connected to the road wheels by a chain-drive reduction unit, as indicated in Fig. 4. The maximum speed of the internal combustion engine is preferably limited to on the order of 6000 rpm to limit wear, noise and vibration, which increase with higher operating speeds, and because engines capable of higher-rpm operation tend to have narrow ranges of rpm within which they produce substantial torque; the latter characteristic would be undesirable in a vehicle not having a variable-ratio transmission and intended to cruise powered solely by the internal combustion engine, according to the invention.

By comparison, operating the motors 21 and 25 at maximum speeds of 9000 - 18,000 rpm allows them to be made smaller, lighter, and less costly; whether this advantage overcomes the added complexity of chain, gear, or belt drives, or other mechanical means allowing combination of torque from the motors with that from the engine, is a matter of engineering choice that may vary from one model of vehicle to the next. Both are accordingly within the present invention. If each of the torque-producing components (that is, engine 40 and starting and traction motors 21 and 25) is to be operated at the same speed, a maximum speed of approximately 6000 rpm is preferred, as this represents a good compromise between cost, weight, and size of the key components.

As discussed above, it is preferred that motors 21 and 25 have more than two poles, and be operated by current applied over more than three phases, so that failure of some components - such as the power semiconductors used in the inverter/charger units, as discussed below - can be tolerated without total failure of the vehicle. It is also desired that the battery bank be divided into two, with the vehicle chassis connected between them, halving the voltage between given components and the vehicle chassis, and thus simplifying their construction, insulation, and connection. Fig. 5 shows a partial schematic diagram of a circuit providing these attributes.

The functions of the inverter/chargers 23 and 27 (separate inverter/chargers being required to allow independent operation of motors 21 and 25) include control of motors 21 and 25 to operate as motors or as generators; operation of traction motor 25 in the opposite direction for reversing the vehicle; conversion of DC stored by the battery bank to AC for motor operation; and conversion of AC induced in the motors when operated as generators to DC for battery charging. Essentially similar functions were provided by the solid-state switching AC/DC converter 44 in the '970 patent; where not specified to the contrary, the discussion thereof is applicable to the inverter design shown in Fig. 5 hereof.

As illustrated in Fig. 5, traction motor 25 is embodied as a five-phase AC induction motor; starting motor 21, which is not fully illustrated, as indicated, can be but is not necessarily generally similar. Other motor types, such as permanent magnet brushless DC motors or synchronous motors, might also be employed. The motors are operated as multiphase devices, having three phases or more, permitting employment of smaller and overall less costly semiconductors, and allowing operation even if some of the semiconductors fail. Use of motors operated at relatively high frequency, e.g., more than 60 Hz, also permits motors of a given power output to be smaller. As shown in Fig. 5, it is currently preferred that at least traction motor 25 be wired in the "wye" arrangement shown, rather than the known "delta" arrangement; it is found that certain undesirable harmonics are reduced by the "wye" arrangement. Both are well known in the art, and within the scope of the invention.

As illustrated in Fig. 5, each of the windings 78 of motor 25 is connected to a pair of semiconductor switching elements 80 collectively making up inverter/charger 27. Inverter/charger 27 is correspondingly configured as a set of ten power semiconductors 80 controlled by switching signals A through J provided by a pulse generator 88 responsive to frequency, polarity and current signals received from microprocessor 48 (Figs. 3 and 4). Typical operating frequencies can be up to 200, 400 or 600 Hz; the transfer of power between the battery bank 22 and motors 21 and 25 is then controlled by pulse-width modulation, that is, by controlling the semiconductors 80 to conduct during portions of the power waveform, the duration of the conducting portions varying in accordance with the power required. Semiconductors 80 may be any type suitable for handling relatively high voltages and currents; satisfactory insulated-gate bipolar transistors (IGBTs) are currently available and are presently preferred. As conventional, each of the semiconductors 80 is paralleled by a freewheeling rectifier diode 82.

Design of the inverter/chargers 23 and 27 and of pulse generator 88 to provide suitable control signals A through T so that the inverter/chargers perform the functions listed above is within the skill of the art; again, see, for example, Bose, "Power Electronics and Variable Frequency Drives", IEEE, 1996.

The current drawn from the battery bank 22 during long-term operation of the traction and starting motor(s) to propel the vehicle should be limited to 30 - 50 amperes, to reduce the size of the conductors and other components required, as discussed in the '970 patent; these components are satisfactory to carry currents of up to 200 amperes, as may be encountered during full-power acceleration, as this condition will not persist for more than about 30 seconds.

As indicated, the battery bank 22 comprises two substantially similar battery assemblies 84; in one embodiment, each battery assembly will comprise eight 48-volt batteries, such that 384 volts is provided by each. The battery assemblies 84 are connected in series, so that 768 volts are provided across the circuit "rails" 86, 88. However, the vehicle chassis connection is taken from between the series-connected battery assemblies, so that only 384 volts is present between any given circuit component and the vehicle chassis; this "center-point-chassis" connection significantly reduces various insulation and heat-sinking requirements. More specifically, the conductors, connectors, relays, switches and like elements can be as approved by the National Electrical Manufacturers' Association (NEMA) for 600 volt service; such elements are widely available, and are much more easily employed and much less expensive than those needed for continuously carrying current at, for example, 300 volts and 300 amperes.

Preferably, as indicated by Fig. 5(a), illustrating a detail of a portion of one of the battery assemblies 84, the 48-volt batteries 85 are connected by normally-open relays 87, so that the batteries 85 are isolated from one another under fail-safe conditions; for example, if the vehicle is involved in an accident, power to the relays is cut off, so that the maximum open voltage anywhere in the vehicle is 48 volts, reducing the danger of fire. Similarly, the relays open when the vehicle's "ignition" is shut off by the operator.

The present continuation-in-part application adds to the above from the '817 application that an auxiliary 12-volt system may also be provided, as shown at 223 in Fig. 14, discussed further below. This would be a DC-to-DC converter, allowing the vehicle to provide "jumping" current to start other vehicles having conventional 12-volt electrical systems, and would also allow the vehicle of the invention to be jumpstarted similarly, if necessary. Provision of a 12-volt system also allows convenient employment of conventional automotive accessories, such as radios and the like. The 12-volt system could perhaps most conveniently be implemented by a separate semiconductor-implemented voltage conversion circuit, transforming the 48 volts from one of the batteries to 12 volts for jumping others, and providing the inverse 12 to 48 volt transformation as needed. It should also be understood that the individual batteries could be 42 volt units, conforming to the apparent trend toward 42 volt systems for new vehicles. Further preferably, the entire battery bank assembly, including the relays, is enclosed in a rugged container, significantly reducing the danger of electrical shock and the like.

Turning now to detailed discussion of the inventive control strategy according to which the hybrid vehicles of the invention are operated: as in the case of the hybrid vehicle system shown in the '970 patent, and as discussed in further detail below, the vehicle of the invention is operated in different modes depending on the torque required, the state of charge of the batteries, and other variables. Throughout, the object is to operate the internal combustion engine only under circumstances providing a significant load, thus ensuring efficient operation. In the following, the relationships between these modes are illustrated using several different techniques, to ensure the reader's full understanding of various aspects of the vehicle control strategy; some of these are seen more clearly in one form of illustration than another.

Fig. 6 illustrates the several modes of vehicle operation with respect to the relationship between the vehicle's instantaneous torque requirements or "road load", the state of charge of the battery bank 22, and time, while Fig. 7 shows variation in, and the relationship between, road load, engine torque output, and the state of charge of the battery bank over time, that is, during an exemplary trip. Figs. 8(a) - (d) show simplified schematic diagrams of the vehicle of the invention in its principal modes of operation, showing the flow of energy, in the form of electricity or combustible fuel, by dot-dash lines, and the flow of torque by dashed lines. Finally, Fig. 9 provides a high-level flowchart, showing the principal decision points in the algorithm according to which the microprocessor operates the various components of the hybrid vehicle drivetrain according to the invention, and Figs. 9 (a)-(c) show details and modifications thereof.

As noted, the preferred control strategy of the invention is illustrated in several different ways by Figs. 6 - 9. The same specific numerical examples for various significant control variables, data items, and the like are used throughout for clarity. It will be understood that these examples would normally be expressed as ranges; although ranges are not used in the following, to simplify the discussion, it should be understood throughout that these numerical examples are exemplary only, and that the invention is not to be limited to the exact values of the control variables mentioned herein.

Further, it should be realized that certain of these control variables need not be restricted to specific numbers; in some cases, the decision points may be "fuzzy", i.e., so-called "fuzzy logic" may be employed, so that while the operating scheme retains its overall characteristics, the specific values against which the control variables and data items are tested in implementation of the control strategy according to the invention may vary from time to time. Examples of this practice -- amounting in many circumstances to modifying certain specific values depending on other data items not discussed in detail, or by monitoring the vehicle's actual usage patterns over time -- are given below.

Given these several different explanations of the relationship between the various operating modes of the vehicle of the invention, and specifically these different illustrations of the combinations of conditions in response to which the microprocessor controls mode selection, one of ordinary skill in the art would have no difficulty in implementing the invention.

As noted, during low-speed operation, such as in city traffic, the vehicle is operated as a simple electric car, where all torque is provided to road wheels 34 by traction motor 25 operating on electrical energy supplied from battery bank 22. This is referred to as "mode I" operation (see Fig. 6), and is illustrated in Fig. 8(a). The same paths of energy and torque may also be employed under emergency circumstances, referred to as mode III operation, as discussed below.

While operating at low speeds, e.g., when the vehicle's torque requirements ("road load", or "RL") are less than 30% of the engine's maximum torque output ("MTO"), engine 40 is run only as needed to charge battery bank 22. Starting motor 21 is first used to start engine 40, and is then operated as a generator by appropriate operation of inverter/charger 23, so that charging current flows to battery bank 22. Accordingly, clutch 51 is disengaged, so that the road speed of the vehicle is independent of the speed of engine 40; engine 40 can thus be operated at relatively high output torque level, for fuel efficiency. This "mode II" operation is illustrated in Fig. 8(b); as indicated, clutch 51 is disengaged, so that engine operation to charge battery bank 22 through starting motor 21, and propulsion of the vehicle by traction motor 25, are completely independent of one another.

As in the '970 patent, engine 40 is sized so that its maximum torque is sufficient to drive the vehicle in a range of desired cruising speeds; this requirement ensures that the engine is operated at high efficiency during normal highway cruising. Therefore, when a sensed increase in the road load (e.g., by a continued operator request for more power) indicates that the preferred operating mode is changing from low-speed to highway cruising operation, the microprocessor controls starting motor 21 by way of inverter/charger 23 to start engine 40. When engine 40 is essentially up to speed, clutch 51 is engaged, so that engine 40 drives road wheels 34 through the shafts of motors 21 and 25. When the operator releases pressure on the accelerator pedal, indicating that a desired cruising speed has been reached, traction motor 25 is accordingly depowered. The highway cruising mode is referred to as "mode IV" operation, and the flow of energy and torque are as illustrated in Fig. 8(c).

If extra torque is needed during highway cruising, e.g., for acceleration or hill-climbing, either or both of motors 21 and 25 can be powered. This "mode V" operation is illustrated in Fig. 8(d); energy flows from tank 38 to engine 40, and from battery bank 22 to traction motor 25, and possibly also to starting motor 21; torque flows from either or both motors and engine to wheels 34.

The flow of energy during battery charging is not illustrated *per se* in Fig. 8, but will be understood by those of skill in the art, and is further described below. For example, when the engine's instantaneous output torque exceeds the road load, the starter motor 21 is operated as a charger, supplying recharging current to the battery bank. Similarly, when the road load is trending downwardly or is negative, either the traction motor or the starter motor, or both, can be operated as a regenerative battery charger, supplying recharging current to the battery bank; braking can be accomplished similarly in response to an appropriate operator command.

Fig. 6, as indicated above, is a diagram illustrating differing modes of operation of the hybrid vehicle powertrain of the invention; the modes of operation, indicated by numerals I - V, are plotted on a three dimensional chart, illustrating that the mode of vehicle operation as controlled by microprocessor 48 is a function of the state of charge of the battery bank, the instantaneous road load, and time. Fig. 7, discussed below, further illustrates the inventive mode of vehicle operation.

Fig. 6 shows on one axis the state of battery charge extending from 70% at the origin outwardly to a minimum value shown of 30%. Normally the batteries are maintained at least 30% of full charge. Preferably, the battery bank is not charged to more than 70% of its theoretical full capacity; if a number of series-connected batteries were all charged to 100% of their nominal full charge, some would likely be overcharged due to manufacturing variation, local temperature variation and the like, which would significantly shorten their service life. Moreover, frequently recharging any individual battery to 100% of its theoretical capacity is deleterious to battery life as well.

The road load is shown in Fig. 6 on a second axis as varying from 0 at the origin to 200% of the engine's maximum torque output. (Negative road load, occurring during descents or under braking, is not shown in Fig. 6 due to the difficulty of illustration. This circumstance is discussed in connection with Fig. 7, below.) Time is shown on the third axis extending from an arbitrary point at the origin; that is, Fig. 6 shows the mode of the vehicle's operation over the next short period of time (on the order of 30 - 60 seconds) from a present instant at the origin. Stated differently, according to one aspect of the invention, the microprocessor 48 controls the vehicle's mode of operation at any given time in dependence on "recent history," as well as on the instantaneous road load and battery charge state.

More specifically, Fig. 6 shows that during city driving (mode I), defined in this example as driving where the vehicle's instantaneous torque requirements, or "road load", is up to 30% of the engine's maximum torque, the vehicle is operated as a "straight electric" car, the clutch being disengaged and energy from the battery bank 22 being used to power traction motor 25 to propel the vehicle, as long as the battery remains charged to between 50 and 70% of its full charge. If the charge falls to below a given value, which may vary over time as indicated by the curved line defining the extent of mode II, mode II is entered as indicated, the engine is started, and the starter motor 21 is operated as a generator to charge the battery to substantially full charge. As indicated in mode III, operation of the vehicle as an electric car may also be permitted when the battery falls to below 40% of full charge, for example, if there is a fault in the engine or charging system, but only on an emergency basis; such deep discharge is harmful to battery life.

During highway cruising, region IV, where the road load is between about 30% and 100% of the engine's maximum torque output, the engine alone is used to propel the vehicle. Accordingly, when the microprocessor detects that transition between regions I and IV is required (e.g., the microprocessor can effectively determine the road load by monitoring the response of the vehicle to the operator's command for more power), it causes the starting motor 21 to spin the engine 40 to relatively high speed; when a desired starting speed, typically 300 rpm, is reached, the electronic engine management unit 55 and electronic fuel injection unit 56 are controlled to fire the spark plugs and supply fuel, respectively, starting the engine. Thus starting the engine at relatively high rpm allows a near-stoichiometric fuel/air mixture to be used, as compared to the much richer mixtures normally used for starting.

Emissions of unburned hydrocarbons are thus substantially reduced, and fuel economy improved.

When the speed of the engine output shaft substantially matches that of traction motor 25, clutch 51 is engaged; the power produced by motor 25 is reduced as that produced by engine 40 is increased, so that the transition between modes I and IV is smooth and essentially undetected by the operator. When the operator reduces pressure on the accelerator pedal 69, indicating that the desired cruising speed has been reached, power to motor 25 is reduced to zero.

If the operator then calls for additional power, e.g. for acceleration or passing, region V is entered; that is, when the microprocessor detects that the road load exceeds 100% of the engine's maximum torque output, it controls inverter/charger 27 so that energy flows from battery bank 22 to traction motor 25, providing torque propelling the vehicle in addition to that provided by engine 40. Starting motor 21 can similarly be controlled to provide propulsive torque.

As indicated above, during highway cruising, where the torque required to propel the vehicle varies as indicated by the operator's commands, the control system operates the engine at correspondingly varying torque output levels. The range of permissible engine torque output levels is constrained to the range in which the engine provides good fuel efficiency. Where the vehicle's instantaneous torque requirement exceeds the engine's maximum efficient torque output, e.g., during passing or hill-climbing, one or both of the electric motors are energized to provide additional torque; where the vehicle's torque requirements are less than the torque then being produced by the engine, e.g., during coasting, on downhills or during braking, the excess engine torque is used to charge the batteries. Regenerative charging may occur simultaneously, as torque from the engine and recovery of the vehicle's kinetic energy both drive one or both motors operated in generator mode. The rate of change of torque output by the engine may be controlled to reduce emissions, and in accordance with the state of charge of the battery bank. Fig. 7 illustrates these relationships.

As mentioned above, Fig. 7, comprising Figs. 7(a) - (c), and extending over two sheets, is a timing diagram showing the relationship between road load, engine torque output, the state of charge of the battery bank, and operation of the engine as these vary over time, during low-speed city driving, highway cruising, and extended high-load driving, thus further illustrating the control strategy employed according to the invention.

Fig. 7(a) shows the vehicle's instantaneous torque requirement, that is, the "road load", by a solid line, and the engine's instantaneous output torque by a dashed line, as these vary over time. (The engine's instantaneous output torque is repeated in Fig. 7(c), for clarity, and in order to clearly show certain additional aspects of the inventive control strategy.) The road load is expressed as a function of the engine's maximum torque output. Where the road load exceeds the engine's instantaneous output torque, the cross-hatched areas between these two lines represent torque provided by the traction and or starting motor(s); where the road load is less than the engine's instantaneous output torque, the cross-hatched areas represent charging of the batteries.

It will be appreciated that positive vehicle torque demands correspond to steady-state cruising, acceleration, hill-climbing, or the like, while negative vehicle torque requirements correspond to deceleration or descent. The engine's output torque is constrained to the range of efficient operation; as illustrated in Fig. 7 (a) and (c), this range is controlled to be between 30% and 100% of the engine's maximum torque output ("MTO"). As mentioned above, it will be appreciated that the 30% figure, as well as similar figures mentioned herein, may vary without departure from the scope of the invention.

In the example of vehicle operation shown in Fig. 7, initially the vehicle is operated only at road loads below 30% of MTO, that is, in traffic, as indicated at A. Accordingly, all the torque required is provided by the traction motor 25, and the state of charge of the battery bank 22 ("BSC"), as illustrated by Fig. 7(b), corresponds directly to the road load; when the road load is negative, BSC increases as the battery bank is charged by regenerative braking. (Changes in BSC are significantly exaggerated in order to clearly explain the events shown.)

At point B, the road load exceeds 30% of MTO for the first time on this particular trip. When this is detected by microprocessor 48, starting motor 21 spins the engine 40 at relatively high speed, and the catalytic converter 64 is preheated, causing a short drain on BSC, as shown at C. When the engine reaches the desired starting speed, e.g. 300 RPM, and the catalyst reaches a minimum effective operating temperature, e.g. at least about 350° C, the engine is started by supply of fuel and firing of its spark plugs, and the clutch is then engaged. As the engine is already rotating at relatively high speed, and will have been warmed by compression of air in its cylinders during the starting process, it begins to produce useful torque almost immediately, as indicated at D.

Thereafter, when the vehicle's torque requirement exceeds the instantaneous engine output torque, as at points E - G and P, one or both of the traction and starting motors 25 and 21 are powered to provide additional torque to the road wheels, that is, the vehicle is operated in mode V. While the road load RL remains within the engine's efficient operating range, e.g., while 30% MTO > RL > 100% of MTO, the vehicle is operated in mode IV. During mode IV operation, if the engine's instantaneous torque output exceeds the vehicle's torque requirement, but the battery is relatively fully charged, as at point H, the engine's torque output is reduced to match the road load; when MTO exceeds the road load, and BSC falls below a predetermined level (see Fig. 7(b)), as at I and J, the excess torque available from engine 40 is used to charge the batteries, as indicated at K and L (Fig. 7(c)). When the vehicle's torque requirement is less than the minimum permissible engine torque output, as at M, the engine is again used to charge the batteries, and regenerative braking is also performed, further charging the batteries. If the batteries become substantially fully charged, e.g., during a long descent, as at N, the engine may be shut off entirely, as seen at Q in Fig. 7(c).

More particularly, during deceleration or "coast-down", the engine may be "motored", that is, driven by torque from the wheels, with the clutch engaged, but with at least the fuel supply shut off. In addition to using no fuel, this has the advantage that when the operator next requires torque, e.g., when reaching the point at the bottom of a hill, the engine is rotating and can be immediately restarted by supply of fuel. The exhaust valves might be opened during the motoring of the engine to reduce pumping losses.

The rate of change of the engine's torque output is limited, e.g., to 2% or less per revolution, as indicated by noting that the dashed line in Fig. 7(a), indicating the instantaneous engine output torque, lags the solid line indicating the vehicle's instantaneous torque requirement. Thus limiting the rate of change of engine output torque is preferred to limit undesirable emissions and improve fuel economy; that is, as the stoichiometric fuel/air ratio varies somewhat as the load changes, simply opening the throttle and causing additional fuel to be injected (as is typically practiced) upon the operator's depressing the accelerator pedal would result in non-stoichiometric, inefficient combustion. According to this aspect of the invention, the rate of change of engine torque is limited; this provides sufficient time for the essentially conventional electronic engine management and electronic fuel injection systems, which comprise a "lambda sensor" 47 (Fig. 3) for monitoring the oxygen content of the exhaust gas stream as an indication of stoichiometric combustion, to respond as the load changes, preserving stoichiometric combustion and reducing emission of unburned fuel.

The maximum permissible rate of change of engine output torque also may be varied in accordance with the state of charge of the batteries; more specifically, if the batteries are relatively discharged, it may be preferable to allow the engine's output torque to ramp-up more quickly than otherwise, in order to limit the amount of electrical power drawn from the batteries in response to an acceleration command. More generally, it is preferred to operate the engine so as to limit the amount of power drawn from the batteries, as there are unavoidable losses attendant on conversion of energy stored in the batteries to motor output torque, and during the corresponding recharging period.

As mentioned above, Fig. 9 is a high-level flowchart of the principal decision points in the control program used to control the mode of vehicle operation. Broadly speaking, the microprocessor tests sensed and calculated values for system variables, such as the vehicle's instantaneous torque requirement, i.e., the "road load" RL, the engine's instantaneous torque output ITO, both being expressed as a percentage of the engine's maximum torque output MTO, and the state of charge of the battery bank BSC, expressed as a percentage of its full charge, against setpoints, and uses the results of the comparisons to control the mode of vehicle operation.

As noted above, certain control decisions involved in the inventive control strategy illustrated in Fig. 9, and described therein as being determined in response to precise criteria (in order to clearly present the main features of the inventive operating strategy), may instead be usefully somewhat "fuzzy"; in the present application, this term is intended to indicate that the value of a setpoint (for example) may vary somewhat in response to recent history, or in response to monitored variables not discussed above. As mentioned above, it is also to be understood that the values given above for various numerical quantities may vary somewhat without departing from the invention. Specific alternatives are provided below for steps set forth in Fig. 9 that implement certain of these alternatives.

For example, in the example of the inventive control strategy discussed above, it is repeatedly stated that the transition from low-speed operation to highway cruising occurs when road load is equal to 30% of MTO. This setpoint, referred to in the appended claims as "SP", and sometimes hereinafter as the transition point (i.e., between operation in modes I and IV) is obviously arbitrary and can vary substantially, e.g., between 30 - 50% of MTO, within the scope of the invention.

It is also within the scope of the invention for the microprocessor to monitor the vehicle's operation over a period of days or weeks and reset this important setpoint in response to a repetitive driving pattern. For example, suppose the operator drives the same route from a congested suburban development to a workplace about the same time every morning; typically the road load might remain under 20% of MTO for the first few minutes of each day, then vary between 0 and 50% of MTO for another few minutes as the operator passes through a few traffic lights, and then suddenly increase to 150% of MTO as the operator accelerates onto a highway. It is within the skill of the art to program a microprocessor to record and analyze such daily patterns, and to adapt the control strategy accordingly. For example, in response to recognition of a regular pattern as above, the transition point might be adjusted to 60% of MTO; this would prevent repetitive engine starts as the road load exceeded 30% of MTO for a few hundred yards at a time, as might often occur in suburban traffic. Similarly, the engine starting routine might be initiated after the same total distance had been covered each day.

It is also within the scope of the invention to make the setpoint SP to which the road load is compared to control the transition from mode I to mode IV somewhat "fuzzy", so that SP may vary from one comparison of road load to MTO to the next depending on other variables. For example, as discussed above, if during low-speed operation the operator depresses the accelerator pedal rapidly, this can be treated as an indication that full power will shortly be required, and the engine-starting operation begun before the road load reaches any particular setpoint SP.

The value of the transition point may also vary in dependence on the mode of operation in effect when the road load equals a given setpoint SP. For example, suppose the setpoint at which the mode of operation is controlled to change from the low-speed mode to the highway cruising mode is normally set to 30% of MTO, as in the examples discussed above. If traffic conditions were such that the road load fluctuated around this value, and engine operation were controlled solely in response to road load, the engine would be repeatedly started and shut off as the road load exceeded 30% of MTO for a few hundred yards at a time, and then fell back below 30% of MTO, as might often occur in suburban traffic. Repeated restarts might also occur if the road load averaged over 30% of MTO but occasionally dropped below this value, as might occur in moderate-speed, flat-road cruising.

By monitoring the road load over time, and comparing it to different setpoints accordingly, much of this undesirable repetitive sequence of engine starting and shut-off can be eliminated. It might be preferable to commence mode IV operation upon the occurrence of differing conditions; for example, mode IV might be entered from mode I only after the road load exceeded a first, lower setpoint SP for an extended period of time, so that the engine would be run for extended low-speed cruising, but to start the engine immediately if the road load exceeded a higher setpoint SP2, e.g. 50% of MTO, as during acceleration to highway speed. Similarly, the engine might preferably be shut down only if the road load was less than a minimum setpoint for mode IV operation for an extended period of time. Thus providing "hysteresis" in the mode-switching determination would limit repetitive engine starts in certain types of driving. These limits could be further adjusted as the driving pattern became clear, i.e., as discerned by the microprocessor.

In a further refinement, the setpoint at which the engine is shut off as the road load droppped below the usual minimum value for mode IV operation could vary dependent on BSC; if the batteries were substantially fully charged, the engine might be shut off as road load dropped below 30% of MTO, but if their charge was lower the engine might be controlled to continue to run, even at a stop, i.e., zero road load, to charge the batteries. Of course, the clutch would still have to be disengaged at when the road load fell below 20 - 30% of MTO, in order that the engine could run at an efficient speed for production of torque.

Fig. 9 thus shows the main decision points of the control program run by the microprocessor, with the transition point between mode I, low-speed operation, and mode IV highway cruising, set at a road load equal to 30% of MTO. Examples are then given for some of the various options discussed above, by substituting various of the decision points with alternatives indicated below. Other optional points not specifically shown but discussed herein are within the scope of the invention.

The control program is entered at step 100, where the microprocessor determines whether the road load RL is less than 30% of MTO. If the answer is yes ("Y"), the clutch is disengaged if necessary as indicated at steps 103 and 105. The state of charge of the battery bank BSC is then tested at step 110; if BSC is between 50 and 70% of full charge, the vehicle can operate for some time as a straight electric vehicle, and mode I is accordingly entered, as indicated at 115. A "mode I" loop is then established, including steps 100, 103, and 110; as long as all conditions tested in these steps remain stable, the vehicle continues to be operated in mode I.

However, if at step 110 it was determined that BSC was less than 50% of its maximum value ("N"), the engine should be run, if possible, to charge the battery bank, up to, for example, 75% of its maximum charge, as tested at step 120. If the engine is already running, as tested at step 125, the battery is charged as indicated at 130, and a stable "mode II" loop, as noted at 135, is established including steps 100, 103, 110, 120, 125, and 130. (Normal operation of step 110 would be bypassed or disabled in this mode to prevent battery charging from being stopped when BSC reaches 70%). If the engine is not running, an engine starting subroutine (shown separately, by Fig. 9(a), is entered, as indicated at step 140.

In the engine starting subroutine, beginning with the 'enter' block 141, the clutch is disengaged if necessary at steps 142 - 143, and the catalyst temperature is tested at 145, to determine whether it is at least about 350° C; the catalyst is heated as necessary, as indicated at 150. When the catalyst is heated suitably, the engine is then spun by the starter motor until a desired starting speed is reached, as indicated by the loop including blocks 155 and 160. When the engine reaches its desired starting speed, it is started at step 165, by supply of fuel and firing of its spark plugs, concluding the engine starting subroutine as indicated by 'return' block 170. If the engine starting subroutine was entered from the mode II loop, as above, the battery bank may then be charged as indicated at 130.

If in performance of step 120 it appeared that BSC was less than 40%, which would only occur upon failure of the engine or charging system, step 175 may be performed; thus, if 30% < BSC < 40%, the vehicle may be operated in mode III as an electric car, to provide emergency operation. However, this should be strictly limited to avoid deep discharge of the battery bank, tending to shorten its useful life. As indicated at 177, the vehicle is completely disabled if BSC falls below 30%.

If RL is determined to exceed 30% of MTO in step 100, the program goes to step 180, where the term 30% > RL > 100% is evaluated; that is, the microprocessor determines whether the road load is appropriate for highway cruising in mode IV. If so, and if the engine is running, as tested at step 190, a stable loop including steps 180 and 190 is established; the system remains in mode IV, as indicated at 185, until the state of one of these tests changes.

If in step 190 it is determined that the engine is not running, the engine start subroutine, starting with step 140 as discussed above, is entered as indicated at 195; upon return, at 200, the clutch is engaged at 210, and the loop including steps 180 and 190 is entered.

As noted, in step 180 it is determined whether RL is between 30 and 100% of MTO; if not, it is determined in step 220 whether RL is greater than 100% of MTO. If so, mode V is entered, and the traction motor (and optionally the starting motor) is powered to provide additional torque propelling the vehicle, as indicated at 230. A loop including steps 220 and 230 is thus established, so that mode V remains stable until the state of the test performed in step 220 changes.

When in performance of step 220, it appears that RL is now less than 100% of MTO, it is then determined in step 215 whether RL is less than 30% of MTO. If so, the engine is shut off, as indicated at 240, and the program returns to step 100; if not, the program is returned to step 180.

It will be appreciated that according to the Fig. 9 flowchart, it is possible for the system to proceed directly from mode I to mode V, that is, from step 100 to step 220, if the road load rapidly increases from less than 30% of MTO to more than 100% of MTO. Permitting the operator to thus operate the system is an important safety feature, for example when fast acceleration from a stop is required to merge into highway traffic. In these circumstances the engine would not be running during initial operation in mode V, necessitating a significant drain on the battery bank and overdriving the traction motor. Accordingly, steps equivalent to steps 190, 195, and 210 (including the engine starting subroutine) are to be understood to follow step 220 and precede step 230. That is, in the event mode IV was effectively omitted in passing directly from mode I to mode V, the engine is started and the clutch engaged as soon as possible; these duplicate steps are not shown, for clarity.

In the above discussion of Fig. 9, it was assumed that the transition point between low-speed and highway operation is set so that the transition occurs when the road load is equal to 30% of MTO under all circumstances. However, as discussed above, it may be desirable to operate the system so that the vehicle goes from the low-speed mode I to the highway-cruising mode IV at a higher road load, e.g., 50% of MTO, than the road load at which the low-speed mode is reentered, e.g., when road load in mode IV falls to below 20%. This "hysteresis" of the mode switching point -- for example, allowing the vehicle to accelerate in mode I up to road loads of up to 50% of MTO, but not shutting the engine off, ending mode IV operation, until road load falls below 20% of MTO -- avoids excessive mode-switching during periods of fluctuating road load.

For example, in typical suburban traffic, one might commonly accelerate past 30% of MTO, to what might otherwise be a normal cruising speed, but stop again shortly thereafter; it would be inefficient to thus repetitively stop and restart the engine as the load fluctuates around 30%. Hysteresis might similarly be useful in avoiding needless mode switching in moderate-speed, flat road cruising in mode IV, when the road load might well occasionally drop below 30%; again, it would be inefficient to repeatedly shut off and restart the engine.

Thus providing differing mode switching points depending on the direction of the change in road load can be accomplished readily by monitoring the road load RL as a function of time, and taking appropriate control action. For example, if the system is maintained in mode I until RL exceeds the "normal" 30% of MTO mode switching point for a period of, for example, 30 seconds, and without exceeding 50% of MTO, the excessive mode switching otherwise likely to be encountered in suburban traffic can be largely avoided. Fig. 9(b) shows a step 100' replacing step 100 in Fig. 9 and implementing this "low-speed hysteresis". As indicated, the system remains in the low-speed mode I as long as RL is less than 30% of MTO, or unless RL exceeds 30% of MTO for more than 30 seconds, or exceeds 50% of MTO; if either of the latter conditions occurs, the program goes to step 180, initiating mode IV operation.

Similarly, hysteresis in mode IV cruising, in order to implement excessive mode shifting that might otherwise occur if the road load fluctuates around a fixed mode switching point, can be implemented by simply providing that the system remains in mode IV as long as RL remains between 30 and 100% of MTO, unless RL is less than RL for more than 30 seconds, or exceeds 100% of MTO. This can be implemented as shown in Fig. 9(c); a revised step 215' replaces step 215 of Fig. 9, and provides that, if the system is in mode IV, unless RL is less than 30% of MTO for more than 30 seconds, step 180 is re-entered, thus preserving the "mode IV loop"; when RL is less than 30% of MTO for more than 30 seconds, the engine is shut down, at step 240, control is passed to step 100, and mode I re-entered.

Numerous further modifications to the detailed control strategy of the invention as illustrated in Figs. 6 - 9 will occur to those of skill in the art, and are within the scope of the invention. For example, it may be desirable to vary the operation of the system insofar as responsive to BSC in accordance with monitored variables indicative of battery temperature, ambient temperature, and the like; e.g., on a hot day it may be advisable to avoid charging the battery bank to more than 60% of full charge, as this may cause overheating. Further, as noted above the transition points between modes I, IV, and V in particular may vary in accordance with the operator's commands, so as to provide maximum vehicle responsiveness for safety and ease of consumer acceptance, and over periods of days or weeks, as the microprocessor builds up a detailed historical record of the vehicle's usage pattern, from which an optimized control strategy may be derived.

It may also be possible to provide the microprocessor with useful control information from the operator, without requiring the operator to understand the workings of the system in detail. For example, operators are now well-accustomed to set a "cruise control" when a desired cruising speed is reached; thereafter, existing engine management systems control the instantaneous engine torque output with respect to variation in the road load to maintain vehicle speed substantially constant. It would be a simple matter for the microprocessor to accept a desired cruising speed thus input by the operator, as indicated in Fig. 4. The operator would then be relieved of continuous throttle control, and the microprocessor would similarly control the instantaneous engine torque output with respect to variation in the road load to maintain vehicle speed substantially constant, both as conventional; however, according to the invention, the microprocessor would also reset the transition point so that the system would remain in cruising mode IV until the operator had indicated to the contrary, i.e., by exiting cruise mode.

As discussed above, according to a further embodiment of the invention, additional flexibility is provided to the hybrid vehicle as described above by providing a turbocharger 100, also controlled by the microprocessor 48, so as to be operated when useful in further improving vehicle efficiency and drivability and not at other times. Providing the "turbocharger-on-demand" allows the engine to function efficiently in different torque output ranges, as needed. Essentially, the turbocharger 100 is employed only when the vehicle's torque requirements, the "road load" as above, exceeds the engine's normally-aspirated maximum torque capacity for a relatively extended period T of time, for example, during extended high-speed driving, towing a trailer, or driving up a long hill. Where the road load exceeds the engine's maximum torque for a relatively short period less than T, the traction motor (and possibly also the starting motor) are used to provide additional torque, as in the '970 patent and above. According to a further aspect of the invention, the period T is controlled in response to the state of charge of the battery bank; when the battery bank is relatively depleted, the turbocharger is activated sooner than otherwise, so as to preserve the battery bank.

As is well known to those of skill in the art, a turbocharger 100 (see Fig. 11) typically comprises two turbine wheels 102 and 104 on a common shaft 106, referred to herein as the exhaust-side and air-side wheels respectively. The flow of exhaust gas from engine 40 causes exhaust-side wheel 102 to spin; air-side wheel 104 is driven by shaft 106, drawing air into the body of turbocharger 100 through air filter 110. Waste heat in the exhaust stream is thus effectively recovered by compressing the intake air, which is then ducted to the intake manifold 122 of engine 40. Additional fuel can be burned in the additional air thus provided, so that additional torque is produced. The compressed air may be cooled adiabatically by heat exchange with ambient air in intercooler 117 if desired, further improving thermal efficiency of engine 40.

In typical turbocharger operation, a "wastegate" 114 is provided to limit the exhaust pressure incident on exhaust-side wheel 102, thus limiting the speed of air-side wheel 104 and regulating the "boost" provided by the turbocharger. The waste gate may be spring-loaded to open at a fixed boost pressure (as typically provided to regulate the output of turbocharged racing engines) or may be controlled in a feedback loop using the pressure in the engine intake manifold as the control variable. See Automotive Handbook, 2nd Ed., Robert Bosch GmbH (1986), p. 356. Further, in conventional practice, the turbocharger is used at all times, and the engine's design is optimized accordingly. For example, turbocharged gasoline engines typically have compression ratios of 7 or 8 to 1, as compared to 9 - 11 to 1 for normally-aspirated engines. Neither practice is employed according to the present invention; the turbocharger is controlled by the microprocessor to operate only when needed, and the engine's compression ratio, and other design parameters, are selected based on design criteria relevant when operated in the normally-aspirated mode.

According to the present invention, the waste gate 114 is controlled by the microprocessor 48; except under circumstances when the extra power provided by turbocharging is needed, the waste gate 114 is open (as shown in Fig. 1), so that the engine exhaust essentially bypasses the turbocharger 100. A valve 120, also controlled by microprocessor 48, may also be provided in the duct connecting the air side of the turbocharger 100 and the intake manifold 122 of the engine, so that the engine 40 draws air through the turbocharger only when in use; a second air filter 124 is then also provided.

Commonly, turbocharging for automotive use is employed in order that relatively small-displacement engines will produce high horsepower at the upper end of their operating range; the other design parameters of such engines (e.g., camshaft profiles) are chosen similarly. Engines thus optimized for high-rpm horsepower produce reduced low-speed torque, that is, are "peaky" compared to normally-aspirated engines. A variable-ratio transmission is essential to obtain reasonable acceleration from low speeds. Stated differently, turbocharging as usually implemented for automotive use provides relatively high torque at the upper end of the engine's speed range, but relatively poor torque at lower speeds; such an engine would be unsuitable in practice of the present invention. Moreover, turbocharged engines typically suffer "turbo lag", that is, slow response to sudden increase in torque required. As discussed further below, this particular problem is overcome by use of the turbocharger in a hybrid vehicle according to the invention.

Those of skill in the art will recognize that turbocharged engines are also used in heavy-load road vehicle applications, such as trucks and the like, but these vehicles demand transmissions having 12, 16, or more ratios, so that the engine's narrow power peak can be matched to the load, and exhibit extremely poor acceleration, as well as excessive gear-changing and cost, all of which would be unacceptable to the ordinary motorist. Thus, normally-turbocharged engines, of both the low-speed truck type, or the high-speed automotive type, are not satisfactory in implementation of the present invention.

As also noted above, as conventionally employed, a turbocharger is used at all times. By comparison, according to the present invention, the turbocharger is controlled by the microprocessor 48 to be used only under specified driving conditions, allowing the engine to be operated efficiently in other modes.

Fig. 12, as indicated above, is a diagram comparable to Fig. 6. The differing modes of operation of the hybrid vehicle powertrain of the invention shown thereon are identical to those of the Figs. 3 and 4 vehicle illustrated in Fig. 6, with the addition of turbocharged mode VI. Similarly, Fig. 13 is similar to Fig. 7, but illustrates the operation of a vehicle including a "turbocharger-on-demand" according to this aspect of the invention.

As shown in Fig. 12, according to this aspect of the present invention, a further region VI is provided, wherein the turbocharger 100 is activated by the microprocessor 48 when it detects that the road load has exceeded the engine's maximum output for more than a period of time T. Typically these events will occur when the vehicle is towing a trailer or is otherwise heavily laden, is climbing a long hill, or is operated at high speed for a long period of time.

More specifically, when the road load only exceeds the engine's maximum power for a short time, less than T, as during acceleration onto a highway or during passing, the traction motor is employed to provide the additional torque required, as described above. When the road load exceeds the engine's maximum power for a time greater than T, the turbocharger is energized by closing waste gate 114, and operating valve 120, if provided, to open the duct between the air-side of turbocharger 100 and the intake manifold 122 of engine 40. As the turbocharger "spools up" to its operating speed range, the maximum torque produced by engine 40 increases, and the torque produced by traction motor 25 is gradually reduced. This sequence of events is discussed further below in connection with Fig. 13.

Fig. 12 also shows, by the angle of the line separating regions V and VI with respect to the t = 0 plane, that T can vary with the state of charge of the battery bank 22; when the battery bank is fully charged, T is longer -- that is, energy from the battery bank is used to satisfy road load in excess of the engine's maximum torque output for a longer period -- than when the battery bank is relatively less fully charged. The turbocharger can also be operated to provide additional engine power when full acceleration is needed, e.g., upon detection of the operator's aggressively pressing the accelerator pedal down completely.

As mentioned above, Fig. 13, comprising Figs. 13(a) - (c), and extending over two sheets, is a timing diagram showing the relationship between road load, engine torque output, the state of charge of the battery bank, and operation of the engine in electric car, normally-aspirated and turbocharged modes as these vary over time, during low-speed city driving, highway cruising, and extended high-load driving, thus further illustrating the control strategy employed according to the invention. Fig. 13 is essentially identical to Fig. 7, with the addition of illustration of the operation of turbocharger 100 when the road load exceeds 100% of MTO for more than a period of time T.

Thus, as shown in Fig. 13(a) at t_1, t_2, t_3, and t_4, the microprocessor monitors the length of time t during which road load exceeds 100% of MTO, and compares t continually to a value T preferably varied in accordance with BSC; this is shown by the relative lengths of the arrows marked T on Fig. 13(b). While $t < T$, as at E, F, and G in Fig. 13(a), the excess torque required by the road load is provided by either or both of the traction and starting motors, drawing power from the battery bank. Note that the motors together are rated to be capable of continuously providing torque up to at least 100% of MTO, in accordance with the '970 patent; this allows the motors to provide adequate torque for good vehicle performance without a variable-ratio transmission. The motors may also be overdriven to provide more than their rated torque, well over 100% of MTO, for short periods of time, $t < T$, as at F; as noted, according to an important aspect of the invention, where torque in excess of MTO is needed for a longer period of time, $t > T$, the turbocharger is activated.

Thus, when $t_4 \geq T$, as at P, the microprocessor activates the turbocharger essentially as discussed above, that is, by closing waste gate 114 and valve 120 (if provided). As the turbocharger "spools up", which may take some seconds, and the boost it provides increases, as indicated at Q, the torque provided by the traction motor (and possibly also by the starting motor) is decreased accordingly, as indicated at R. The operator need not be aware of or take any action to initiate the turbocharger's activation; this is controlled by the microprocessor in response to monitoring the road load over time and the state of charge of the battery bank.

As discussed in connection with both Figs. 12 and 13, T is preferably varied in accordance with BSC, so that the turbocharger is activated relatively sooner when BSC is relatively low; this limits the amount of energy drained from the battery during operation of the engine and the traction motor (or both motors) when the road load exceeds 100% of MTO, so that BSC does not fall to an undesirably low value.

Those of skill in the art will recognize that provision of a microprocessor-controlled turbocharger in a hybrid vehicle according to the invention permits operation in an additional mode, providing increased flexibility in the operational scheme provided; essentially the turbocharger provides a larger engine only when needed, at no cost in efficiency at other times. This is particularly significant in meeting the goals of the hybrid vehicle of the invention. More specifically, in addition to the operational advantages noted, provision of a "turbocharger-on-demand" in the hybrid vehicle according to the invention allows the engine to be smaller than otherwise, that is, to provide adequate highway performance in a vehicle of a given weight. As the starting motor/generator must be sized such that when it is operated to charge the batteries (e.g., in extended city driving) it loads the engine adequately that the engine is operated efficiently, employment of a smaller engine allows use of a smaller generator motor. For similar reasons, provision of a smaller engine allows it to be used to efficiently propel the vehicle in highway driving commencing at lower average speeds, resulting in turn in better fuel economy. By providing the "turbocharger-on-demand" according to the invention, all these advantages can be realized without sacrifice in the ultimate performance of the vehicle.

As noted above, one convenient implementation of the "turbocharger-on-demand" according to the invention is to operate the wastegate by a solenoid or the like controlled by the microprocessor, that is, to employ the wastegate as a bypass valve except when turbocharged operations are desired. A separate bypass valve might also or alternatively be provided. The wastegate is still preferably implemented as a spring-loaded relief valve, as illustrated in Fig. 11, and as generally conventional, to limit the "boost" provided. It is also within the invention to operate the waste gate to take intermediate positions, that is, between fully-open and closed positions, so as to limit the torque to limit wheelspin as detected, and to keep the turbocharger wheels spinning at an intermediate speed, to reduce the time necessary to "spool up" to full speed. It is also within the invention to adjust the wastegate responsive to an atmospheric-pressure signal provided by a suitable sensor 107 (Fig. 11) to ensure that adequate boost is provided at higher altitudes to ensure vehicle performance.

It will also be appreciated that a supercharger, that is, a positive-displacement air pump driven by the engine, could be used to implement the differing modes of vehicle operation illustrated in Figs. 12 and 13; for example, the supercharger's operation could be controlled by the microprocessor by driving it through an electrically-controlled clutch, and this is accordingly within the invention. However, this would be less efficient than turbocharger operation, as turbocharging effectively recovers some of the waste heat in the engine exhaust by compressing the air reaching the inlet manifold, while supercharging consumes engine torque. Turbocharging, as discussed in detail, is accordingly preferred.

It will therefore be appreciated that by providing the internal-combustion engine of a hybrid vehicle with a turbocharger controlled by the vehicle's controller to operate only during extended periods of high torque requirements, a number of important advantages are realized, both as compared to a conventional system wherein the turbocharger is continually activated, or as compared to a large engine having the same maximum torque as the smaller turbocharged engine. As to the latter, as explained above all internal combustion engines are extremely inefficient, except when operated at near peak torque output; the larger the engine, the less frequently this will occur. As to the former, employing a conventionally-turbocharged engine, having the typical "peaky" torque curve, would not allow the engine to be used to propel the vehicle during highway driving without a variable-speed transmission. Instead, by providing a "turbocharger-on-demand", that is, which is only employed when it is actually needed, the vehicle of the invention can employ a small engine optimized for its main function of propelling the vehicle efficiently during highway cruising, and which is operable as a much larger engine when needed.

Other advantages provided by the invention include the fact that as the wastegate is normally open, the exhaust temperature will stay high, optimizing catalytic converter performance; as conventionally implemented, cooling of the exhaust gases as their energy is removed in spinning the turbocharger rotor can prevent good catalytic converter performance, especially at low speeds. Further, because the traction motor provides additional torque when needed, the "turbo lag" experienced in conventional turbocharged vehicles as the turbocharger "spools up" when the operator calls for more power is eliminated.

When constructed and operated according to the invention, that is, as a hybrid vehicle having an internal-combustion engine with a turbocharger controlled by the vehicle's controller to operate only during extended periods of high torque requirements, even a heavy vehicle having poor aerodynamic characteristics, such as a sport-utility vehicle or van, can offer good acceleration and hill-climbing and towing ability, while still providing extremely good fuel economy and extremely low emissions.

Another aspect of the invention concerns the method of sizing the various components of the system. Examples were given above of component selection for a vehicle not including a turbocharger according to this aspect of the present invention. Using as a further example a 5,500 pound "sport-utility vehicle" ("SUV") required to have reasonable acceleration and passing performance even while towing a 6,000 pound trailer, sizing of the components of the hybrid drive system of the present invention is preferably accomplished as follows:

1. An internal combustion engine is selected which has sufficient torque to drive the SUV without trailer at medium to high speed along a moderate grade. More specifically, a typical specification will require that the engine be sufficiently powerful to proceed up a 6% grade of unlimited extent at 50 mph. An engine of 100 hp at 6,000 maximum RPM is appropriate to meet this requirement for the SUV described above.

2. If a trailer is to be towed, a turbocharger, operated as above, is added. The turbocharger is sized so that when it is operated the engine provides up to 140 hp.

3. The charger motor is sized so as to provide an engine load

equal to approximately 70% of the engine's maximum torque at a suitable engine speed. In this way fuel is used efficiently during battery charging, as discussed above. In the example, the charger motor is preferably an induction motor of 15 - 30 hp capacity, possibly configured as a "faceplate" or "pancake" type, essentially forming the flywheel of the engine. Such a motor can be operated as a generator requiring 20 - 22 hp, which is 70% of the maximum torque produced by the engine specified above when operated at 1200 - 1500 rpm; battery charging can thus be accomplished in a very fuel-efficient manner. This is essentially equivalent to specifying the starter/generator based on its ability to accept at least about 30% of the engine's maximum torque output (MTO, as above); in this way the engine is operated at a fuel-efficient power level during charging.

4. The traction motor is sized to provide adequate torque at zero speed to overcome the maximum grade specified from rest, with the starter motor assisting as needed. In the example the traction motor may be an induction motor of 100 hp, with a maximum speed of 16,000 rpm, and be connected to the drive wheels through a chain drive providing the appropriate reduction ratio. It will be appreciated that in this example the total torque available from the starting and traction motors combined exceeds that provided by the engine, in accordance with an aspect of the invention of the '970 patent.

5. The torque vs. speed profile of the traction motor is selected to allow city driving, in particular, to provide acceleration sufficient to conform to the Federal urban driving fuel mileage test ("FUDS"), without use of torque from the engine.

6. The battery capacity is then selected to provide sufficient cycle life, i.e., so as not to be overstressed by deep discharge over many repetitive driving cycles. In the example, an 800 v, 8.5 KAH battery pack is provided. The battery bank should be sized and arranged so that the maximum current to be absorbed with the starter/generator being driven at 30% of MTO is no more than 50

amperes.

7. Finally, the controller is provided with software to implement the control scheme described in detail above, that is, to use the traction motor as the only source of drive torque at low speed, to start the engine when the road load increases beyond a setpoint, to operate the turbocharger when the road load exceeds the engine's maximum torque for more than a prescribed time T, which may be varied in accordance with the state of charge of the batteries, and otherwise as described above. Essentially, the controller is operated so that the engine is only operated in a fuel-efficient range, e.g., driving a load at least equal to 30% of MTO.

Simulations show that vehicles configured as above will generally be capable of 80 - 100% improvement in fuel economy with respect to conventional vehicles of similar size, weight and performance characteristics.

Further Improvements according to the Continuation-in-Part

Component Specification

In addition to the methods of sizing the components of the powertrain and ancillary components set forth above, another method of doing so is generally as follows. As set forth above, it is desirable for a number of reasons to operate the system of the invention at relatively high voltages, e.g., 800 V or above, in the case of larger vehicles; this reduces the current flowing throughout the system, which allows use of plug-in rather than bolted connectors, allows use of inexpensive automatic disconnects, and reduces resistance heating losses.

More particularly, suppose that the "average maximum" current (e.g., defined as the maximum current flowing for more than, for example, thirty seconds; under most circumstances, the average current would be much less) is controlled to be 50 A. This allows use of inexpensive mass-produced plug-in connectors, and can be controlled by inexpensive mass-produced power electronic components, as needed to construct the inverter/charger units. These components can be designed to conduct up to approximately 200 A for up to thirty seconds, so that full acceleration can be provided for a time sufficient for the vehicle to reach essentially its maximum speed; according to this aspect of the invention, the peak current can accordingly be set at, for example, 150 A, and the power electronics components then sized based on this value.

More particularly, it appears useful to size the components with respect to one another, in particular, the battery bank with respect to the traction motor(s), so that the peak current is no more than about 150 A, and so that under peak electrical loading (usually under acceleration) a ratio of at least 2.5 : 1 of the battery voltage to the peak current is exceeded.

For example, suppose it is desired to implement the invention with respect to a relatively heavy, e.g., 6000 pound, vehicle having target acceleration capabilities such that a 120 HP electric traction motor, typically drawing 100 kW, will be required. The battery bank for such a vehicle is sized to provide a nominal voltage of 830 V (i.e., when not under load); this will drop to approximately 650 V under load. The battery bank will thus be required to produce 153 A (= 100 kW/650 V) during full acceleration, and the ratio of voltage to peak current is 3.92 (= 650 V/153 A).

In another example, of a much lighter 3000 lb vehicle, a 80 HP, 60 kW motor might be sufficient. To keep the peak current to 115 A, a battery bank of 600 V nominal, 500 V under load would be required. The ratio is then 4.3 (= 500V/115 A).

By comparison, insofar as known to the inventors, the Toyota "Prius" hybrid car now being marketed uses a 30 kW motor, and its battery bank provides approximately 230 V under load; the current required is thus approximately 120 A (= 30 kW/230 V) and the ratio between the voltage under load and the peak current is only about 2 (= 230V/120A). The motor in the Prius is incapable of providing adequate acceleration without assistance; this in turn requires that an internal combustion engine (ICE) be provided, and be connected to the wheels by way of a variable-ratio plantary gearset. Operation of the ICE in the Prius is thus constrained by the vehicle's torque requirements, which unacceptably complicates its operation and renders it incapable of maximally efficient operation.

Applicants assert, therefore, that according to the invention the components of the hybrid vehicles of the invention are to be sized so that the ratio between battery voltage under load to peak current is at least about 2.5, and preferably is at least 3.5 to 4 : 1; this allows adequate acceleration from low speeds without use of torque from the ICE, which in turn allows elimination of any multiple-speed or variable-ratio transmission, and allows the ICE to be declutched from the wheels except when the ICE can be employed efficiently to propel the vehicle (or the ICE is being motored during deceleration or coast-down, as above). In turn this requirement leads to operation at higher voltages than typical, to keep both average maximum and peak currents low, which provides the very significant advantages mentioned above.

Range-Broadening Transmission

As mentioned above, in some embodiments of the invention as disclosed by the present continuation-in-part application, a two-speed transmission may be provided to broaden the range of utility of the vehicle. An exemplary hybrid vehicle powertrain providing this and further additional features is shown in Fig. 14; where not otherwise described, this embodiment of the invention includes features in common with those discussed above in connnection with the '970 patent and the '817 and '743 applications.

More specifically, according to one embodiment of this aspect of the invention of the present continuation-in-part application, the range of efficient use of the hybrid vehicle of the invention is further broadened by providing a two-speed "range shifting" transmission, akin to those presently provided on SUVs and the like to allow shifting into a "low range", so that when the load is expected to be heavy for extended period of time, for example, when a heavy trailer is to be towed, the transmission can be operated to select the low range. As indicated, such a transmission would normally only be operated once per trip, and is accordingly not equivalent to a conventional multiple-speed transmission which is operated to provide a sequence of effective overall gear ratios each time the vehicle is accelerated, as suggested in numerous prior art references dealing with hybrid vehicles. However, in another embodiment, the two-speed transmission thus provided could be operated conventionally, i.e., shifted automatically during acceleration, or in "kick-down" mode responsive to the operator's demand for acceleration.

In one implementation of this aspect of the invention, as shown in Fig. 14, a planetary gearbox 33 is disposed between the output shafts from the traction motor 25 and the combination of engine 40 and starting motor 21. Gearbox 33 may be controlled directly by the operator, as conventional, or by the microprocessor 48, in response to an operator command or responsive to sensing that the road load has exceeded some predetermined value, e.g. 125% of MTO, for an extended time, e.g. several minutes, or conventionally, i.e., shifted under ordinary acceleration. Typically the gearbox 33 will be locked, providing a direct drive, under ordinary circumstances; when a lower ratio is needed, for example, when towing a heavy trailer, the gearbox 33 may be controlled to yield a reduction of 0.5 - 0.8 : 1.

Fig. 14 also shows a second traction motor 222 driving a second set of road wheels 210 through a second differential 211. This is a convenient way of providing a "four-wheel drive" hybrid vehicle, which avoids the fore-and-aft driveshaft and third differential needed by conventional four-wheel drive vehicles. In this embodiment, road wheels 210 are configured as the steering wheels of the vehicle; accordingly halfshaft assemblies 212 incorporating universal joints are employed allowing wheels 210 to pivot, as illustrated. Traction motor 222 is connected to battery bank ("BB" in Figs. 14 and 15) via a further inverter/charger 224, controlled by microprocessor 48 essentially similarly to traction motor 25. As noted above, a DC-to-DC converter 223 may be provided to allow the vehicle of the invention to be connected to vehicles having conventional 12 volt electrical systems for emergency starting purposes, and to provide 12 VDC for operation of conventional accessories.

Provision of separate traction motors 222 and 25 with respect to the corresponding pairs of road wheels 210 and 34 has several advantages with respect to conventional vehicles; as noted above, the fore-and-aft driveshaft and third differential normally required are eliminated, freeing substantial space normally required by these components. Further, "traction control" -- that is, control of the amount of torque directed to each pair of wheels responsive to the traction conditions, which is useful in driving in snow or mud, or on wet or icy pavement -- is conveniently accomplished by the microprocessor, simply by monitoring the wheels' response to given amounts of current and reducing the current to spinning wheels.

As shown by Fig. 14, vehicles according to the invention provided with two traction motors and having a planetary gearbox 33 between one traction motor and its corresponding road wheels may have a similar gearbox 213 between the second traction motor 222 and its wheels; however, this second gearbox 213 is not expected to be commonly required. Similarly, second traction motor 222 can be configured as a high-RPM unit, with its output shaft connected to the road wheels through reduction gears 214. In this implementation starter motor/generator 21 is also shown connected to the road wheels through a reduction device 34, illustrated as a chain drive; as indicated above, providing a mechanical reduction between the various motors 21, 25, and 222 and the respective road wheels is desirable in order that the motors can be selected and optimized to operate at higher speeds than engine 40.

Another possibility not shown specifically by Fig. 14, but within the scope of the invention, is to provide a "torque converter" of essentially conventional design, preferably fitted with a "lock-up" clutch, between the traction motor(s) and the corresponding wheels. As is well known, torque converters are commonly employed as part of automatic transmissions for passenger cars; the torque converter multiplies the input torque at low speeds. Such a torque converter would provide increased acceleration from rest. However, a similar effect can be obtained more simply by overdriving the traction motor(s) beyond their rated power for the first few seconds of acceleration.

Braking System

Numerous patents, including the '970 patent discussed above, recognize that one advantage of hybrid vehicles is that by appropriate control of electric motor/generators connected to the road wheels, a substantial fraction of the energy lost by conventional vehicles to friction can be recovered through regenerative braking, that is, by converting the vehicle's kinetic energy to stored battery power by using torque available at the road wheels to drive the motor(s) in generator mode, and storing the resulting electrical energy in the battery bank for use later. It is commonly estimated that most of the energy expended in accelerating the vehicle in city driving can be recovered in this way, since irrecoverable losses due to air resistance and rolling resistance contribute relatively little to the vehicle's energy demands at low speeds; by comparison, less of the energy expended to drive the vehicle at highway speeds can thus be recovered, although regenerative braking is nonetheless desirable.

More particularly, it is known to operate the motor/generator and cooperating inverter/charger electronics of hybrid vehicles so that electrical power is generated and stored in the battery bank when the operator desires to slow the vehicle. Accordingly "regenerative braking" *per se* is known. It is generally also apparent to those of skill in the art that a conventional mechanical braking system must also be provided, both for safety in the event of a failure in the regenerative braking system and to provide braking in the event the battery bank is fully charged; that is, it is important to avoid overcharging the battery bank in order to maximize its useful life. See Boll U.S. patent 5,788,597 and Frank U.S. patent 5,842,534. Similarly, mechanical braking is also needed when regenerative braking is not possible, e.g., at a stop. However, the art known to the inventors does not address all the concerns relevant to provision of a braking system of a hybrid vehicle, and to do so is another object of the present invention. See, e.g., Mikami et al patent 5,839,533, which suggests employment of engine braking (i.e., retardation of the vehicle using torque due to compression of air in the engine, and friction therein) as well as regenerative braking. The choice between the two is apparently to be made by the operator, at least in part responsive to the battery's state of charge. This would be far too complex for general acceptance.

The disclosure of the Boll patent itself is directed to optimizing the use of regenerative, engine, and mechanical braking. Boll also recognizes the desirability of maintaining a consistent brake pedal "feel" in the various brake modes.

German patent application DT 19 05 641 B2 to Strifler discloses a combined regenerative and mechanical braking system for an electric vehicle, wherein regenerative braking is effected upon the operator's first operating a brake lever, and mechanical braking is further effected upon reaching the maximum regenerative braking effect. If the battery cannot accept further charge, the mechanical braking is triggered relatively earlier, so that the operator experiences substantially the same pedal "feel" regardless whether regenerative or mechanical braking is being implemented.

The present invention also recognizes that providing proper brake "feel" to the operator is important to provision of a satisfactory vehicle, but differs substantially from the teachings of the art, and the Boll and Strifler references in particular, in the type of pedal feel preferred.

More particularly, it will be appreciated that typical vehicle mechanical brake systems provide a relatively linear relationship between the force exerted on the brake pedal and the retarding force exerted on the wheels by the brakes. It is essential that this relatively linear relationship be provided by the brake system of any hybrid vehicle, so that the operator can smoothly and controllably brake the vehicle as desired.

Providing a relatively linear relationship between the force exerted on the brake pedal and the retarding force exerted on the tires by the brakes is substantially straightforward in the case of conventional mechanical braking systems. It is much more complicated in the case of a brake system incorporating regenerative braking as described above, since such a system must provide a linear relationship between the force exerted on the brake pedal and the retarding force exerted on the tires by the brakes and motor/generator(s) under all circumstances. The problem is particularly complicated during transitions from one braking regime to another. For example, if regenerative braking is used to commence deceleration but hydraulic braking must take over, e.g., if the battery bank's state of charge becomes full during a long descent, or if a leisurely stop suddenly becomes abrupt, the braking regime must change smoothly and controllably. Regenerative braking is also not available when the vehicle is moving very slowly or is at rest, and mechanical brakes must be available under these circumstances.

In addition to maintenance of the linear relationship, it is deemed preferable by the present inventors that the operator be made aware by a change in the "feel" of the brake pedal that regenerative braking is not available, typically due to the battery bank's state of charge becoming full. As noted, this is contrary to the teachings of the Boll patent and the Strifler German application. More specifically, it is considered desirable by the inventors that the brake pedal resist depression by the operator to a degree proportional to the amount of regenerative braking actually being effected at all times.

Finally, it will be appreciated that the engine manifold vacuum as conventionally used to produce "power braking", i.e., servo assistance, is not available to a hybrid vehicle if the engine is not running; some other source of power for servo assistance is required in order that brake effort is not unacceptably high.

Fig. 15 shows schematically the principal components of a brake system for a hybrid vehicle that addresses the concerns above. Where common reference numerals are employed, the components are common with those shown in other Figures, while components not important to understanding of the braking system are omitted for simplicity. Thus, Fig. 15 shows traction motors 222 and 25 connected directly to the respective road wheels 210 and 34 respectively, omitting the other components discussed above. (In vehicles where a single traction motor drives a single pair of wheels, the improvements described herein would be provided as to these, while a four-wheel hydraulic braking system would also be provided.) As also discussed above, motors 222 and 25 are connected to battery bank 22 through respective inverter/chargers 224 and 27. Inverter/chargers 224 and 27 are controlled by microprocessor 48 to operate so that the motors can draw power from battery bank 22 and impart torque to the respective wheels to propel the vehicle in the appropriate modes of vehicle operation; during regenerative braking, inverter/chargers 224 and 27 are controlled so that the motors absorb torque from the wheels, slowing the vehicle, and storing the power thus generated in the battery bank 22.

Control of the inverter/chargers and motors to absorb a desired amount of torque from the wheels in response to a braking command from microprocessor 48 is considered to be within the skill of the art. The command itself may be determined by microprocessor 48 responsive to the degree to which brake pedal 70 is depressed, as measured by a potentiometer or similar device, indicated at 71. However, according to the invention, as above, a device is provided which varies the "feel" of the pedal (essentially its resistance to being depressed by the driver) responsive to the degree regenerative braking is in fact being implemented, thereby providing tactile feedback to the driver enabling smooth deceleration and, when appropriate, also providing an indication that regenerative braking is not available.

In the implementation of the invention shown, controllable resistance to the movement of brake pedal 70 is provided by connecting it to a microprocessor-controlled pneumatic cylinder assembly 230. A piston 232 fitting within a pneumatic cylinder 238 is driven by a connecting rod 234 attached to pedal 70 by a clevis 236. As the pedal is depressed, moving from right to left in Fig. 15, i.e., from the position shown in full to that shown in dotted lines, piston 232 expels air from the interior of cylinder 238 via vent 240. The rate at which air is expelled in response to any given pedal pressure is controlled by the spacing of a needle valve 242 from a seat 244; the needle valve 242 is moved closer to its seat 244 to increase the resistance to airflow, or moved away from seat 244 to reduce the resistance. The spacing is controlled by microprocessor 48 in order to vary the feel of the brake pedal 70; in the implementation shown, the needle valve 242 is threaded into the body in which valve seat 244 is formed, and the spacing is controlled by the microprocessor 48 by commands sent to a motor 248 rotating the needle valve 242 through a pair of gears 250. A spring 252 may be provided to return the pedal to its initial position. Thus, for example, if regenerative braking is not available, needle valve 242 is opened, so that the cylinder provides little resistance to the pedal, effectively informing the driver that only hydraulic braking is available. When regenerative braking is initiated, responsive to the microprocessor's detecting a signal from potentiometer 71, the needle valve is closed responsive to the degree of braking provided, resisting motion of the pedal 70, and so that the pedal feel provided to the operator is responsive to the degree of regenerative braking actually being effected. Obviously, numerous other arrangements to thus controllably vary the feel of the brake pedal will occur to those of skill in the art.

The mechanical design of the hydraulic braking system of the hybrid vehicle according to the invention is generally conventional, with two principal exceptions as follows: First, as the engine is not always running during movement of the hybrid vehicle, there is no consistent source of manifold vacuum as conventionally employed to provide servo assistance to braking. Therefore, a motor 254 powered directly by the battery bank BB is provided, and drives a vacuum pump 256, providing vacuum to a conventional servo booster 258, in turn operating conventional wheel brakes 260. The same motor 254 can be used to power other "ancillary" systems that in conventional vehicles are powered by the engine, such as the power steering pump and the air conditioning compressor. (The art does recognize that hybrid vehicles require different sources of power for ancillary devices, such as power steering pumps or power brake pumps. See Heidl patent 5,249,637, at col. 1, lines 7 - 45.) Second, in order that the initial movement of the brake pedal 70 activates only the regenerative braking process (in order to obtain the maximum benefit therefrom), a mechanism is provided so that the rod 262 actuating the piston within master cylinder 264 and thence the wheel brakes 260 moves a distance X before the master cylinder itself is actuated. In the implementation shown, this mechanism simply involves provision of a cross-pin 266 fixed to rod 262 and sliding within a slot 268 formed in the piston rod 270 of master cylinder 264; accordingly, the master cylinder piston(s) do not begin to move until the cross-pin 266 reaches the left end of slot

268. If the overall pedal travel Y is six inches, the distance X defined by slot 268 may be such as to allow pedal 70 to move freely through 1-1/2 inches before the piston(s) of the master cylinder 264 begins to move.

Thus, according to this aspect of the invention, potentiometer 71 provides a signal to the microprocessor 48 when the brake pedal 70 is depressed by the driver. The microprocessor 48 evaluates the battery bank state of charge (SOC) as indicated at 66; unless this is such that further charging is undesirable, the inverter/chargers 224 and 27 are operated such that motors 222 and 25 are operated as generators, so that torque provided to the wheels by the road is converted into electrical power, retarding the vehicle and charging the battery bank. The degree of retardation thus provided depends on the degree to which pedal 70 is depressed. The driver feels resistance to depressing the pedal from air resistance controlled by the opening of needle valve 242; microprocessor 48 controls the opening of valve 242 so that the pedal feel corresponds to the degree of regenerative braking that is provided. In the event regenerative braking is not available for some reason, perhaps because the battery bank is fully charged, because of some flaw in the charging circuits, or because the vehicle is stopped, valve 242 is opened, so that the driver feels little resistance to initial pedal travel, until the hydraulic brake system is activated.

It will be apparent that other types of devices for controlling the resistance to pedal travel to correspond to the amount of regenerative braking being provided, and thus to provide the desired linear relationship between pedal resistance and vehicle retardation, could be substituted for the pneumatic cylinder with microprocessor-controlled vent device shown. For example, a device controllably varying the friction between the pedal pivot and its mounting structure could be provided; a hydraulic system, similarly controlling the resistance to flow of a fluid through an orifice, might be provided; or a device varying the preload of a return spring might be provided. Other equivalent devices for achieving the same goals will occur to those of skill in the art.

HVAC System

The essential components of the heating, ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC) systems of conventional vehicles are a heater core, connected to the engine cooling system, an air conditioning system including an evaporator, and a fan to blow air over the heater core and evaporator and into the passenger cabin. There are several issues to be addressed in adapting the conventional automotive HVAC system to use in a hybrid vehicle. One is that conventionally the air conditioning compressor is driven by the engine through an electrically-controlled clutch; in a hybrid vehicle this is unacceptable, as the engine is not run constantly. Therefore the air conditioning compressor must be powered differently. Similarly, again as the engine is not run constantly, the heater core cannot be relied upon to heat the cabin.

The art does recognize that hybrid vehicles require different sources of power for ancillary devices, such as power steering pumps or power brake pumps. See Heidl patent 5,249,637, at col. 1, lines 7 - 45. Heidl's disclosure is to the effect that a motor/generator used to drive the ancillaries during electric operation can be used as a generator when the vehicle is propelled by an internal combustion engine.

Fig. 16 shows the principal components of an HVAC system for a hybrid vehicle according to the invention. The complex ducting that is typically provided to supply conditioned air throughout the vehicle cabin is represented by a single duct 300. A fan 302 forces air through the duct 300, and in succession past an evaporator 304, a heater core 306, and an electric heater 308. The evaporator 304 is connected to an air conditioning compressor 310 driven by an electric motor 312 powered from the battery bank, so that the air conditioning system can be operated independent of the engine 40.

Motor 312 could be the same motor used to power other ancillaries, such as the vacuum pump 256 (Fig. 15) used to provide servo assistance to the brake system, or could be a separate motor dedicated to powering the compressor 310. The latter may be preferred, as this would allow elimination of the clutch otherwise needed to permit operation of the compressor only when needed; elimination of the clutch would also allow elimination of seals that are a source of leaks. Another advantage of driving the compressor from the battery bank according to the invention is as follows. Conventionally, in order to be useful under all circumstances, the compressor must be sized to provide full cooling with the engine at idle. Such a compressor is very inefficient at higher speeds; by decoupling the compressor from the vehicle drivetrain according to the invention, it can be designed to be driven by motor 312 at a single optimally efficient speed. Cabin temperature can be thermostatically controlled by a throttling valve controlling the flow of refrigerant, or by turning motor 312 on and off as required. The other components of the air conditioning system, including an expansion valve 314 and a condenser 316, are shown schematically, and are generally conventional.

When the engine is running, it is efficient to employ waste heat from the engine cooling system to provide cabin heat, and accordingly an essentially conventional heater core 306 and control elements (not shown) are provided; heater core 306 is downstream of the evaporator 304 with respect to the flow of air through duct 300, as conventional, so that dehumidified air can be heated to provide efficient demisting.

In order to provide heat as may be required when the engine is not running, an electric heating element 308, essentially comprising a coil of Nichrome wire or the like, is provided, again downstream of the evaporator 304. Heating element 308 is provided with conventional controls (not shown) and is powered directly from the battery bank 22, as indicated.

It will be appreciated that according to this aspect of the invention, suitably heated or cooled cabin air is thus available regardless of the mode of operation of the vehicle, as needed in order that the hybrid vehicle of the invention suffers no comfort or convenience drawback with respect to conventional vehicles. Indeed, because ample electrical power is available from the large battery bank of the hybrid vehicle, electric heater 308 can be designed to heat the cabin much more rapidly than does the coolant heat exchanging core of a conventional engine, thus providing a convenience advantage. Similarly, conductors can be embedded in the vehicle windows and windshield and powered by the battery bank for improved electrically-operated de-misting and de-icing.

It will be appreciated that the hybrid vehicle and operational strategy therefor of the invention provide numerous advantages over the prior art discussed herein, and that further improvements and modifications thereto are within the skill of the art. Accordingly, while a preferred embodiment of the invention has been disclosed, and various alternatives mentioned specifically, the invention is not to be limited thereby.

ABSTRACT OF THE DISCLOSURE

A hybrid vehicle comprises an internal combustion engine, a traction motor, a starter motor, and a battery bank, all controlled by a microprocessor in accordance with the vehicle's instantaneous torque demands so that the engine is run only under conditions of high efficiency, typically only when the load is at least equal to 30% of the engine's maximum torque output. In some embodiments, a turbocharger may be provided, activated only when the load exceeds the engine's maximum torque output for an extended period; a two-speed transmission may further be provided, to further broaden the vehicle's load range. A hybrid brake system provides regenerative braking, with mechanical braking available in the event the battery bank is fully charged, in emergencies, or at rest; a control mechanism is provided to control the brake system to provide linear brake feel under varying circumstances.

FIG. 1
(PRIOR ART)

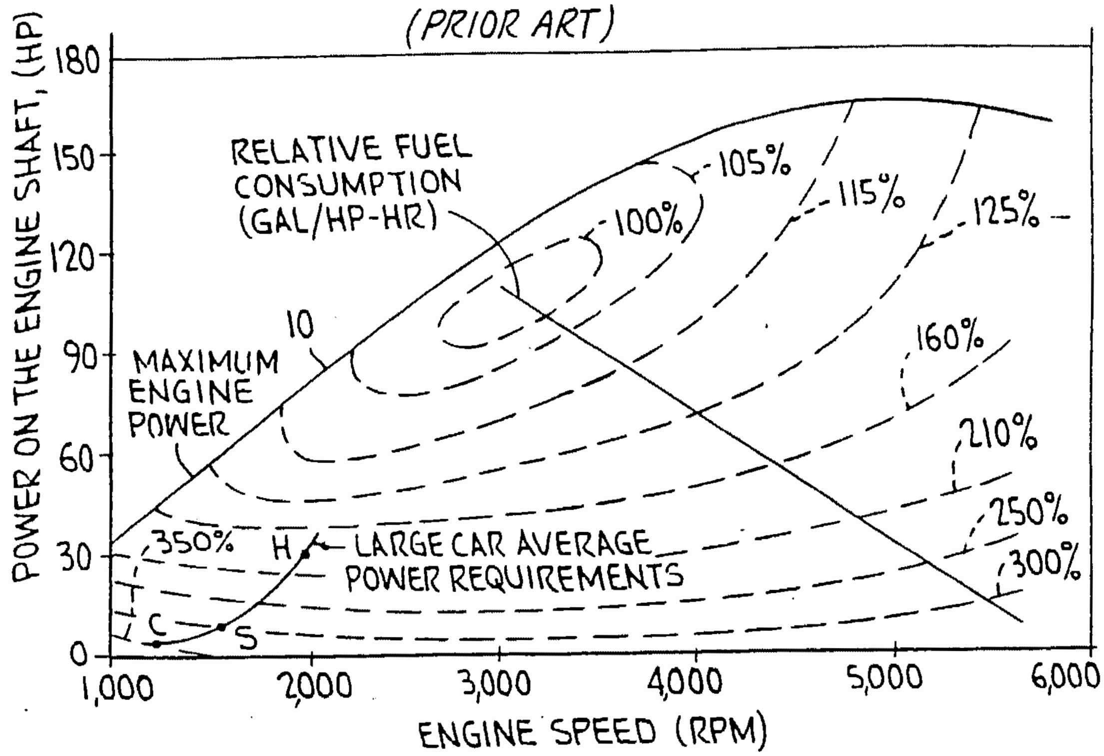
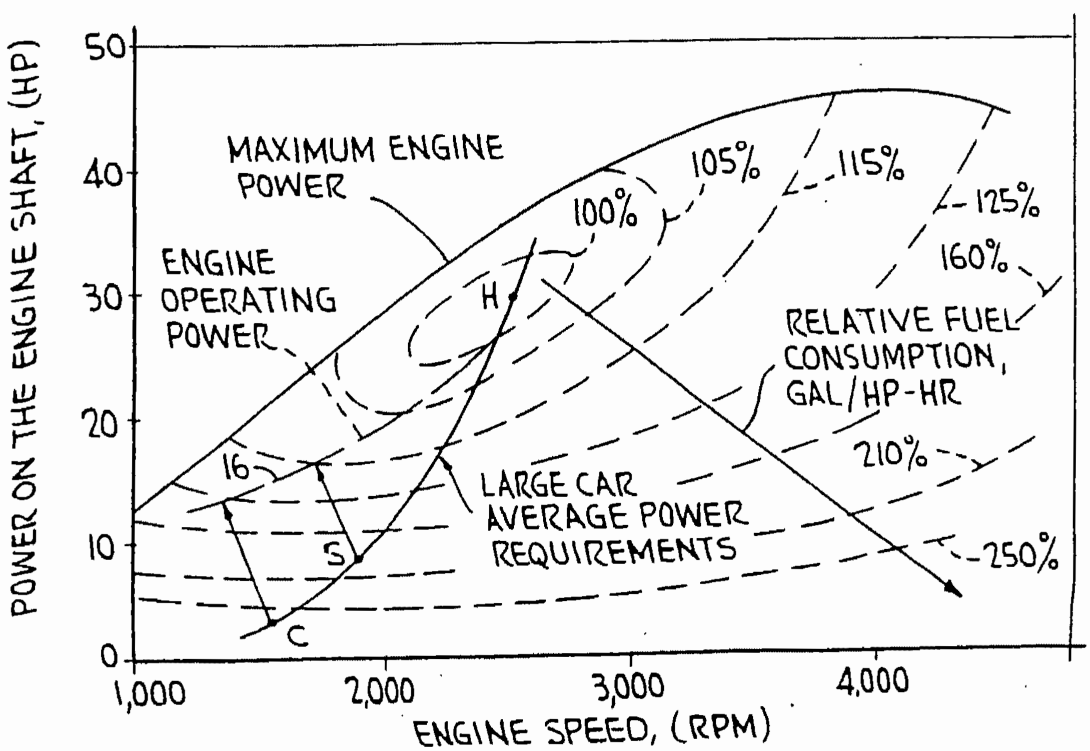


FIG. 2



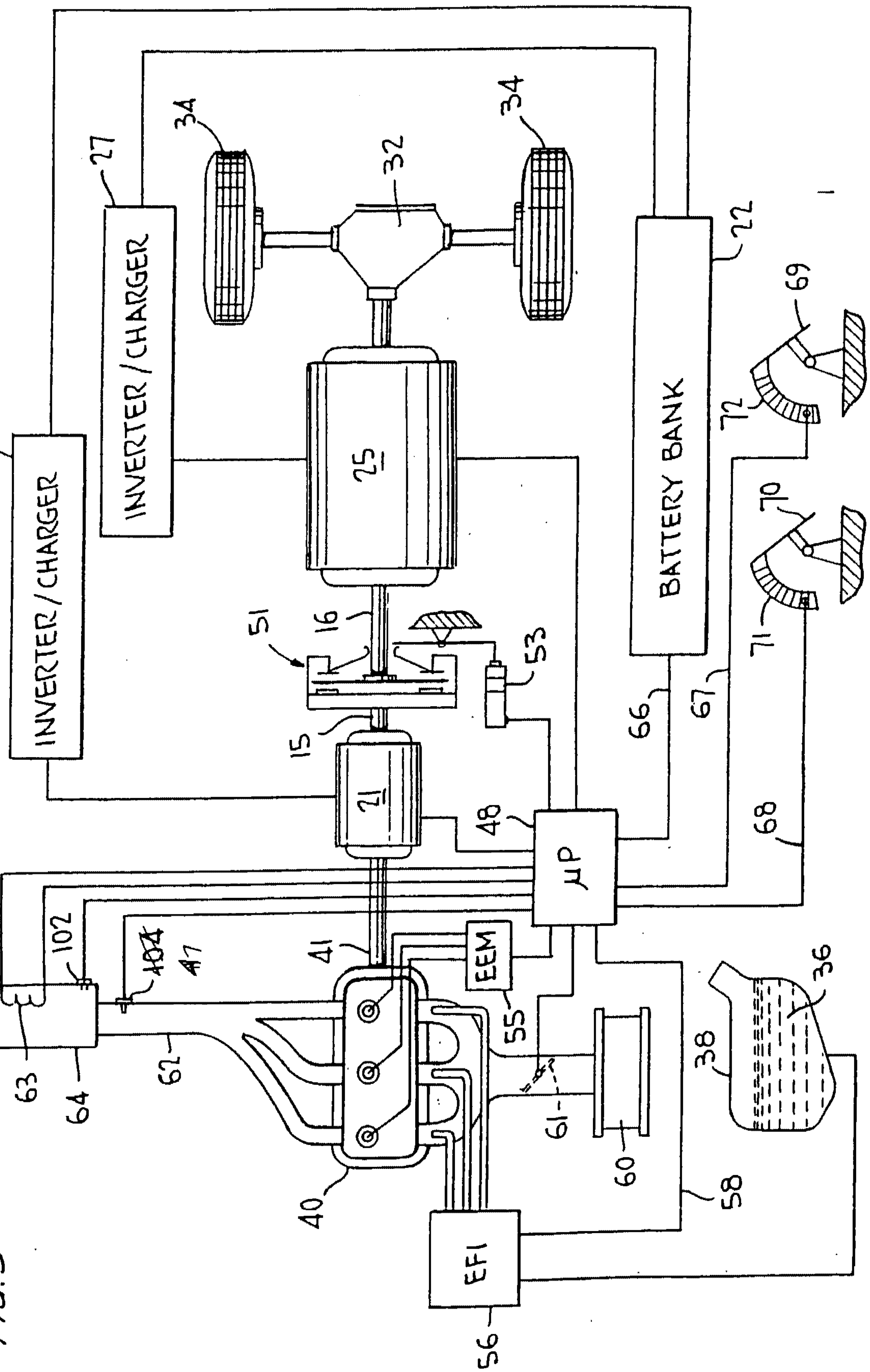

INVERTER / CHARGER
INVERTER / CHARGER
BATTERY BANK
25
21
μP
EEM
EFI
23
27
32
34
34
22
69
72
70
71
67
66
68
53
51
16
15
48
102
104
41
63
64
62
40
55
61
60
38
36
58
56

FIG. 3

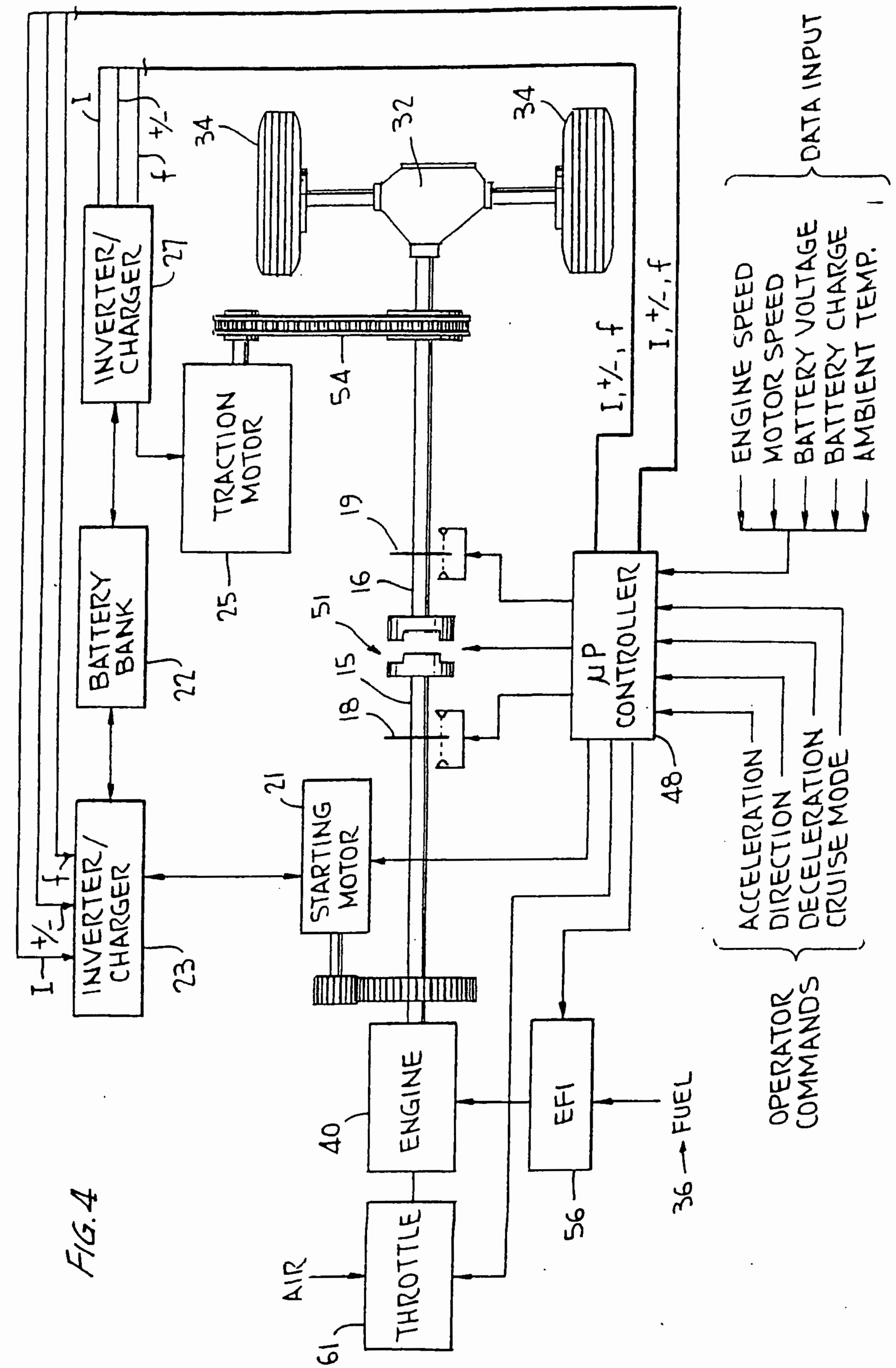

INVERTER/ CHARGER
23
INVERTER/ CHARGER
27
BATTERY BANK
22
STARTING MOTOR
21
TRACTION MOTOR
25
ENGINE
40
THROTTLE
61
AIR
EFI
56
36 → FUEL
μP CONTROLLER
48
I
+/-
f
I, +/-, f
I, +/-, f
15
16
18
19
51
54
32
34
34
ENGINE SPEED
MOTOR SPEED
BATTERY VOLTAGE
BATTERY CHARGE
AMBIENT TEMP.
DATA INPUT
ACCELERATION
DIRECTION
DECELERATION
CRUISE MODE
OPERATOR COMMANDS

FIG. 4

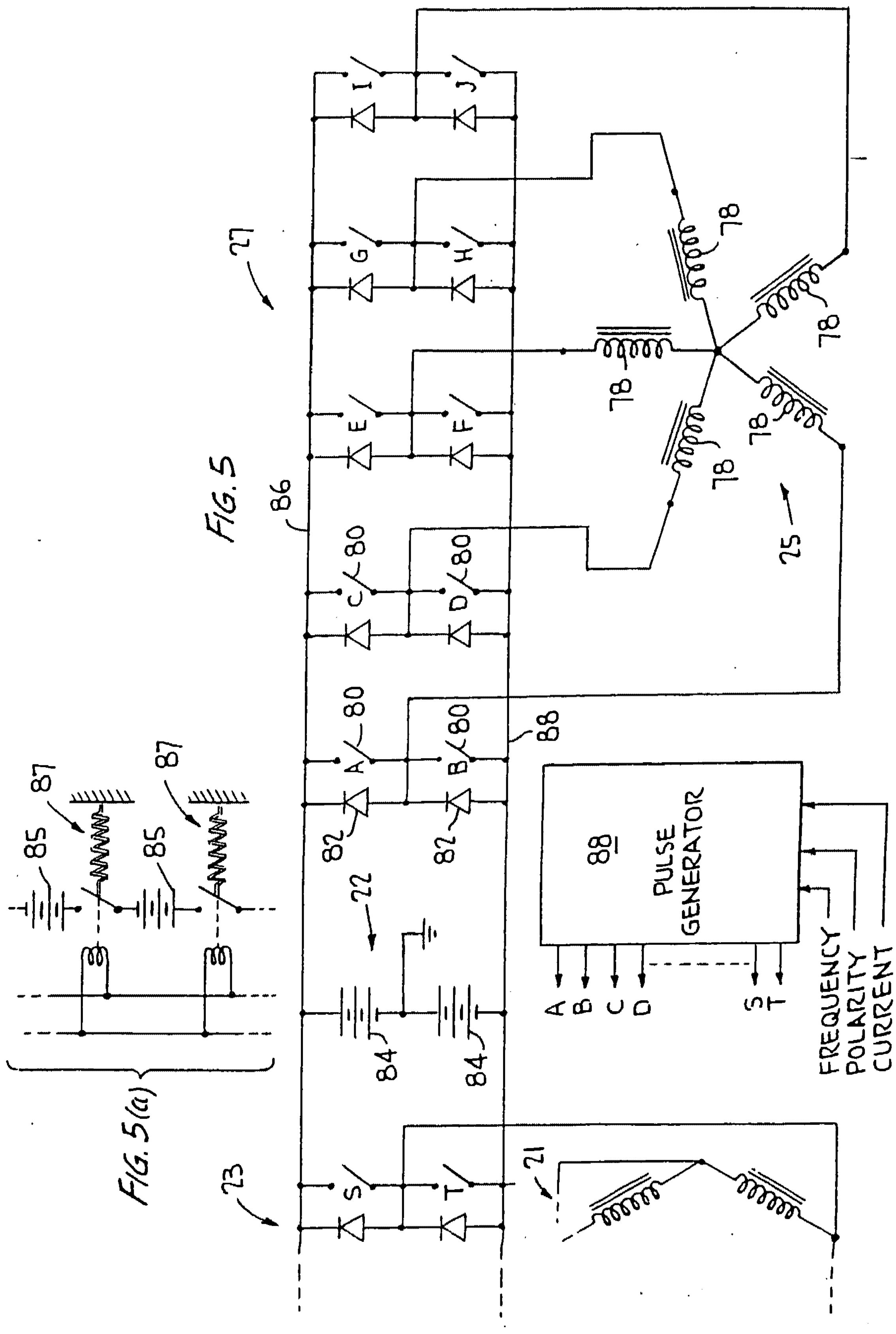

27
I
J
G
H
E
F
C
D
A
B
80
86
88
82
84
85
87
22
23
21
25
78
88
PULSE GENERATOR
A
B
C
D
S
T
FREQUENCY
POLARITY
CURRENT

FIG. 5

FIG. 5(a)

FIG. 6

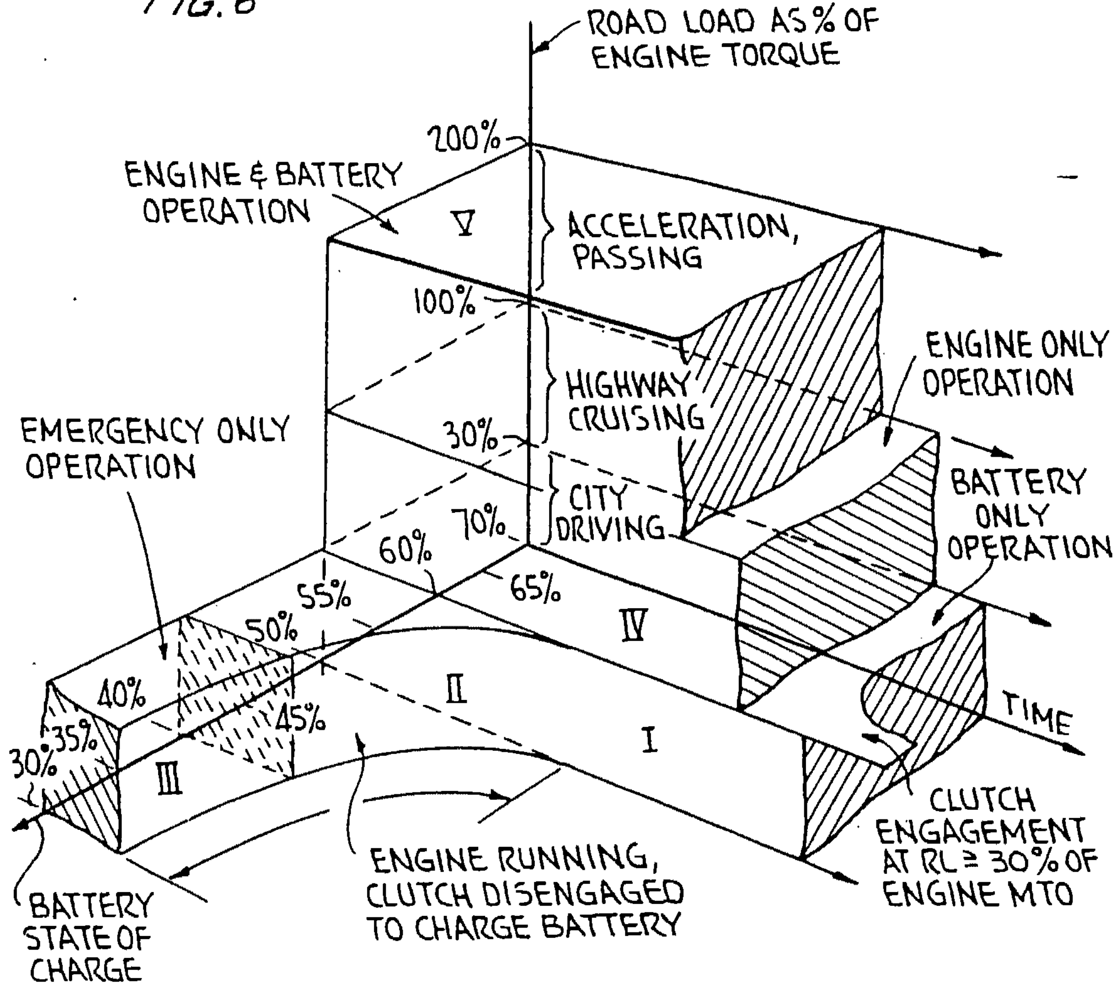

ROAD LOAD AS % OF ENGINE TORQUE
200%
ENGINE & BATTERY OPERATION
V
ACCELERATION, PASSING
100%
HIGHWAY CRUISING
ENGINE ONLY OPERATION
EMERGENCY ONLY OPERATION
30%
CITY DRIVING
70%
BATTERY ONLY OPERATION
60%
55%
65%
50%
IV
40%
II
45%
TIME
35%
30%
I
III
CLUTCH ENGAGEMENT AT RL ≥ 30% OF ENGINE MTO
ENGINE RUNNING, CLUTCH DISENGAGED TO CHARGE BATTERY
BATTERY STATE OF CHARGE

FIG. 10

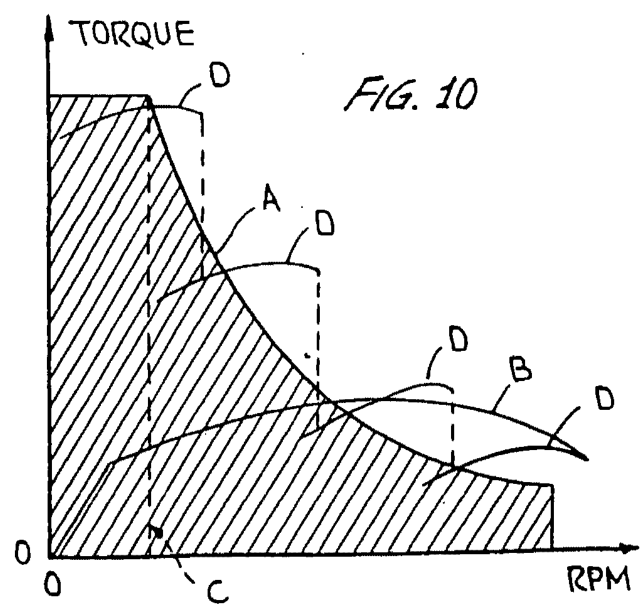

TORQUE
D
A
D
D
B
D
0
0
C
RPM

FIG. 7(a)

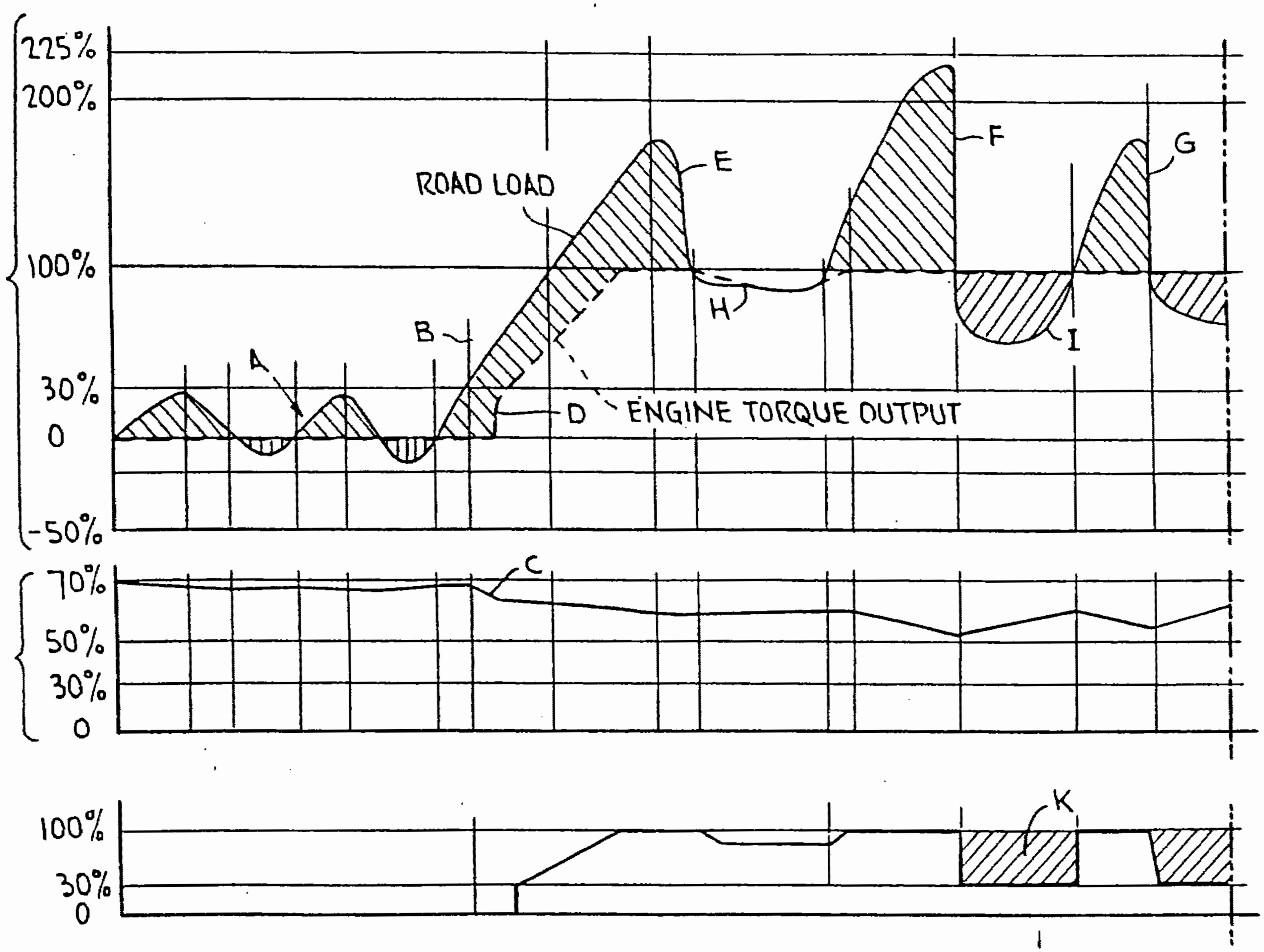
ROAD LOAD AS% OF MAX. ENGINE TORQUE OUTPUT (% MTO)

FIG. 7(b)

BATTERY BANK STATE OF CHARGE (BSC)

FIG. 7(c)

ENGINE TORQUE OUTPUT



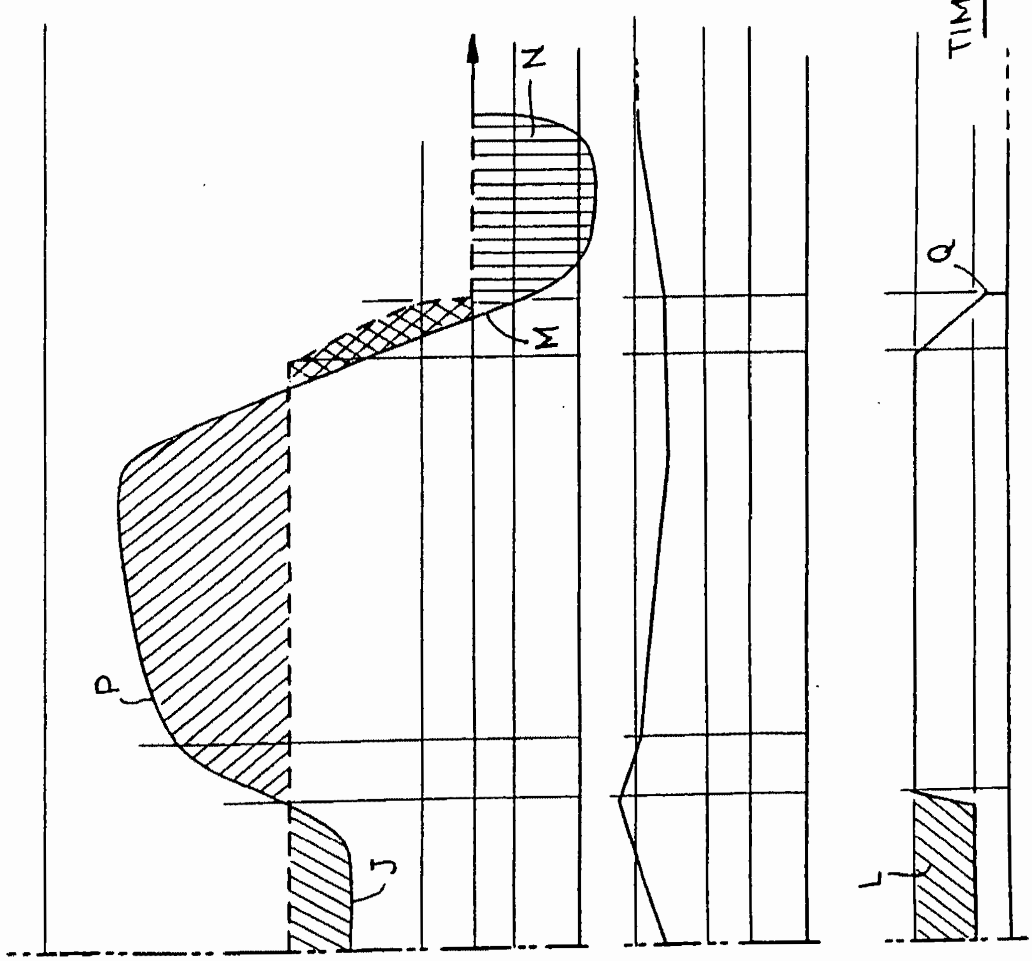


FIG. 7(a) CONTINUED)

FIG. 7(b) (CONTINUED)

FIG. 7(c) (CONTINUED)

FIG. 8(a)

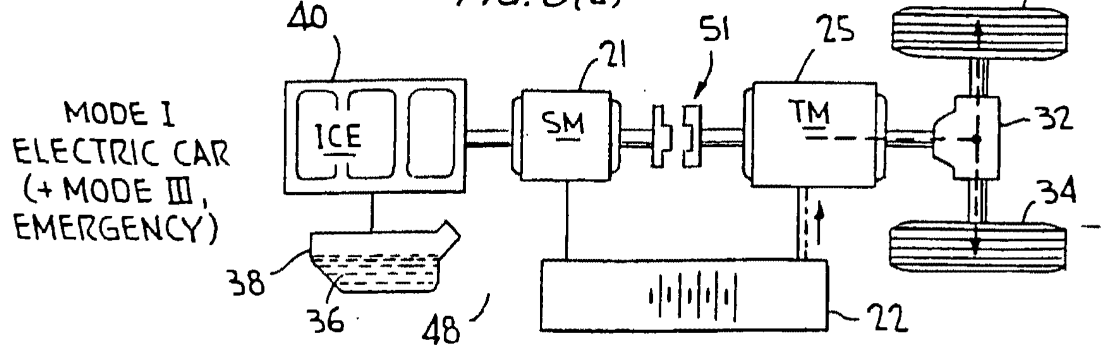


FIG. 8(b)

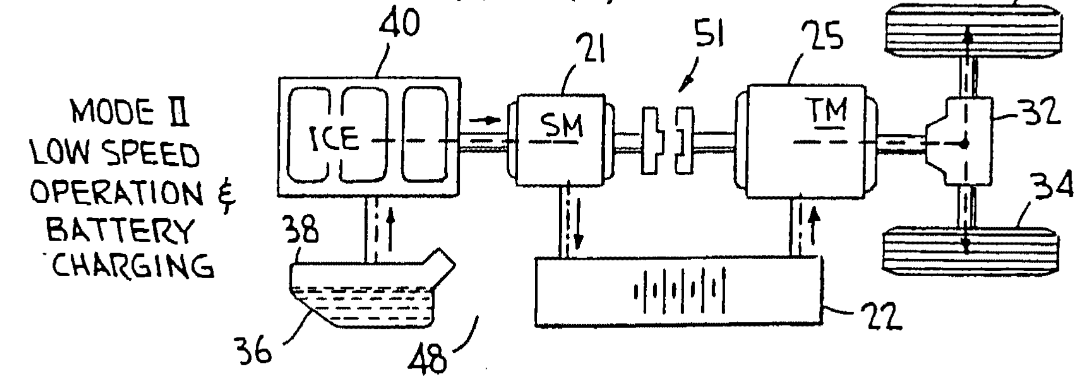


FIG. 8(c)

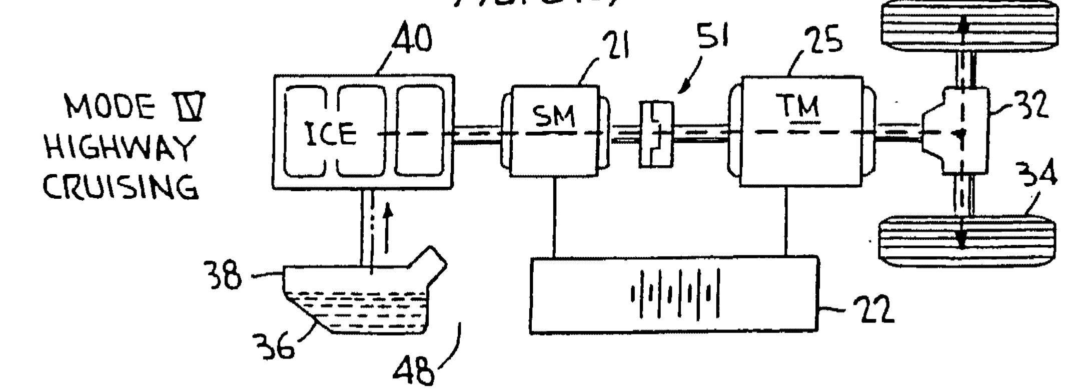


FIG. 8(d)

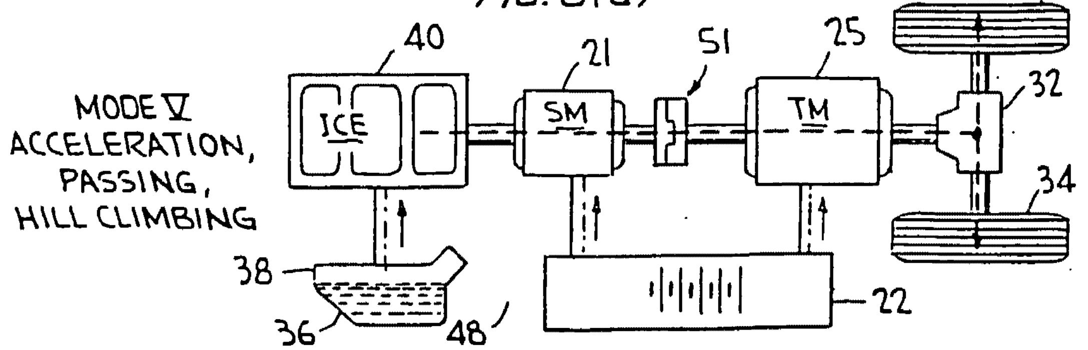


FIG. 9

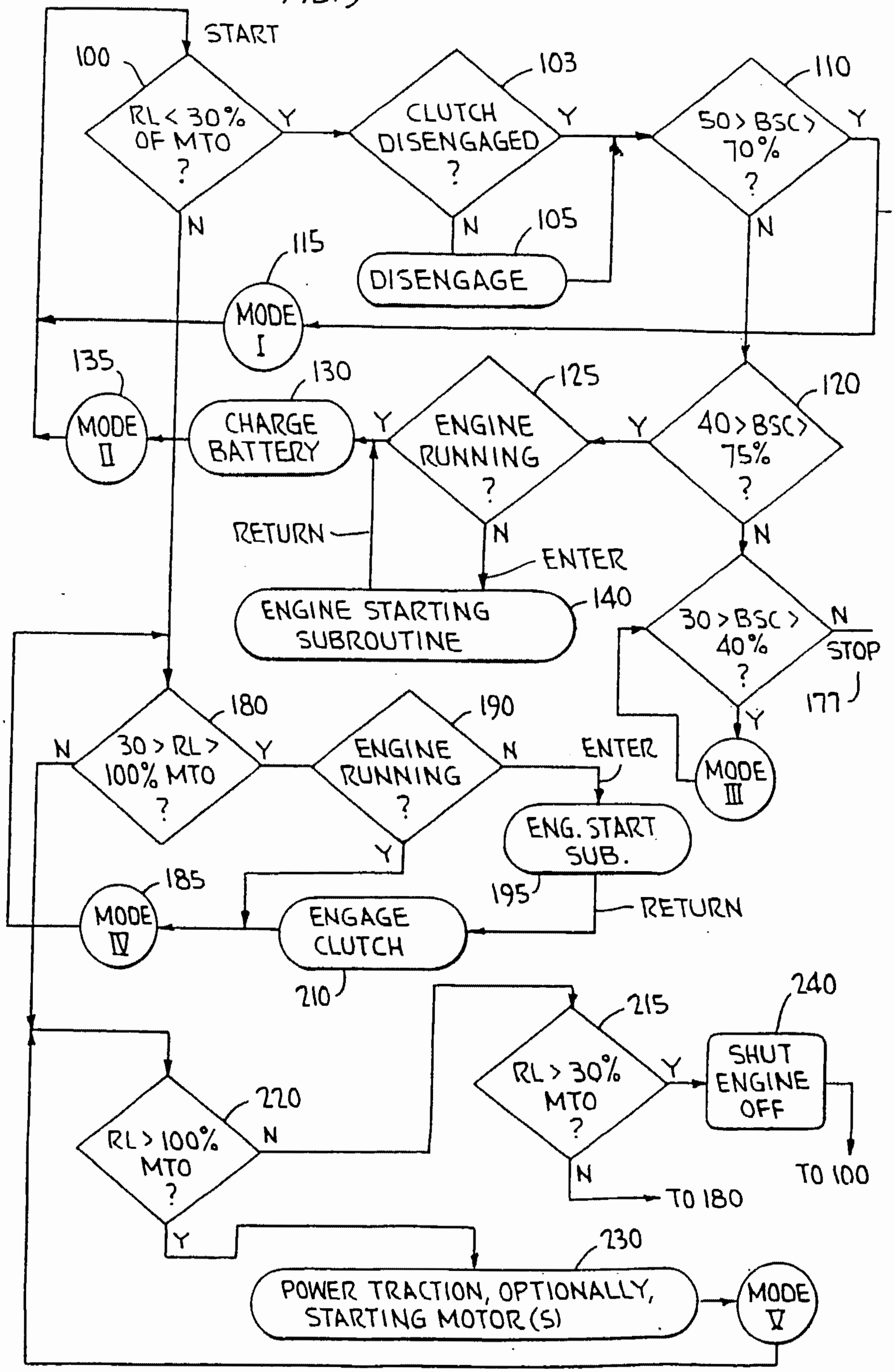

START
100
RL < 30% OF MTO ?
Y
N
103
CLUTCH DISENGAGED ?
Y
N
105
DISENGAGE
110
50 > BSC > 70% ?
Y
N
115
MODE I
135
MODE II
130
CHARGE BATTERY
Y
125
ENGINE RUNNING ?
Y
120
40 > BSC > 75% ?
N
N
RETURN
ENTER
ENGINE STARTING SUBROUTINE
140
30 > BSC > 40% ?
N
STOP
177
Y
MODE III
180
N
30 > RL > 100% MTO ?
Y
190
ENGINE RUNNING ?
N
ENTER
ENG. START SUB.
195
RETURN
Y
185
MODE IV
ENGAGE CLUTCH
210
240
215
RL > 30% MTO ?
Y
SHUT ENGINE OFF
TO 100
N
TO 180
220
RL > 100% MTO ?
N
Y
230
POWER TRACTION, OPTIONALLY, STARTING MOTOR (S)
MODE V

FIG. 9(a)

ENGINE STARTING SUBROUTINE

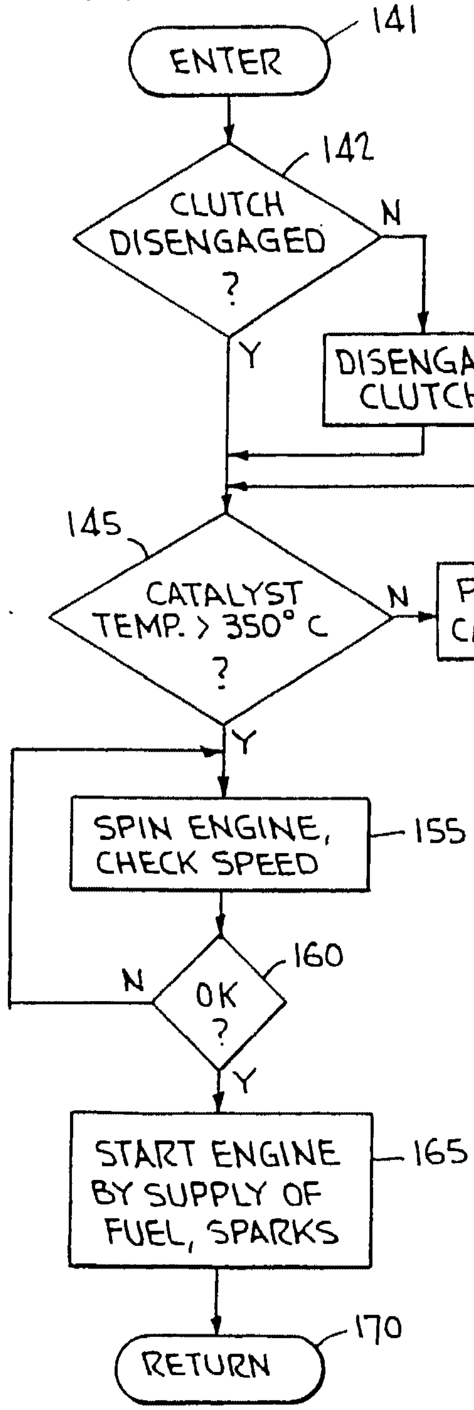


FIG. 9(b)

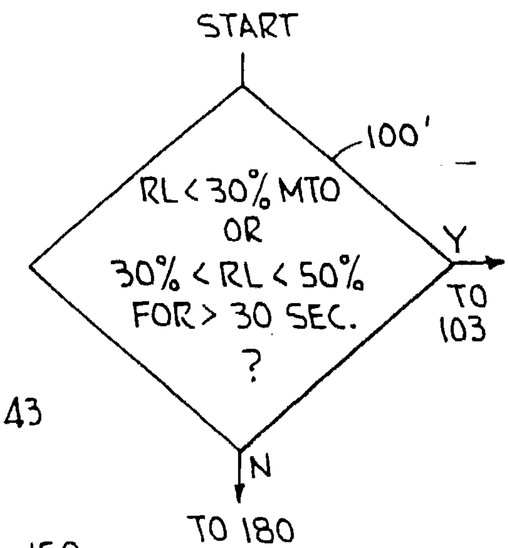
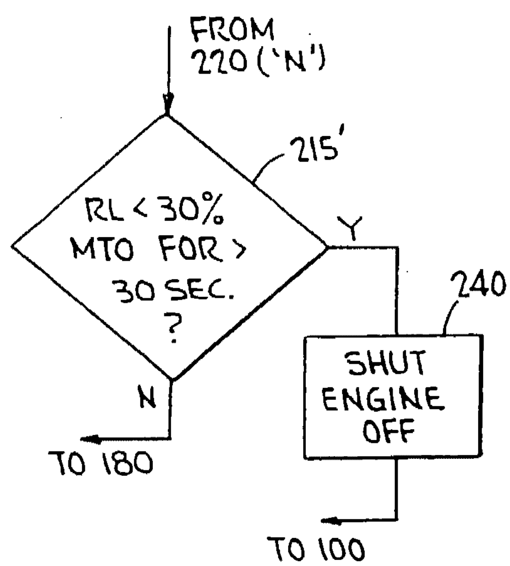


FIG. 9(c)



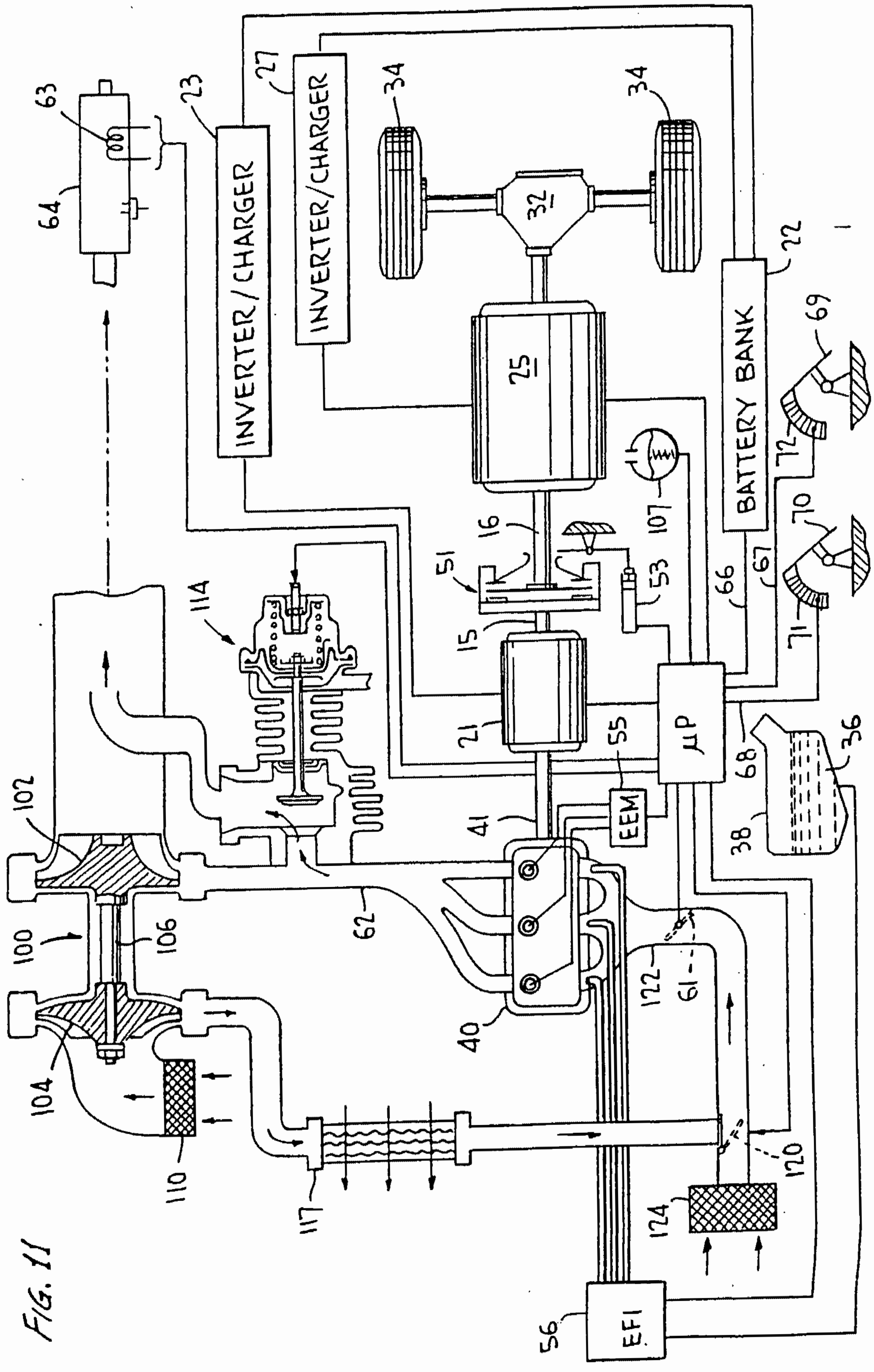

INVERTER/CHARGER
INVERTER/CHARGER
BATTERY BANK
EEM
μP
EFI
63
64
23
27
34
34
32
25
22
69
72
70
67
66
71
68
36
38
107
16
51
53
15
21
55
41
114
102
100
106
104
110
62
40
122
61
120
117
124
56

FIG. 11

FIG. 12

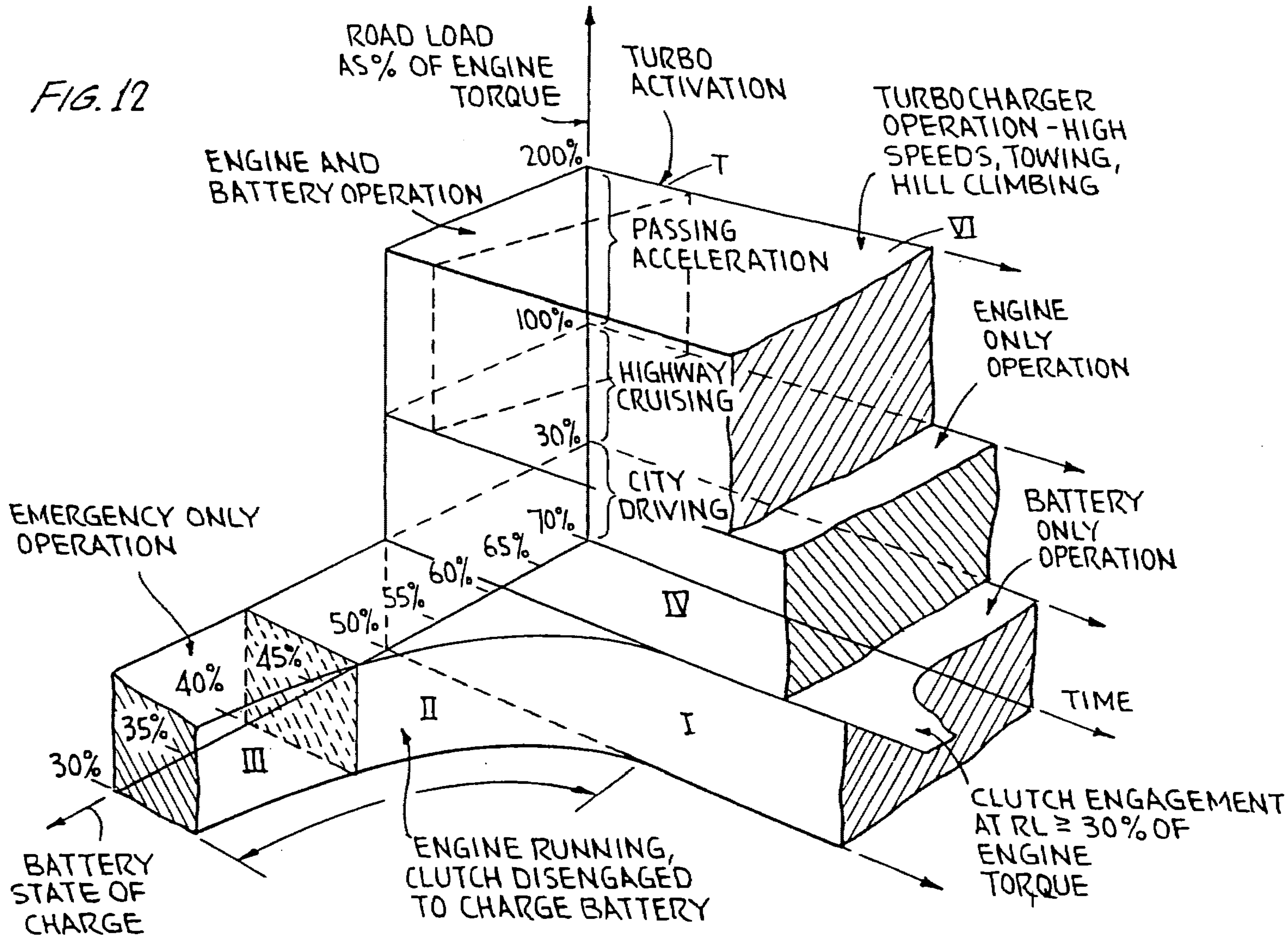
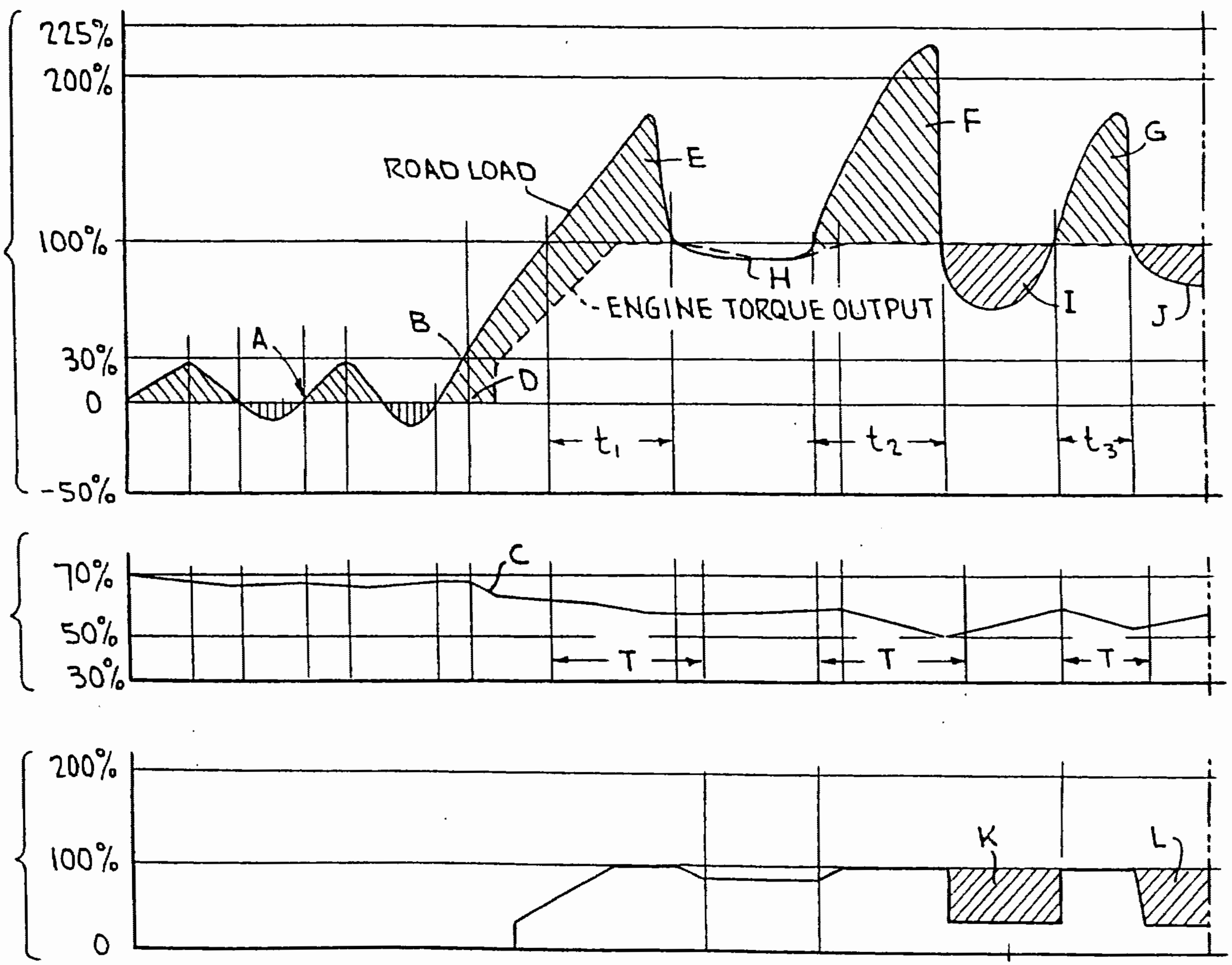

ROAD LOAD
AS% OF ENGINE
TORQUE
TURBO
ACTIVATION
T
TURBOCHARGER
OPERATION - HIGH
SPEEDS, TOWING,
HILL CLIMBING
VI
ENGINE AND
BATTERY OPERATION
200%
PASSING
ACCELERATION
100%
HIGHWAY
CRUISING
30%
CITY
DRIVING
70%
65%
60%
55%
50%
45%
40%
35%
30%
ENGINE
ONLY
OPERATION
BATTERY
ONLY
OPERATION
EMERGENCY ONLY
OPERATION
IV
II
I
III
TIME
BATTERY
STATE OF
CHARGE
ENGINE RUNNING,
CLUTCH DISENGAGED
TO CHARGE BATTERY
CLUTCH ENGAGEMENT
AT RL ≥ 30% OF
ENGINE
TORQUE

FIG. 13(a)
ROAD LOAD AS % OF ENGINE'S MAX. TORQUE (NORMALLY ASPIRATED)

FIG. 13(b)
BATTERY STATE OF CHARGE

FIG. 13(c)
ENGINE + TURBO-CHARGER OPERATION



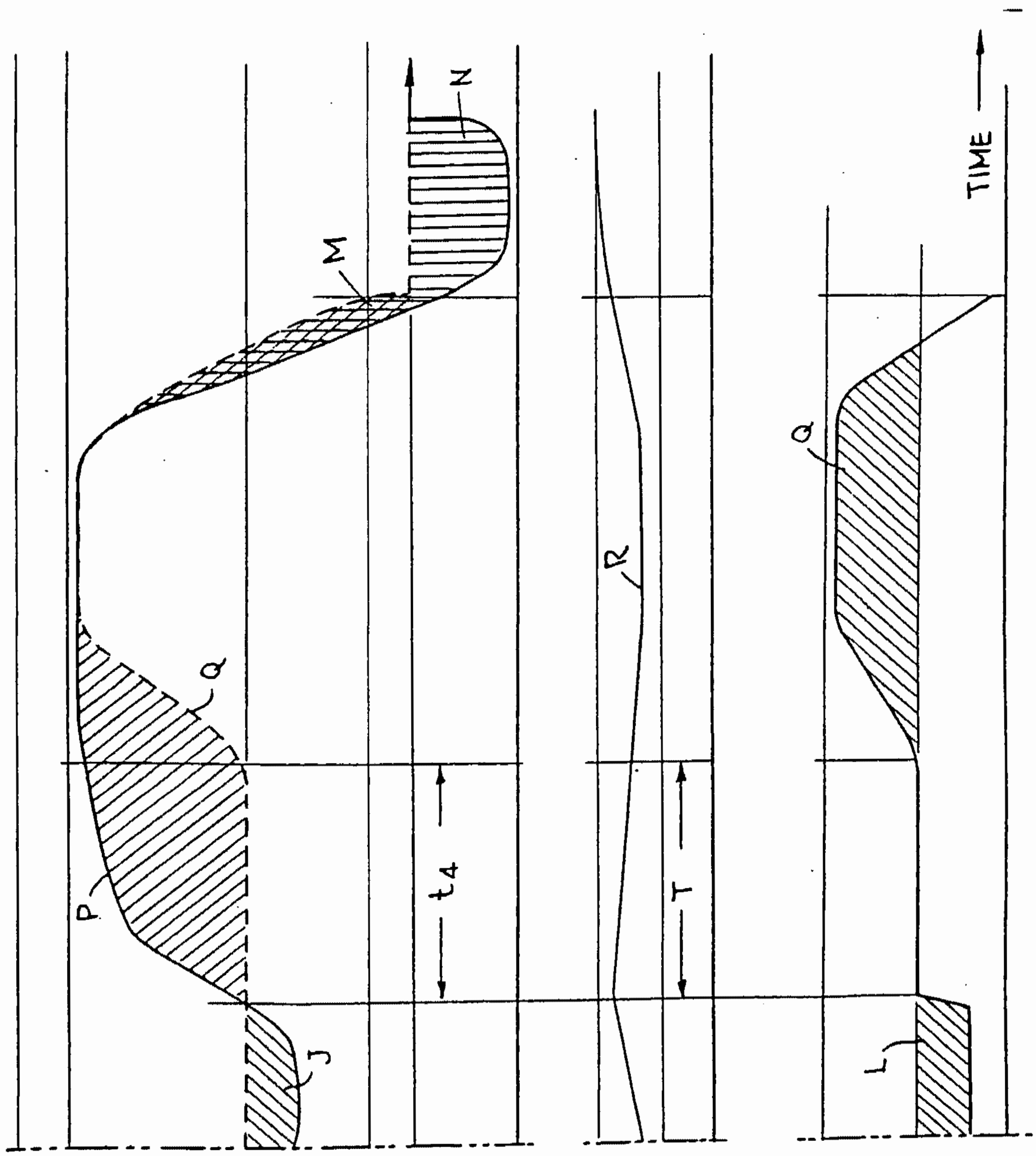
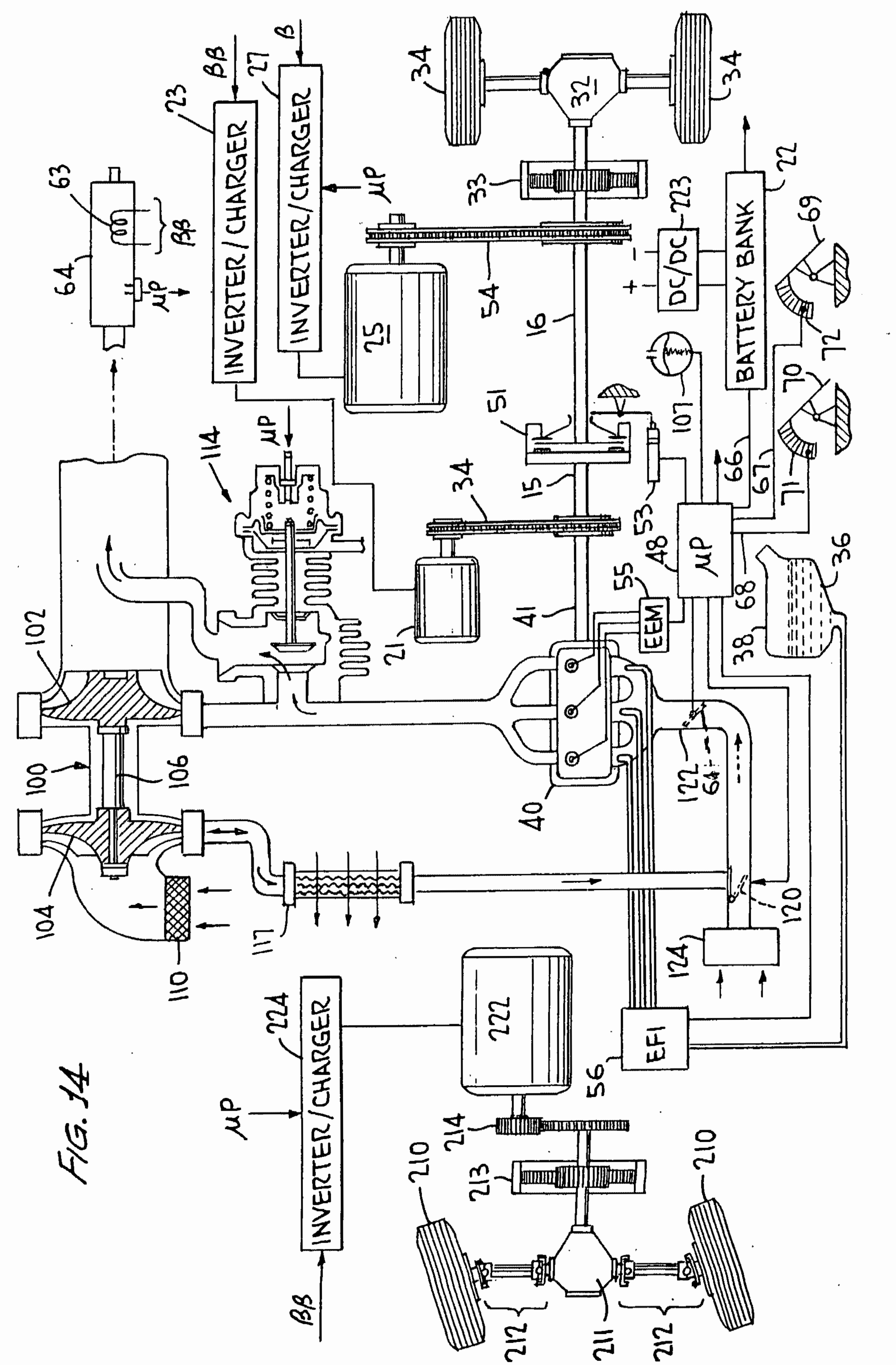


FIG. 13(a) (CONTINUED)

FIG. 13(b) (CONTINUED)

FIG. 13(c) (CONTINUED)



INVERTER / CHARGER
INVERTER/CHARGER
INVERTER/CHARGER
BATTERY BANK
DC/DC
MP
EEM
EFI
BB
B
MP
23
27
25
63
64
114
21
34
32
33
54
16
51
15
41
48
53
55
107
223
22
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
36
38
40
100
102
104
106
110
117
120
122
124
222
224
56
210
211
212
213
214

FIG. 14

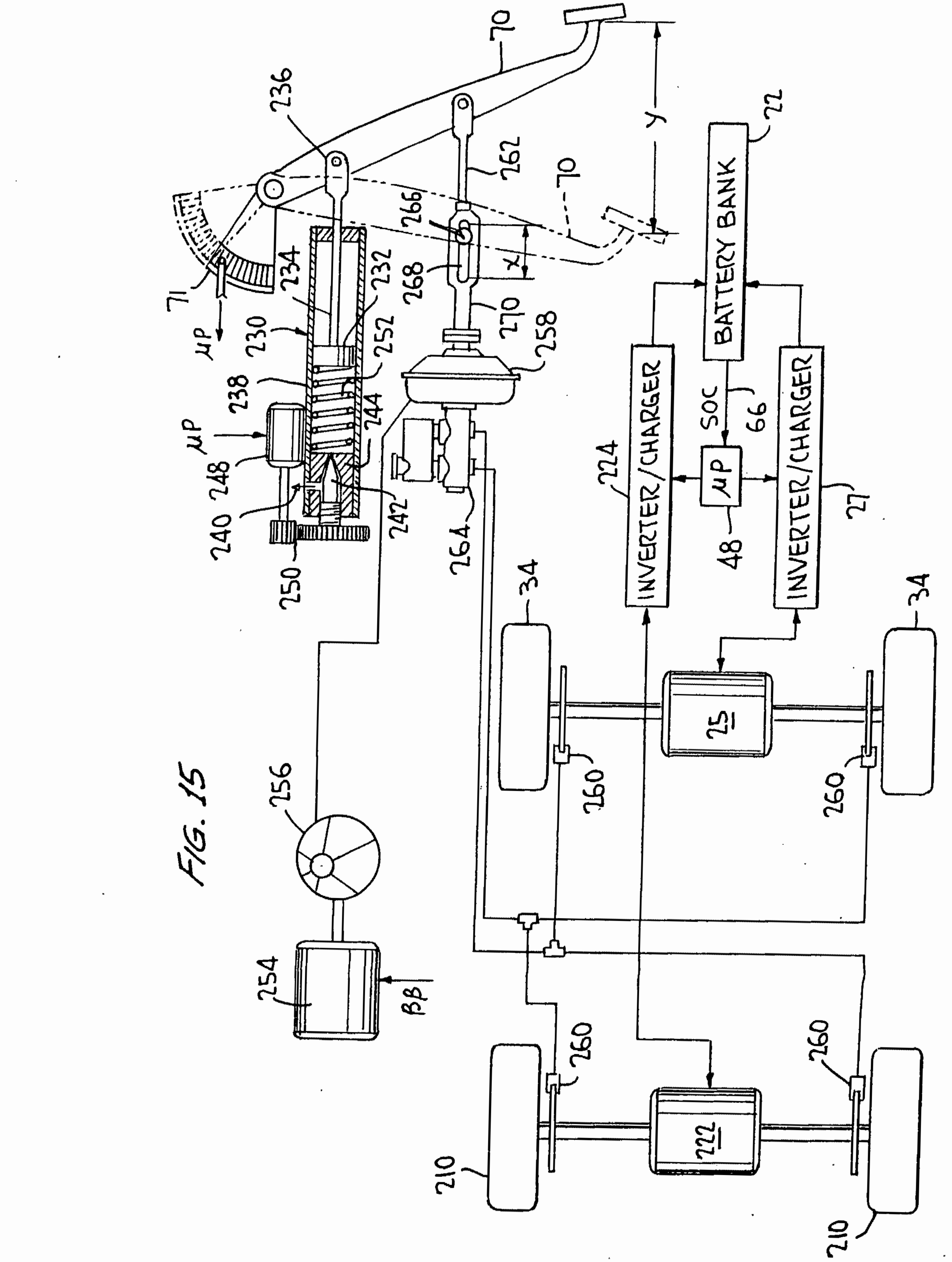

70
236
262
70
Y
X
266
268
71
μP
234
232
230
252
270
258
238
μP
244
248
240
242
250
264
22
BATTERY BANK
SOC
66
224
INVERTER/CHARGER
μP
48
INVERTER/CHARGER
27
34
34
25
260
260
256
254
BP
260
260
222
210
210

FIG. 15

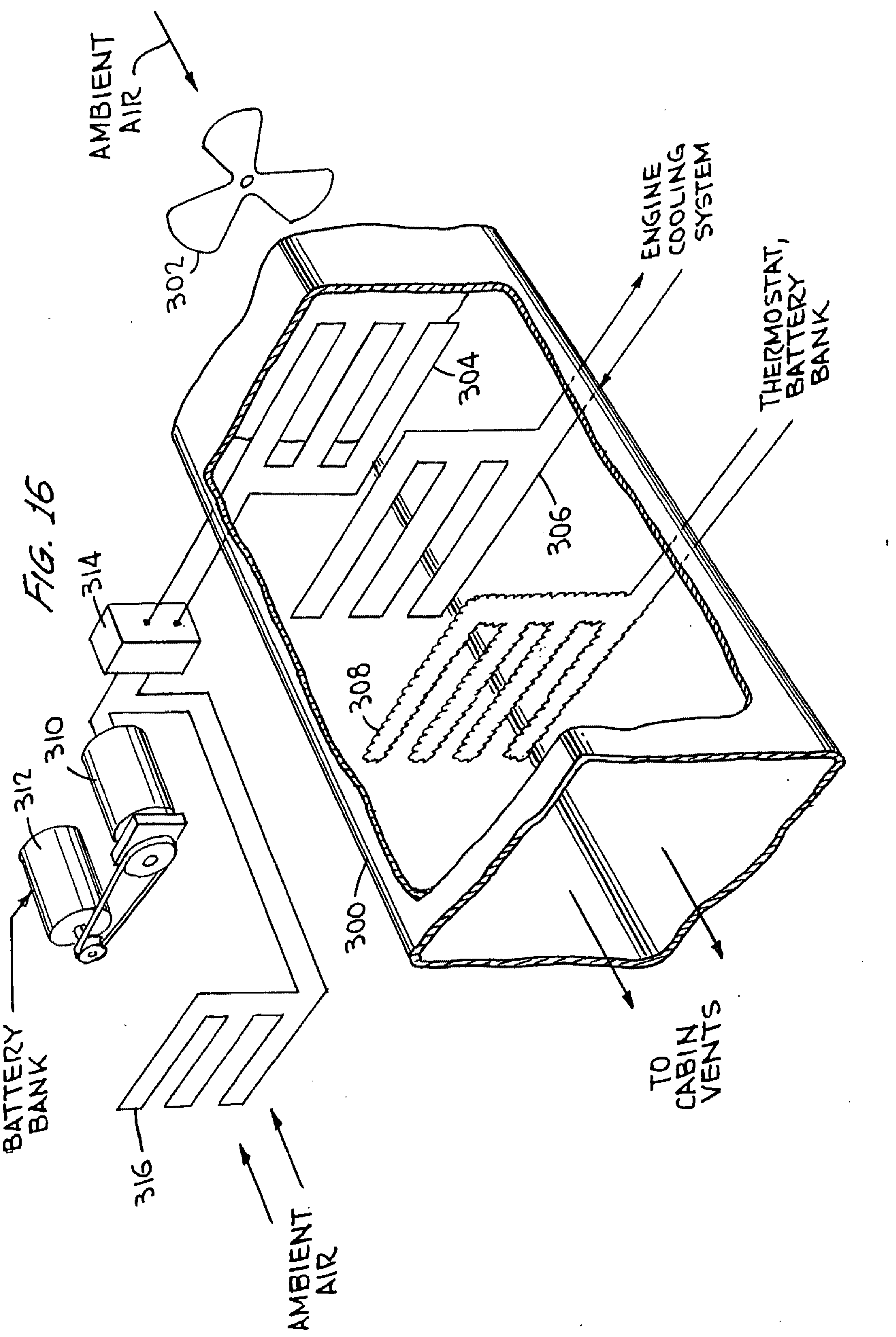

AMBIENT AIR
302
304
306
308
300
310
312
314
316
ENGINE COOLING SYSTEM
THERMOSTAT, BATTERY BANK
TO CABIN VENTS
BATTERY BANK
AMBIENT AIR

FIG. 16

This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning Operations and is not part of the Official Record

BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- ☐ BLACK BORDERS
- ☐ IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- ☐ FADED TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☑ BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☐ SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- ☐ COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS
- ☐ GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS
- ☐ LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT
- ☐ REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY
- ☐ OTHER: ______________________

IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.
As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.

1. In a method of controlling an internal combustion engine of a hybrid vehicle, said engine being operatively connected to drive wheels of said vehicle through a clutch, said vehicle further comprising a traction motor operatively connected to drive wheels of said vehicle, a starter/generator motor operatively connected to said engine for starting said engine and for providing electrical power in response to torque from said engine, a battery bank adapted to store electrical energy to power said traction motor and to start said engine, at least one inverter/charger adapted to cooperate with said traction motor and said starter/generator such that said traction motor can be operated to provide torque to said road wheels responsive to electrical power from said battery bank, or to provide electrical power to said battery bank responsive to torque from said road wheels, and such that said starter/generator can be operated to provide torque to start said engine, or to provide electrical power to said battery bank responsive to torque provided by said engine, and a microprocessor adapted to control operation of said engine, said traction motor, said starter/generator, and said at least one inverter/charger, so as to control flow of torque and electrical power therebetween in response to sensed parameters, the improvement comprising:

establishing at least four vehicle operating modes, including:

a mode I, wherein said engine is not operated and said vehicle is propelled by torque from said traction motor in response to electrical power drawn from said battery bank;

a mode II, wherein said vehicle is propelled by torque from said traction motor in response to electrical power drawn from said battery bank, and said starter/generator is driven by torque provided by said engine to provide electrical power to recharge said battery bank;

a mode III, wherein said vehicle is propelled by torque from said engine;

a mode IV, wherein said vehicle is propelled by torque from said engine and from said traction motor in response to electrical power drawn from said battery bank;

wherein said microprocessor controls operation of said engine, said traction motor, said starter/generator, and said at least one inverter/charger in response to the instantaneous torque demands (RL) of said vehicle, and such that said engine is operated only in response to a load equal at least to a predetermined minimum value of its maximum torque output.

2. The method of claim 1, wherein said starter/generator is sized with respect to said engine such that said starter/generator is capable of being driven by said engine in said mode II while said engine produces at least about 30% of its maximum torque output.

3. The method of claim 2, wherein said battery bank is sized such that the charging current supplied by said starter/generator in response to torque from said engine while producing at least about 30% of its maximum torque output is no more than about 50 amperes.

4. The method of claim 1, wherein said microprocessor controls operation of said vehicle such that said mode III is entered only when RL is at least equal to a predetermined fraction of the engine's maximum torque output (MTO).

5. The method of claim 4, wherein mode III is entered only when RL is substantially equal to at least 30% of MTO.

6. The method of claim 5, wherein said vehicle is operated in mode III while 30% < RL < 100% of MTO.

7. The method of claim 1, wherein mode IV is entered only when RL > 100% of MTO.

8. The method of claim 1, wherein said vehicle further comprises a turbocharger adapted to be controlled by said microprocessor so as to increase the torque output of said engine from its maximum value while normally aspirated (MTO), and wherein a further vehicle operating mode V is established, wherein said turbocharger is controlled to operate when RL is greater than MTO for more than a given period of time T.

9. The method of claim 8, wherein if said vehicle is in said mode IV, with RL between 30 and 100% of MTO, and if RL then exceeds 100% of MTO, torque required in excess of 100% of MTO is initially provided by said traction motor, and if RL continues to exceed 100% of MTO for more than a given period of time T, said turbocharger is activated by said microprocessor such that said engine produces torque in excess of 100% of MTO.

10. A brake system for a hybrid vehicle, said vehicle comprising a drive train including an internal combustion engine operated to provide vehicle propulsive torque only during predetermined modes of operation of said vehicle and at least one traction motor and corresponding inverter/charger adapted to provide vehicle propulsive torque during predetermined modes of operation of said vehicle and to provide electrical energy responsive to torque from wheels of said vehicle during a regenerative braking mode of operation of said vehicle, a battery bank adapted to provide electrical energy to said motor as required and to accept charging energy from said motor when operated as a generator during said regenerative braking mode of operation of said vehicle, and a microprocessor for controlling the mode of operation of said vehicle, said brake system comprising:

a brake pedal adapted to be operated by a driver of said vehicle,

a hydraulic brake system coupled to said brake pedal and comprising at least one master cylinder and a number of wheel brakes operatively connected to said master cylinder for retarding said vehicle upon actuation of said pedal,

a sensor for providing a signal to said microprocessor responsive to motion of said brake pedal,

a sensor for providing a signal to said microprocessor responsive to the state of charge of said battery bank,

a device controllable by said microprocessor to vary the resistance to motion of said pedal during braking responsive to the amount of regenerative braking being provided,

wherein said microprocessor controls the amount of regenerative braking provided upon motion of said pedal responsive to the state of charge of said battery bank, and controls the resistance to motion of said pedal during braking responsive to the amount of regenerative braking being provided.

11. The brake system of claim 10, wherein said device controllable by said microprocessor to vary the resistance to motion of said pedal during braking responsive to the amount of regenerative braking being provided comprises a pneumatic cylinder having a piston sliding therein, said piston being operated by said brake pedal, and comprising a vent passage including an orifice controllable by said microprocessor to control the resistance to motion of said pedal.

12. The brake system of claim 10, wherein said at least one master cylinder is coupled to said brake pedal by an actuating rod arranged so that said pedal can be moved through a predetermined distance before said master cylinder begins to apply pressure to said wheel brakes.

13. The brake system of claim 10, wherein said hydraulic brake system comprises a servo actuator and a vacuum pump driven by a motor responsive to electrical power supplied from said battery bank.

14. A heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC) system for a hybrid vehicle, said vehicle comprising a drive train including an internal combustion engine run only during predetermined modes of operation of said vehicle and at least one traction motor adapted to provide vehicle propulsive torque during predetermined modes of operation of said vehicle, a battery bank adapted to provide electrical energy to said motor as required, said HVAC system comprising:

a duct having a fan disposed therein for forcing air along said duct;

an evaporator in said duct;

an air conditioning compressor connected to said evaporator, and driven by an electric motor powered by said battery bank;

a heater core in said duct and connected to a cooling system of said engine; and

an electrical heating element in said duct and connected to said battery bank.

15. The HVAC system of claim 14, wherein said evaporator is disposed in said duct upstream of said heater core and said electrical heating element with respect to the direction of air flow through said duct.

16. A method for determining the relative sizes of the internal combustion engine, starting/charging and traction motors, and battery bank of a hybrid vehicle comprising said components, said method comprising the steps of:

a. selecting an internal combustion engine having sufficient torque to drive the vehicle without trailer at medium to high speed along a moderate grade;

b. sizing the starting/charging motor to provide an engine load during battery charging equal to at least approximately 30% of the engine's maximum torque output;

c. sizing the traction motor to provide adequate torque at zero speed to overcome the maximum grade specified from rest, with the starter motor assisting as needed;

d. determining the maximum power drawn by the selected motor under full power conditions;

e. calculating the battery voltage under load that will be required to provide the power to be drawn by the motor(s) under full power conditions, and so that the ratio of the battery voltage under load to the peak current drawn by the motor(s) is at least 2.5:1, and

f. selecting the battery bank to provide the calculated voltage under peak load conditions.

DECLARATION AND POWER OF ATTORNEY FOR PATENT APPLICATION

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated next to my name.

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled:
Hybrid Vehicles,
the specification of which
___ is attached hereto
_X_ was filed on April 2, 2001 now assigned Application Serial No. 09/822,866 and was amended on ____________ (if applicable).

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified application, including the specification and claims, as amended by any amendment referred to above.

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to the examination of this application in accordance with Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, § 1.56(a).

I hereby claim foreign priority benefits under Title 35, United States Code, § 119, of the international application for patent or inventor's certificate listed below and have also identified below any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed: NONE

Prior International Application(s) — Priority Claimed

(Number)	(Country)	(Day/Month/Yr.Filed)	Yes	No

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, § 120 of any United States application listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code, § 112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose material information as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, § 1.56(a) which occurred between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT international filing date of this application:

(Application SN)	(Filing Date)	Status (patented, pending abandoned, converted)
09/264,817	3/9/99	Issued (6,209,672)
60/100,095	9/14/98	Converted
09/392,743	9/9/99	Pending
60/122,296	3/1/99	Converted

POWER OF ATTORNEY: As a named inventor, I hereby appoint the following attorney to prosecute this application and transact all business in the Patent and Trademark Office connected therewith:

Michael de Angeli, Reg. No. 27,869

Send correspondence to: Michael de Angeli
1901 Research Blvd.
Suite 330
Rockville, MD 20850

Direct Telephone Calls to: (301) 217-9585

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under § 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.

Full name of sole or first joint inventor: Alex J. Severinsky

Inventor's Signature Alex J. Severinsky Date 5/18/2001

Residence: Washington, DC Citizenship: US

Post Office Address: 4707 Foxhall Crescent, Washington, DC 20007

Full name of second joint inventor, if any: Theodore Louckes

Inventor's Signature Theodore Louckes Date 5/25/2001

Residence: Holly, MI Citizenship: US

Post Office Address: 10398 Appomatox, Holly, MI, 48442

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

PATENT APPLICATION SERIAL NO ____________

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
FEE RECORD SHEET

09/22/2005 MBELETE1 00000076 11229762

01 FC:1011	300.00 OP
02 FC:1111	500.00 OP
03 FC:1311	200.00 OP
04 FC:1081	500.00 OP

PTO-1556
(5/87)

*U.S. Government Printing Office: 2002 — 489-267/69033

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD

Substitute for Form PTO-875 Effective December 8, 2004

Application or Docket Number: 11229762

APPLICATION AS FILED – PART I

FOR	NUMBER FILED (Column 1)	NUMBER EXTRA (Column 2)	SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	SMALL ENTITY FEE ($)	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY FEE ($)
BASIC FEE (37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c))	N/A	N/A	N/A	150.00		N/A	300.00
SEARCH FEE (37 CFR 1.16(k), (i), or (m))	N/A	N/A	N/A	$250		N/A	$500
EXAMINATION FEE (37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q))	N/A	N/A	N/A	$100		N/A	$200
TOTAL CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(i))	9 minus 20 =	*	X$25 =		OR	X$50 =	
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(h))	3 minus 3 =	*	X100 =			X200 =	
APPLICATION SIZE FEE (37 CFR 1.16(s))	If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is $250 ($125 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR 1.16(s).					X2	500
MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT (37 CFR 1.16(j))			+180=			+360=	
			TOTAL			TOTAL	1500

* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.

APPLICATION AS AMENDED – PART II

AMENDMENT A

	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT (Column 1)		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR (Column 2)	PRESENT EXTRA (Column 3)	SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	ADDITIONAL FEE ($)	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	ADDITIONAL FEE ($)
Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus	**	=	X$ 25 =		OR	X$50 =	
Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus	***	=	X100 =		OR	X200 =	
Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))									
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))					+180=		OR	+360=	
					TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE	

AMENDMENT B

	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT (Column 1)		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR (Column 2)	PRESENT EXTRA (Column 3)	SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	ADDITIONAL FEE ($)	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	ADDITIONAL FEE ($)
Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus	**	=	X$ 25 =		OR	X$50 =	
Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus	***	=	X100 =		OR	X200 =	
Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))									
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))					+180=		OR	+360=	
					TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE	

* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.
** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20".
*** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest number found in the appropriate box in column 1.

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

FIG. 1

(PRIOR ART)

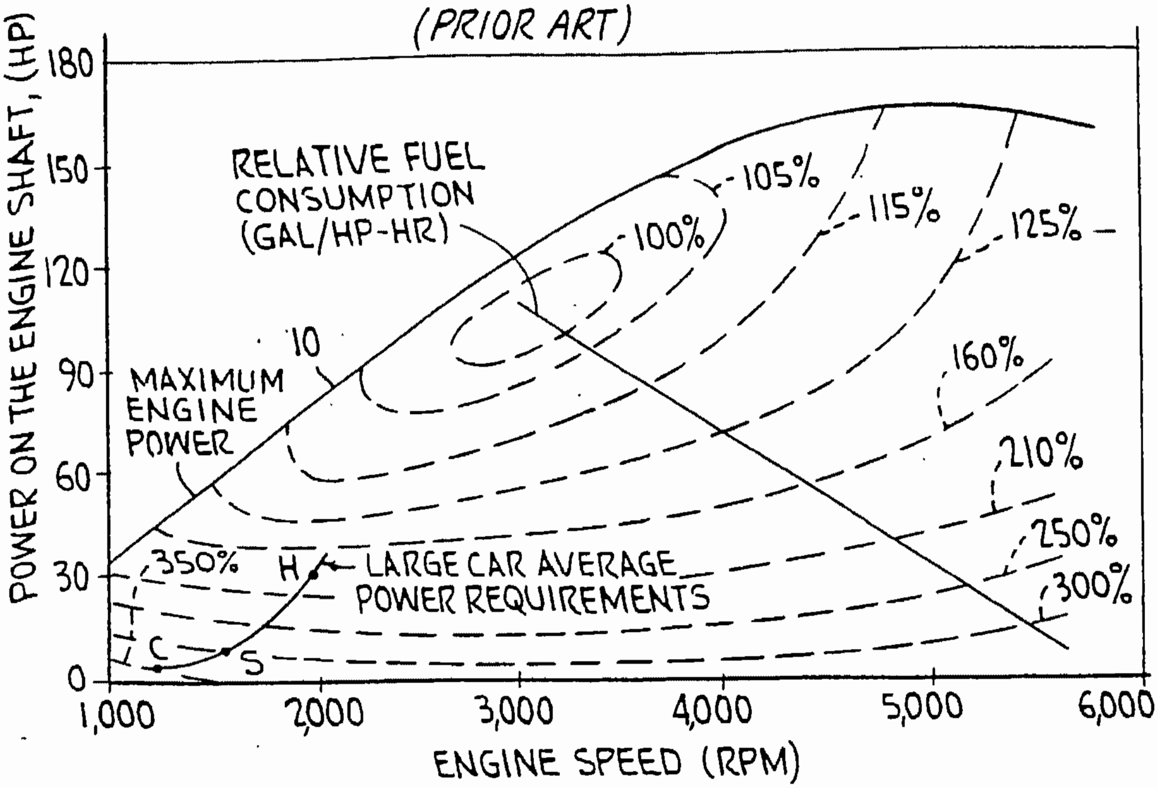
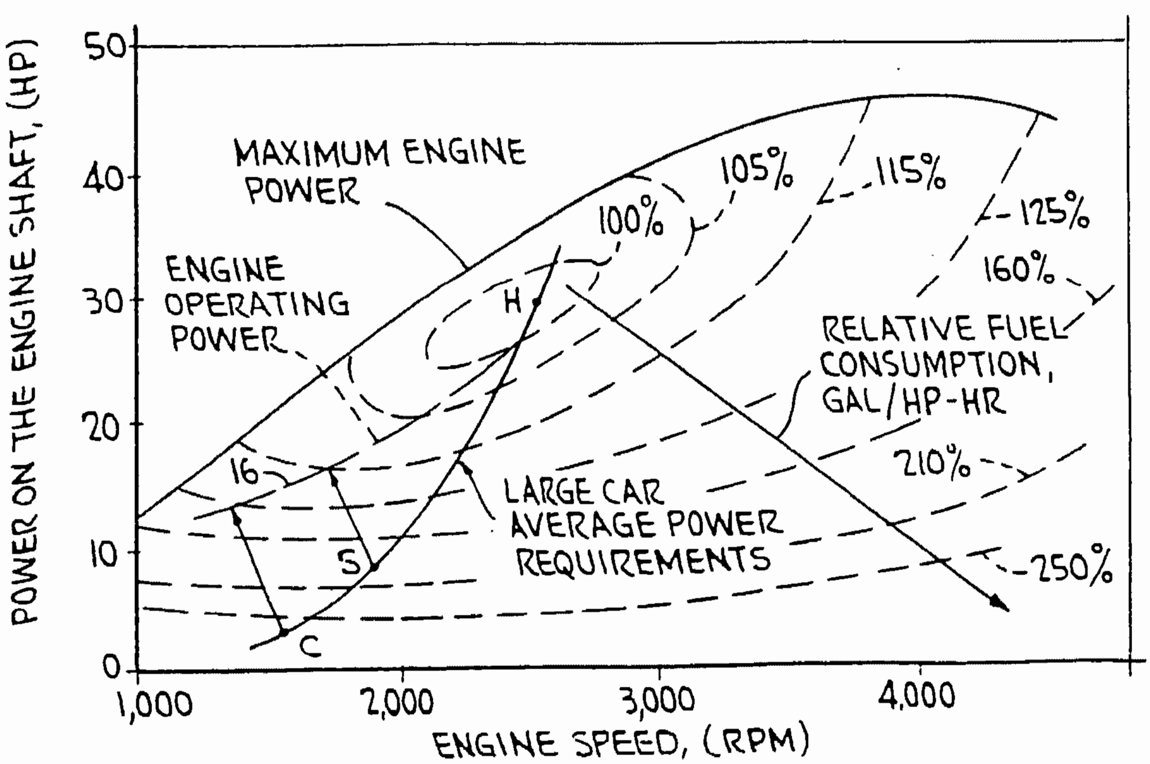


FIG. 2



BEST AVAILABLE COPY

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

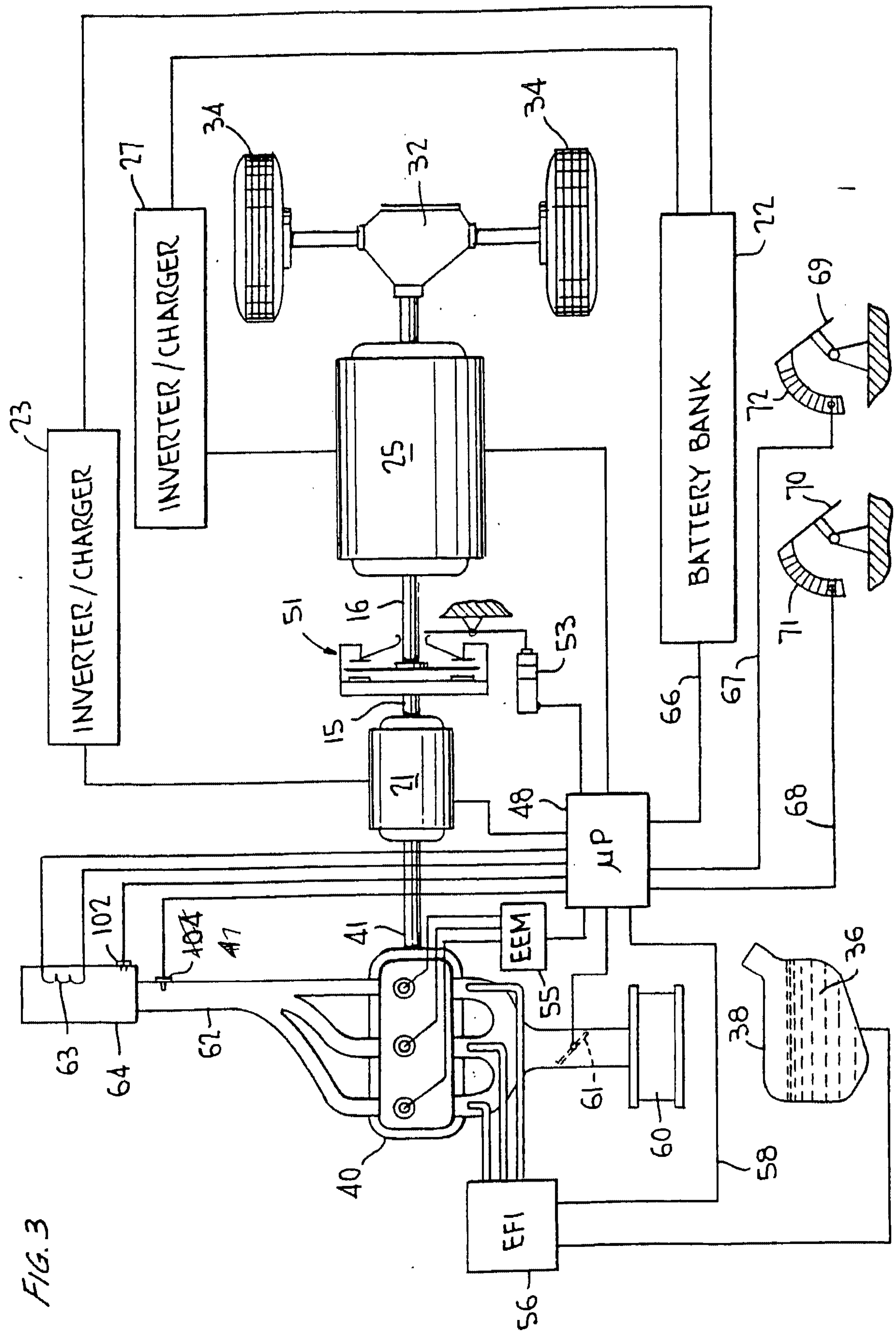


FIG. 3

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

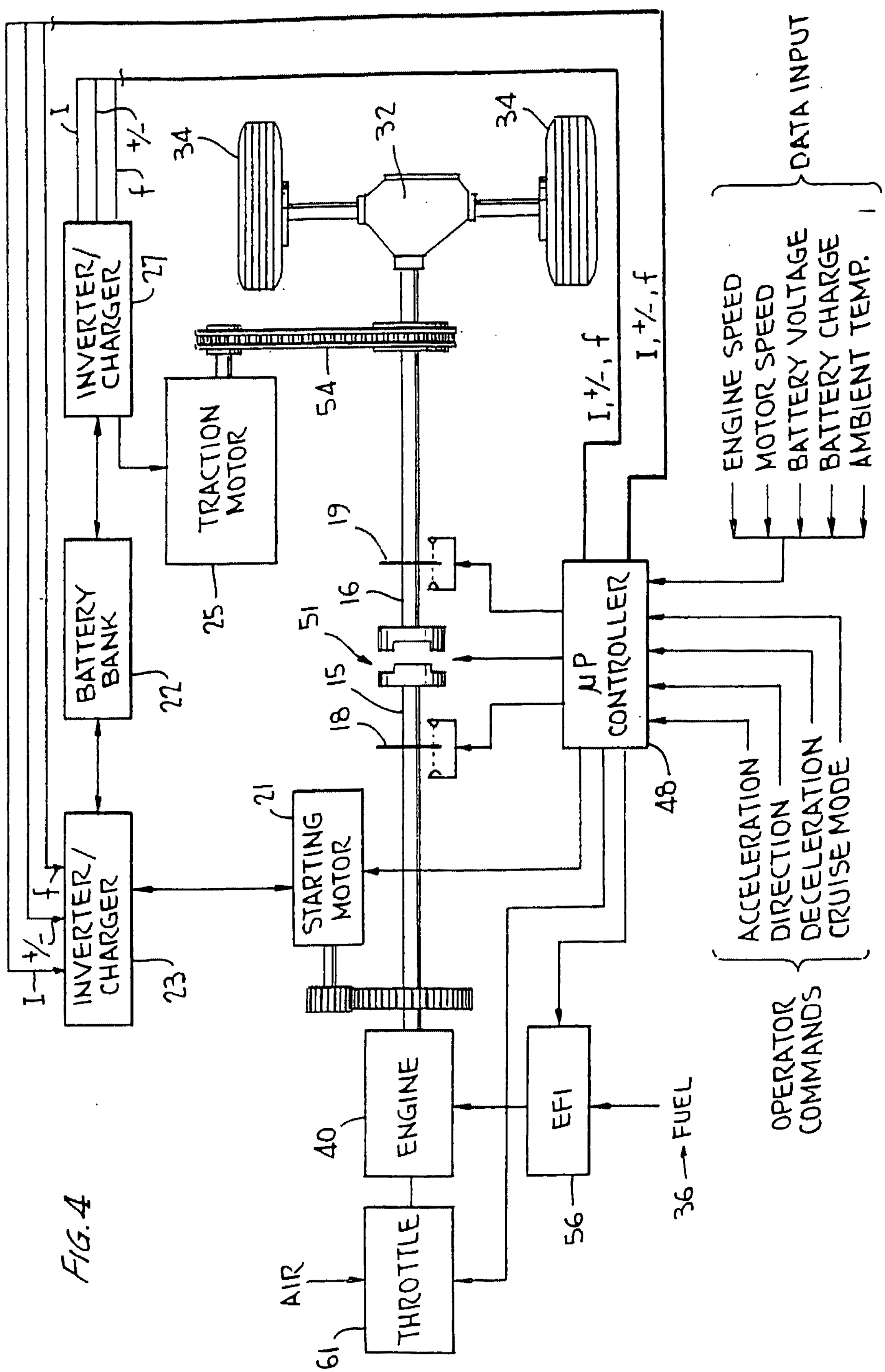


FIG. 4

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

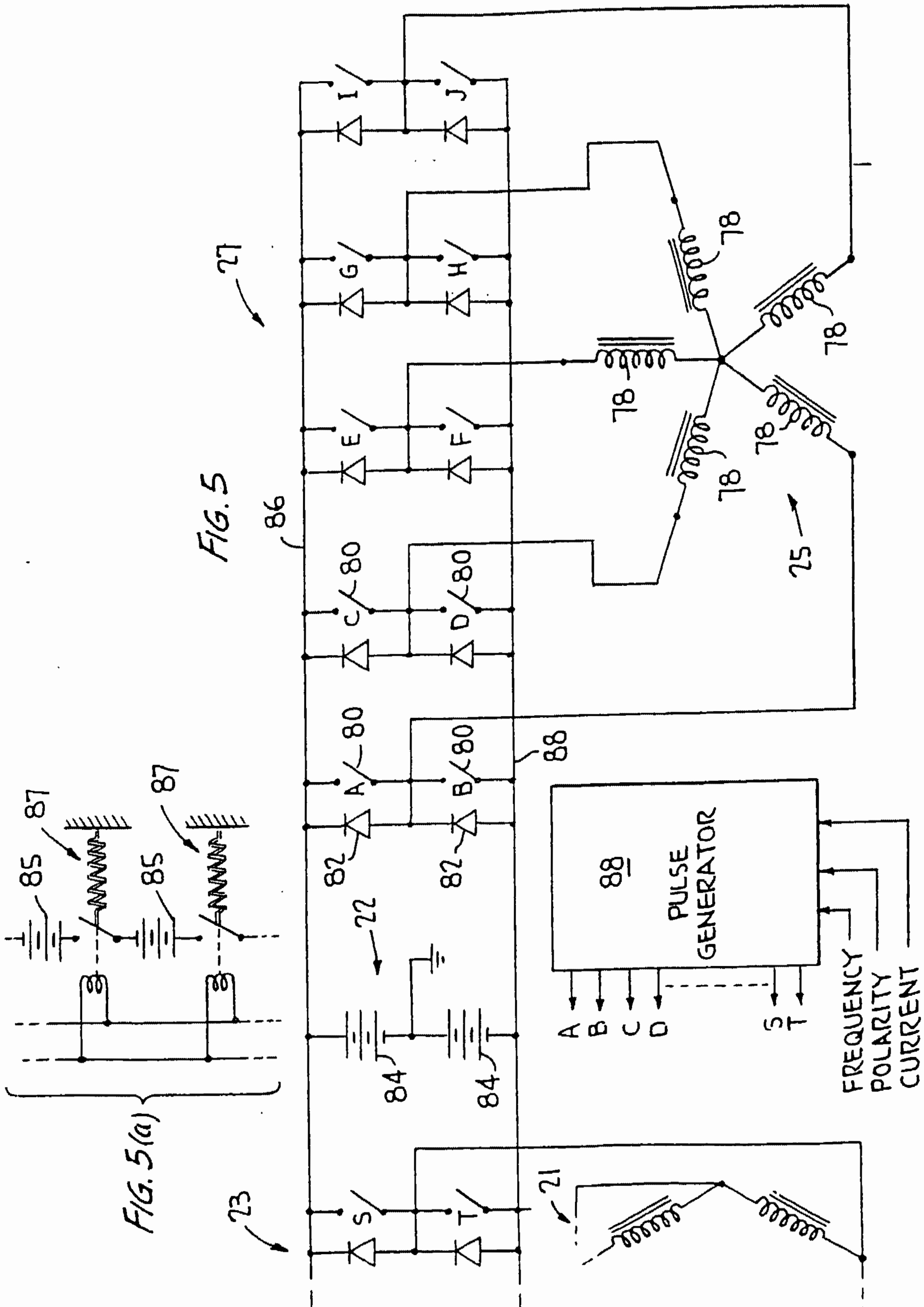

PULSE GENERATOR
88
FREQUENCY
POLARITY
CURRENT
A
B
C
D
S
T
I
J
G
H
E
F
27
86
88
80
82
84
85
87
22
23
21
25
78

FIG. 5

FIG. 5(a)

FIG. 6

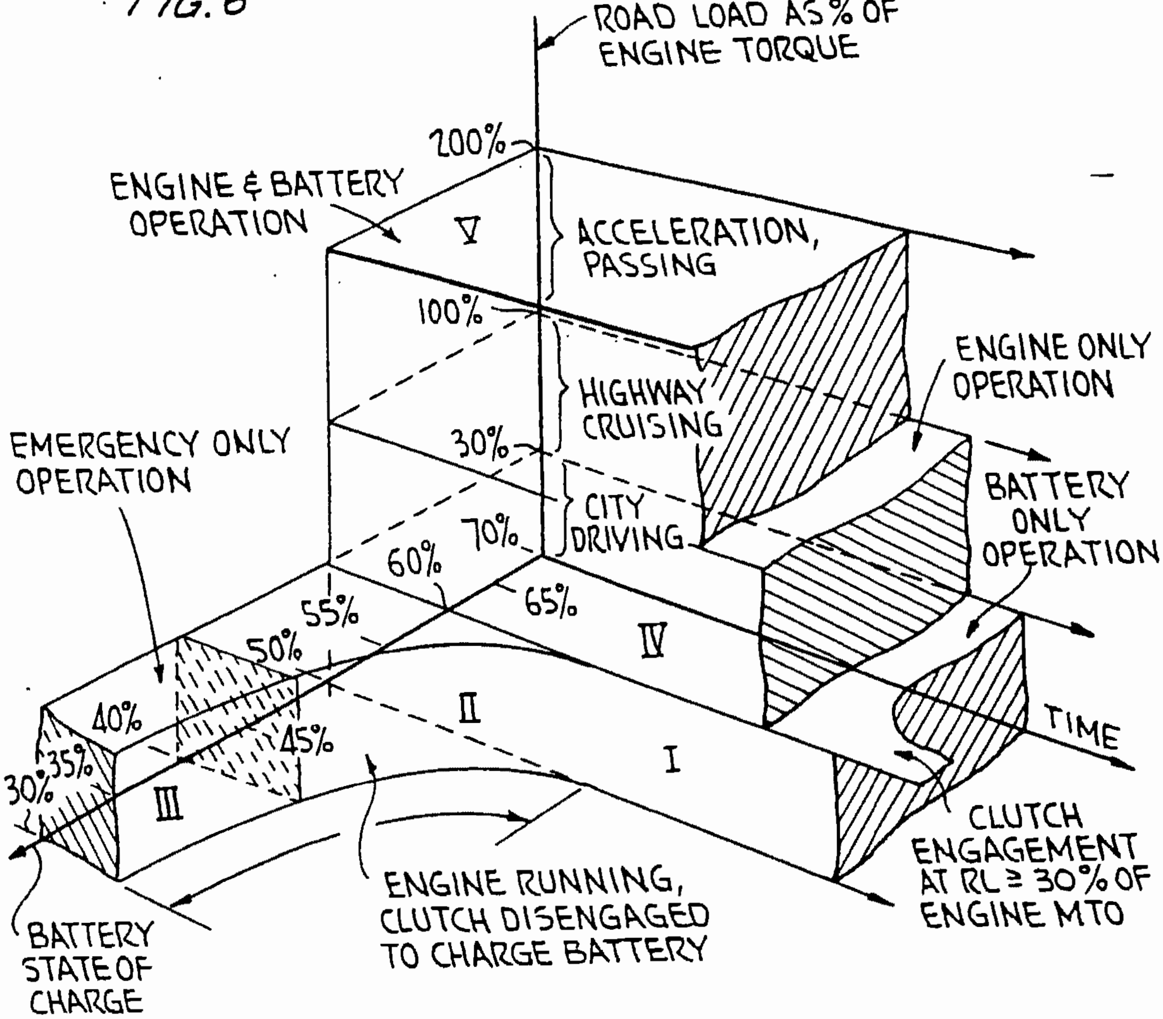
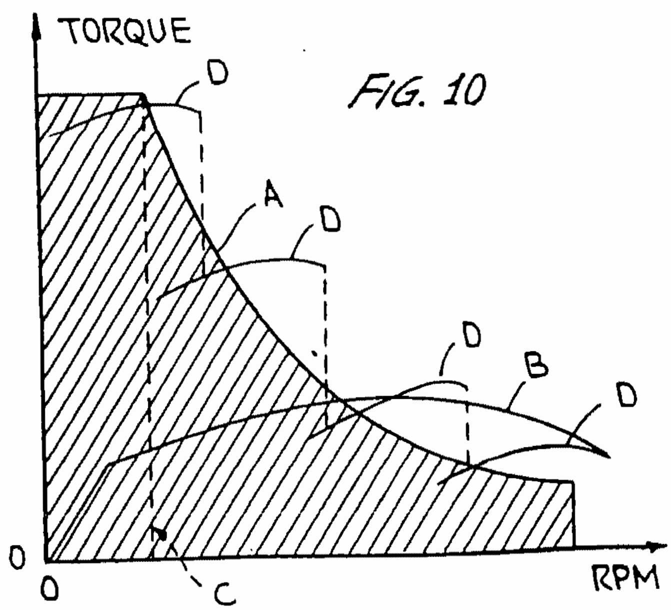

ROAD LOAD AS % OF ENGINE TORQUE
200%
ENGINE & BATTERY OPERATION
V
ACCELERATION, PASSING
100%
HIGHWAY CRUISING
ENGINE ONLY OPERATION
EMERGENCY ONLY OPERATION
30%
CITY DRIVING
BATTERY ONLY OPERATION
70%
60%
65%
55%
IV
50%
II
TIME
40%
45%
I
35%
30%
III
CLUTCH ENGAGEMENT AT RL ≥ 30% OF ENGINE MTO
ENGINE RUNNING, CLUTCH DISENGAGED TO CHARGE BATTERY
BATTERY STATE OF CHARGE

FIG. 10


TORQUE
D
A
D
D
B
D
0
0
C
RPM

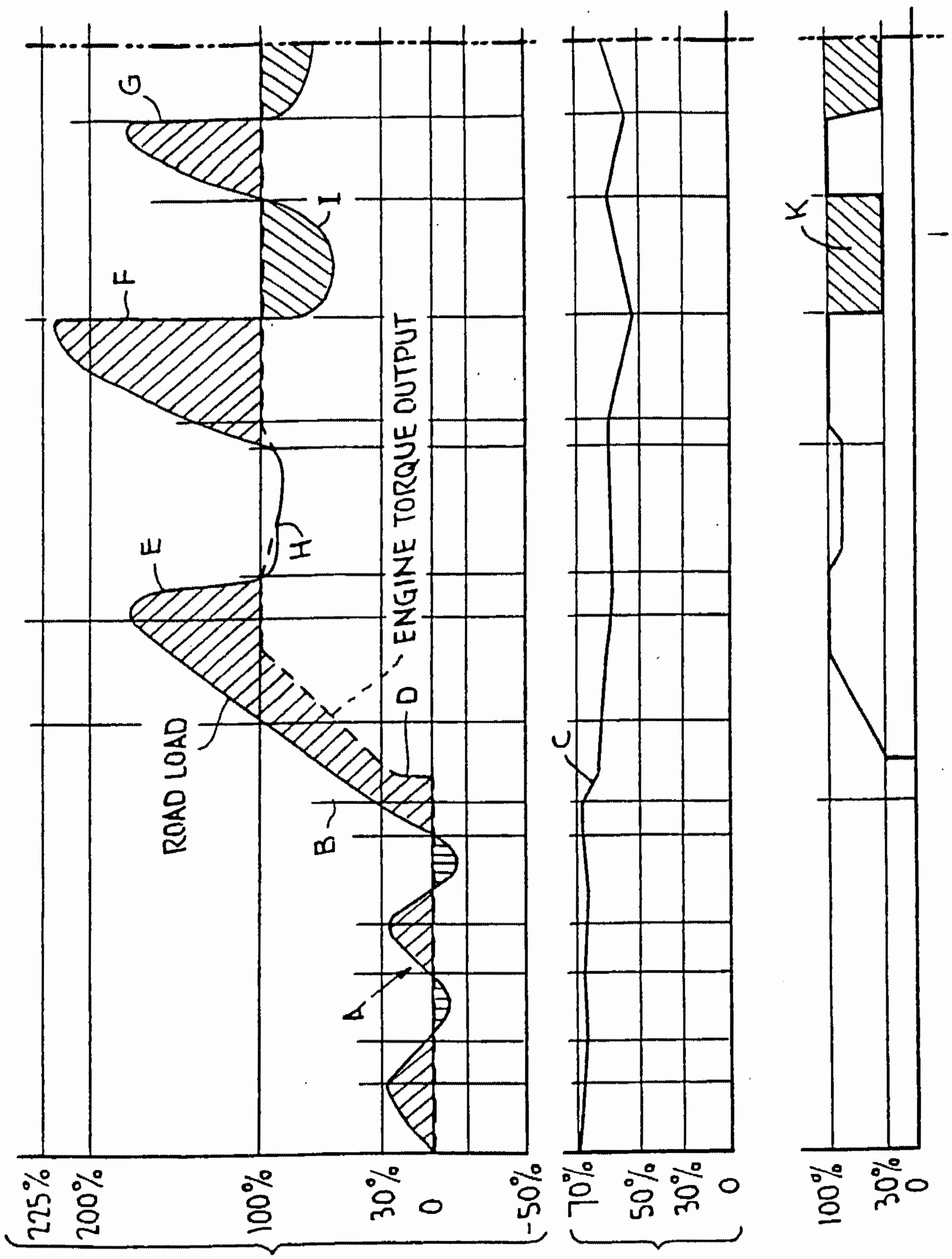


FIG. 7(a) ROAD LOAD AS % OF MAX. ENGINE TORQUE OUTPUT (% MTO)

FIG. 7(b) BATTERY BANK STATE OF CHARGE (BSC)

FIG. 7(c) ENGINE TORQUE OUTPUT

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

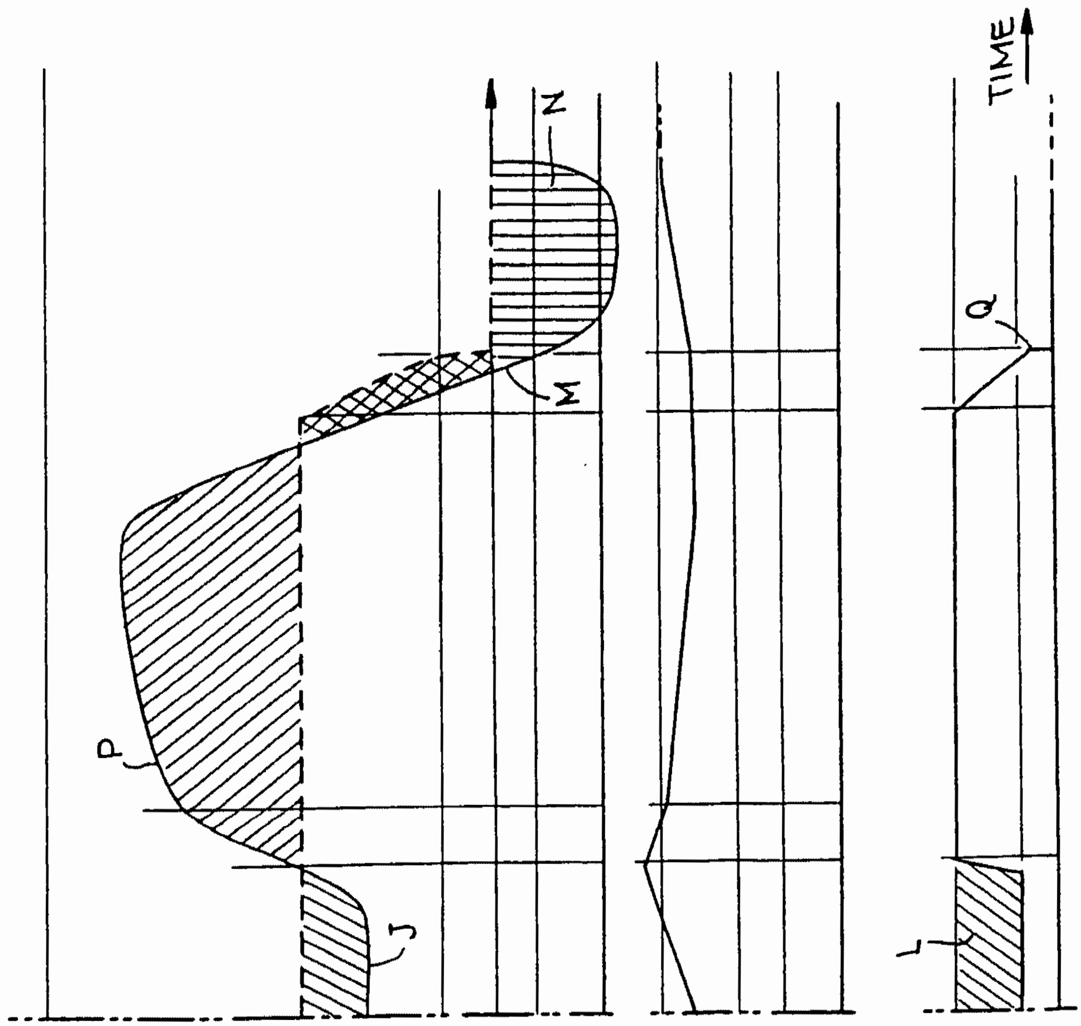


FIG. 7(a) (CONTINUED)

FIG. 7(b) (CONTINUED)

FIG. 7(c) (CONTINUED)

FIG. 8(a)

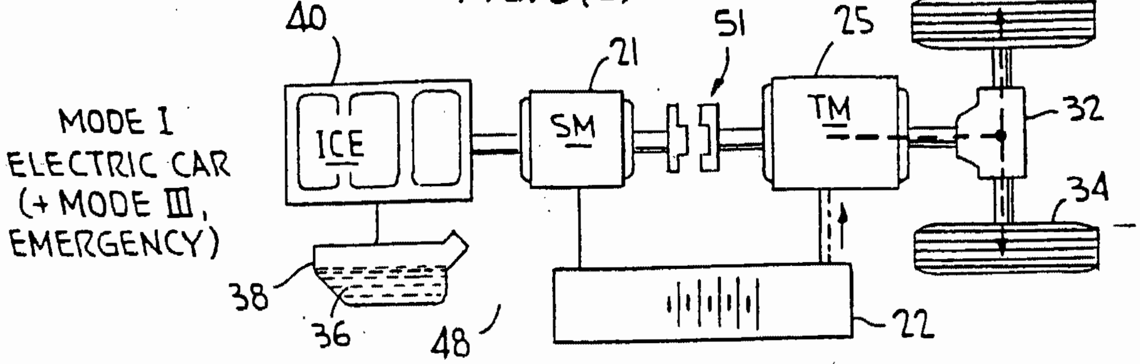


FIG. 8(b)

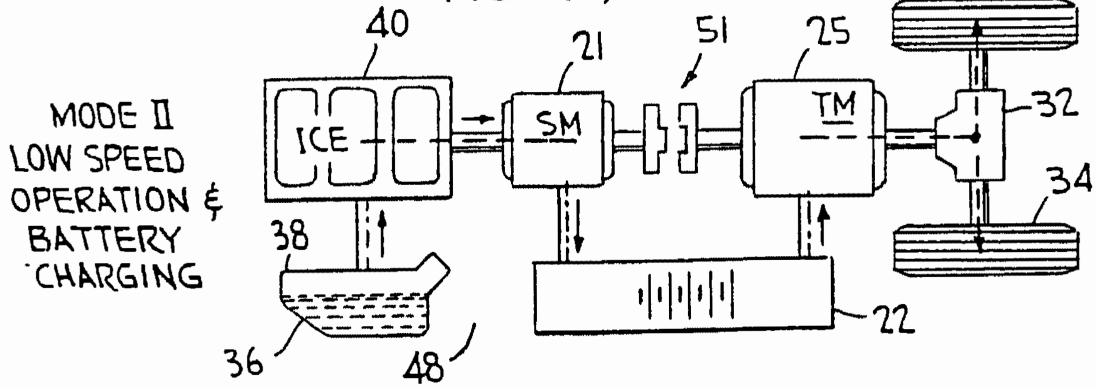


FIG. 8(c)

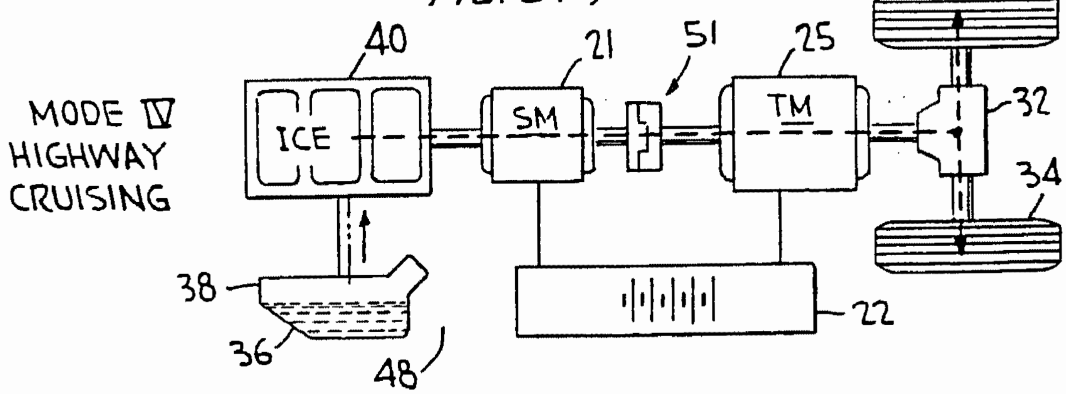
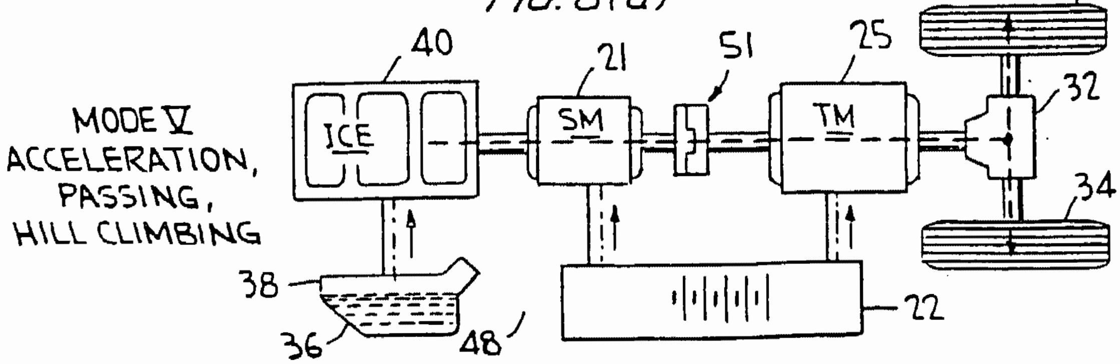
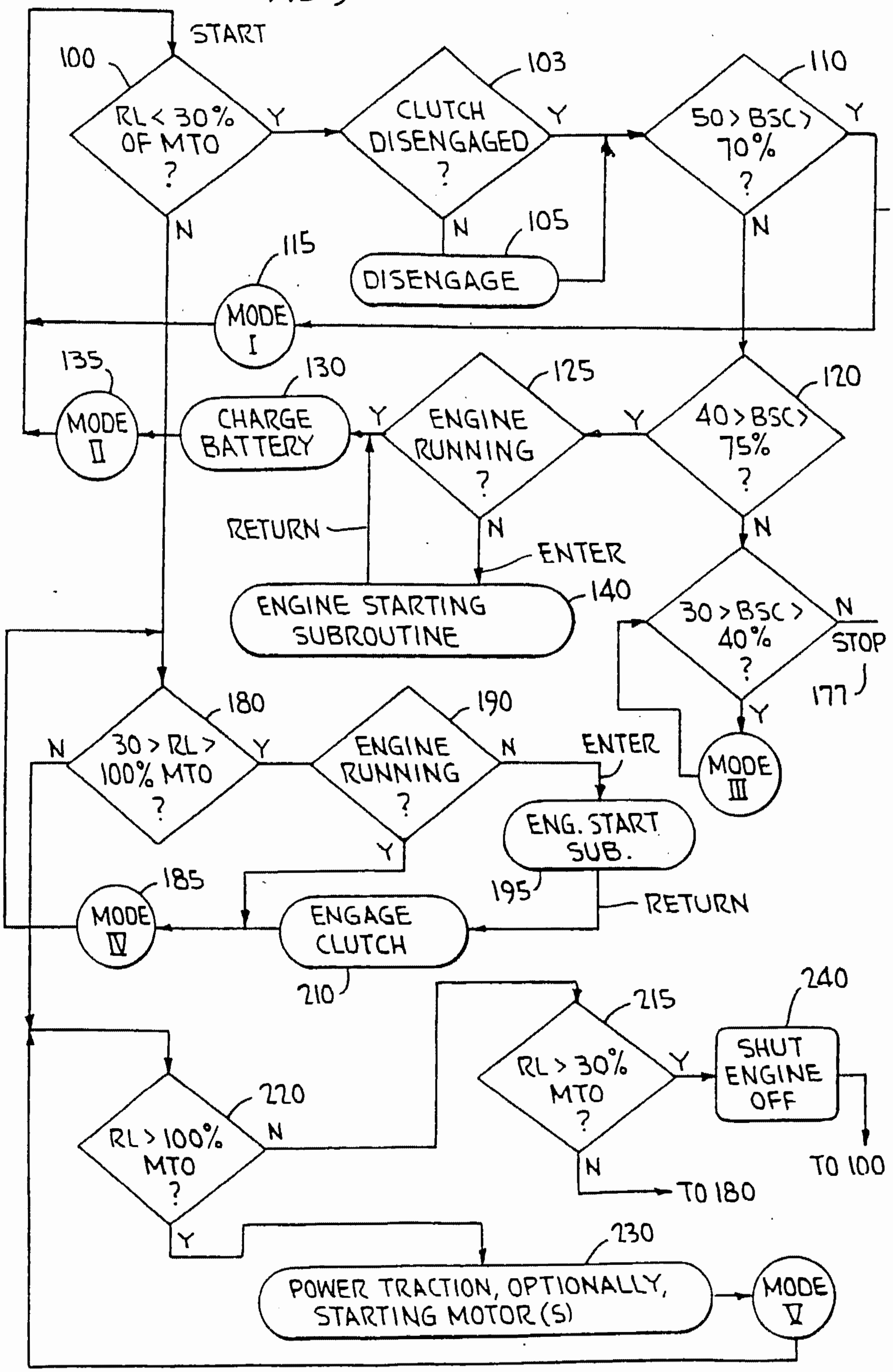


FIG. 8(d)



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 9



SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

FIG. 9(a)

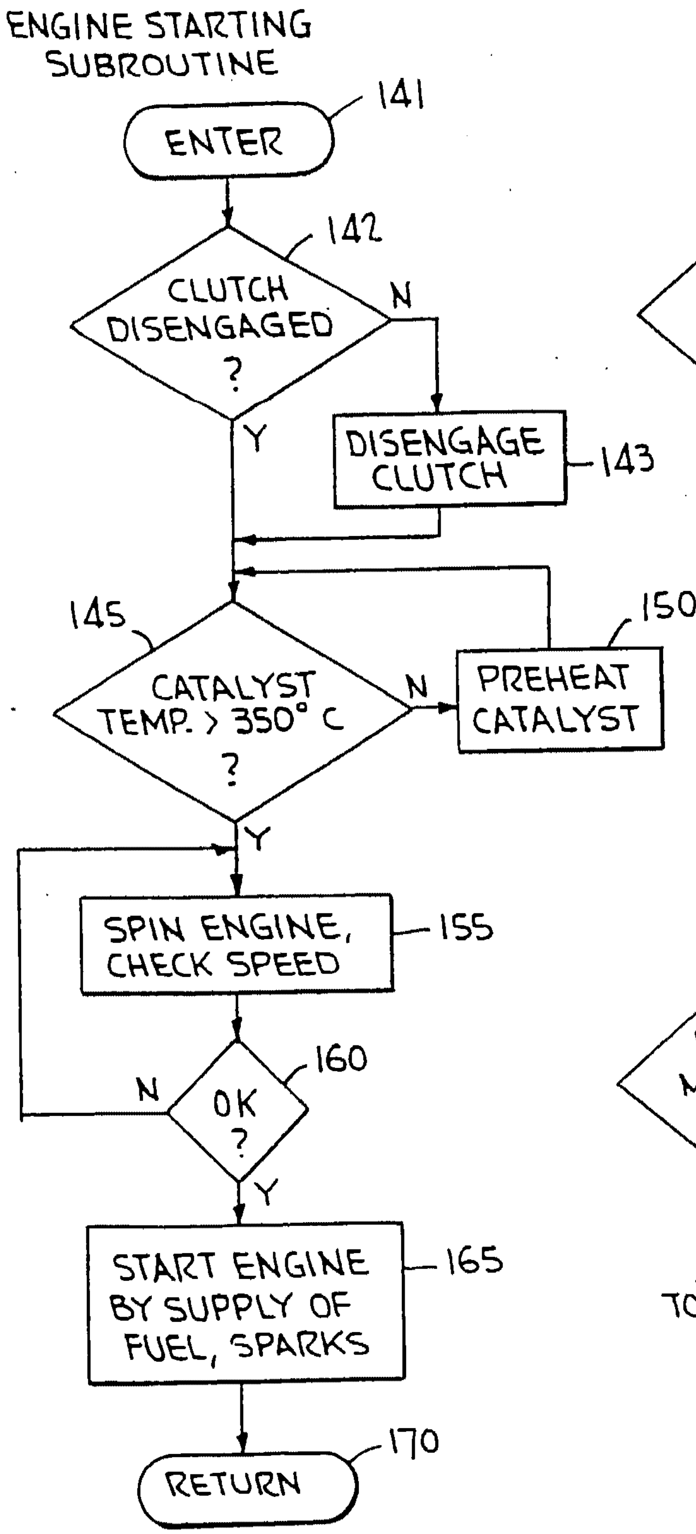


FIG. 9(b)

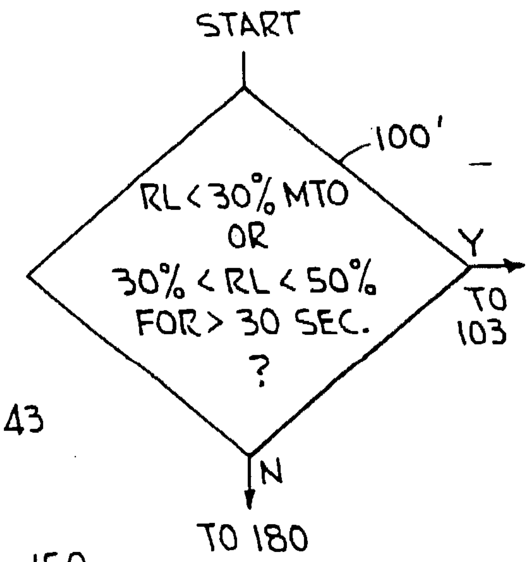
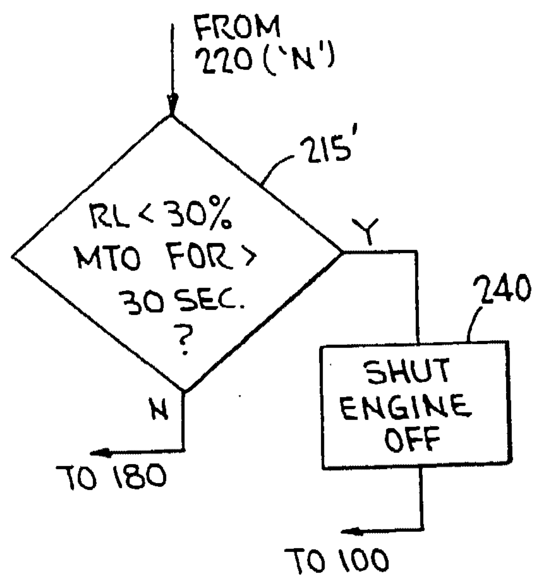


FIG. 9(c)



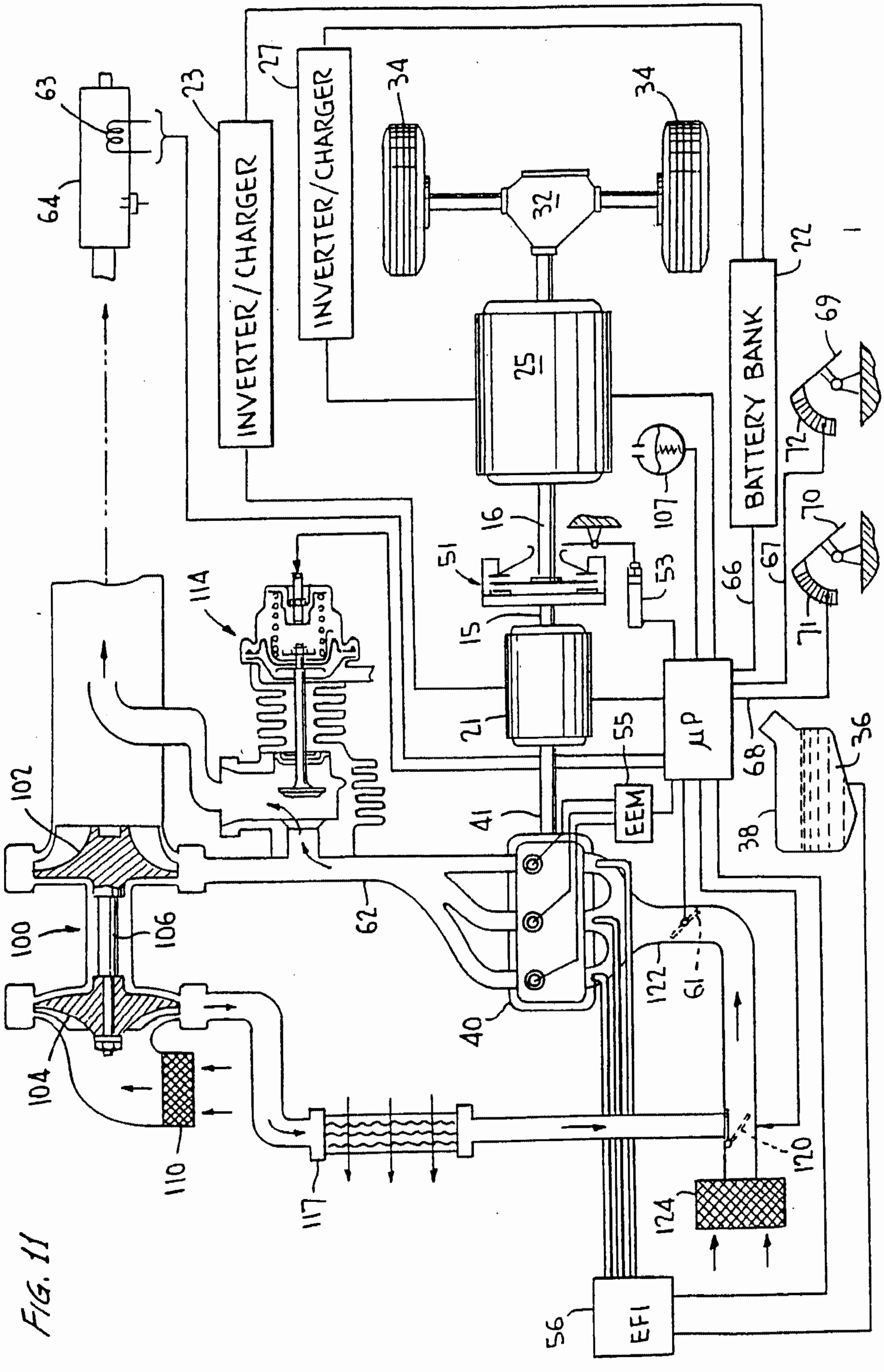


FIG. 11

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

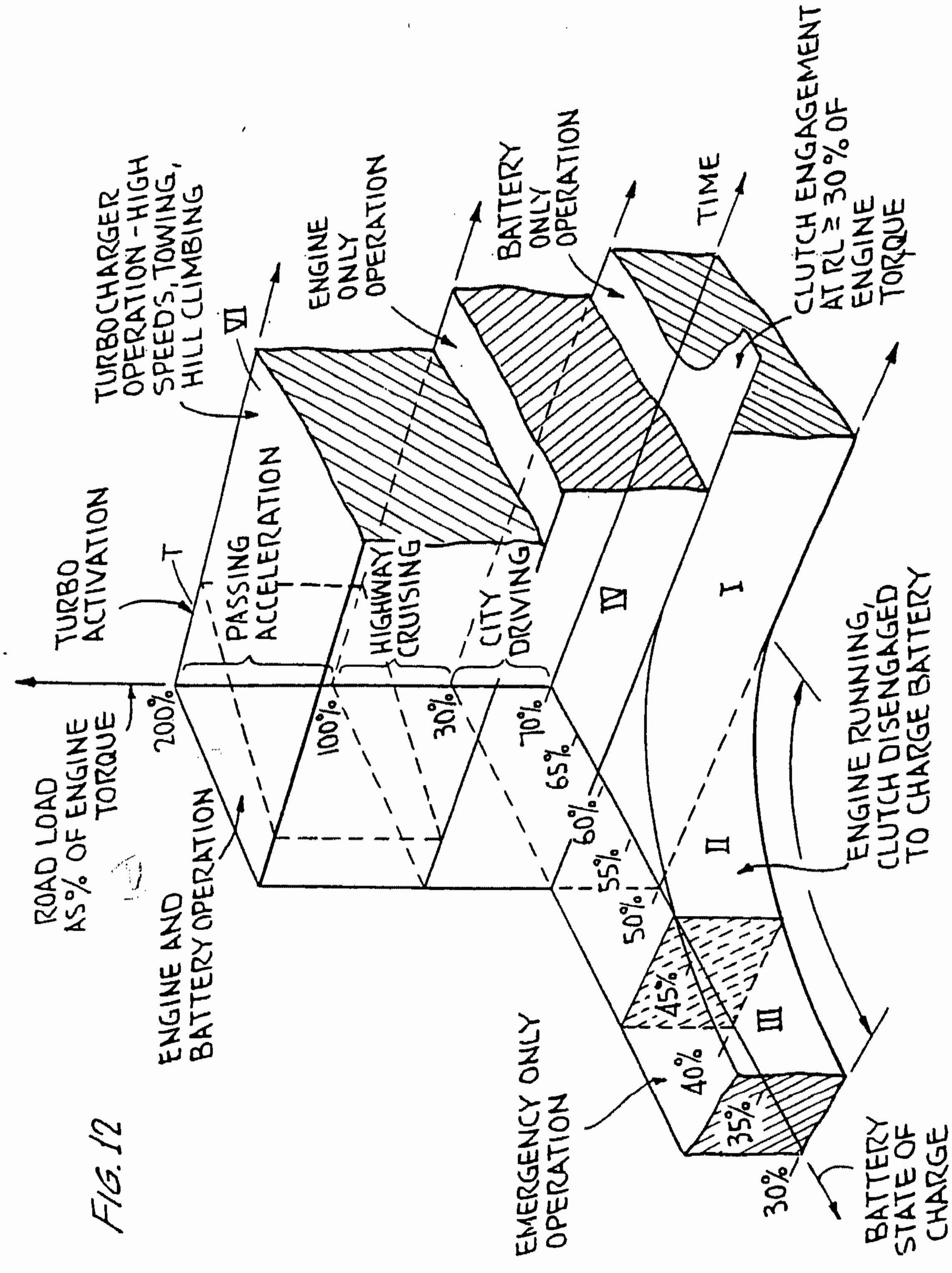

ROAD LOAD AS% OF ENGINE TORQUE
ENGINE AND BATTERY OPERATION
TURBO ACTIVATION
T
TURBOCHARGER OPERATION - HIGH SPEEDS, TOWING, HILL CLIMBING
VI
PASSING ACCELERATION
HIGHWAY CRUISING
CITY DRIVING
ENGINE ONLY OPERATION
BATTERY ONLY OPERATION
TIME
CLUTCH ENGAGEMENT AT RL ≥ 30% OF ENGINE TORQUE
200%
100%
30%
70%
65%
60%
55%
50%
45%
40%
35%
30%
IV
I
II
III
ENGINE RUNNING, CLUTCH DISENGAGED TO CHARGE BATTERY
EMERGENCY ONLY OPERATION
BATTERY STATE OF CHARGE

FIG. 12

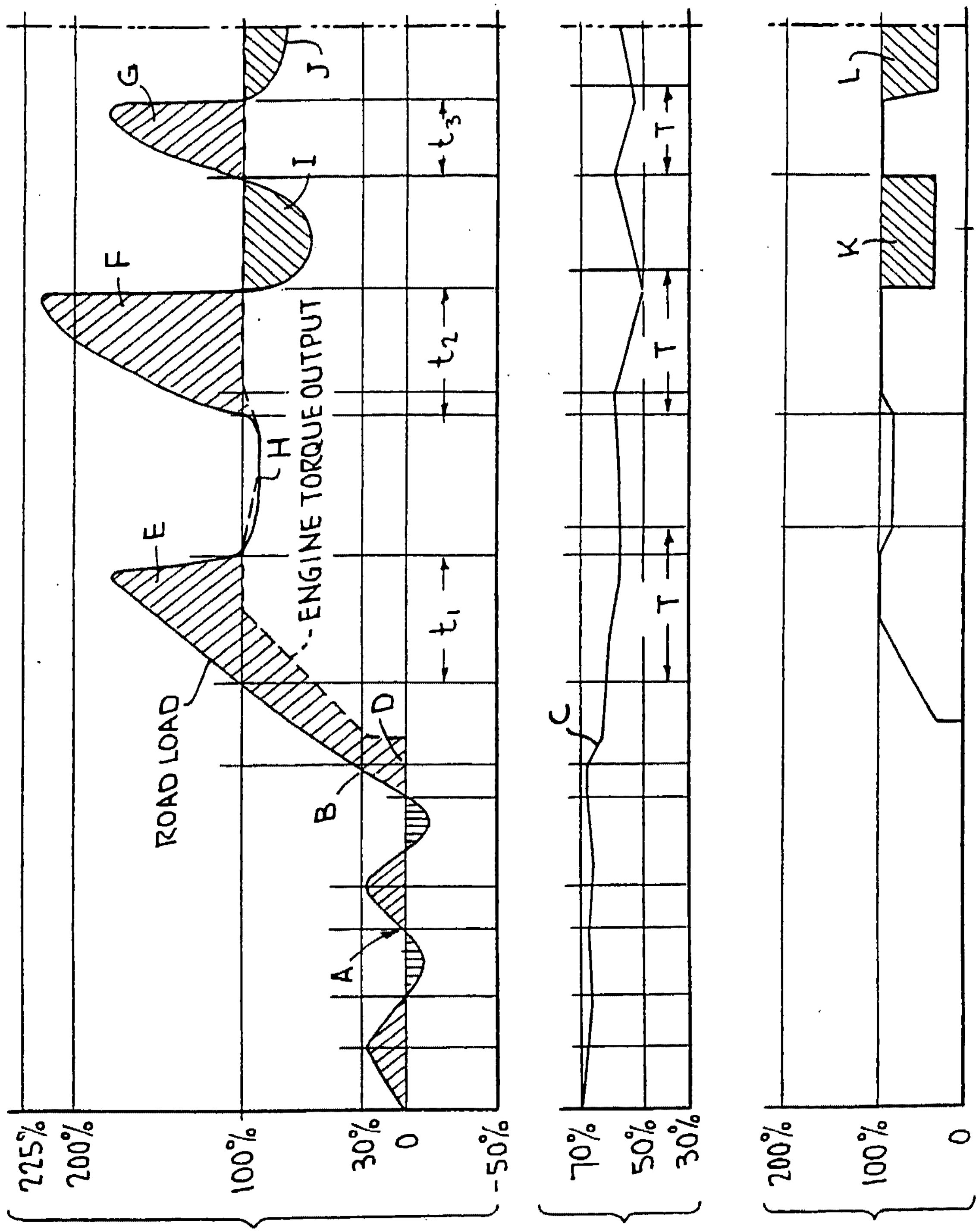


FIG. 13(a) ROAD LOAD AS % OF ENGINE'S MAX. TORQUE (NORMALLY ASPIRATED)

FIG. 13(b) BATTERY STATE OF CHARGE

FIG. 13(c) ENGINE + TURBO-CHARGER OPERATION

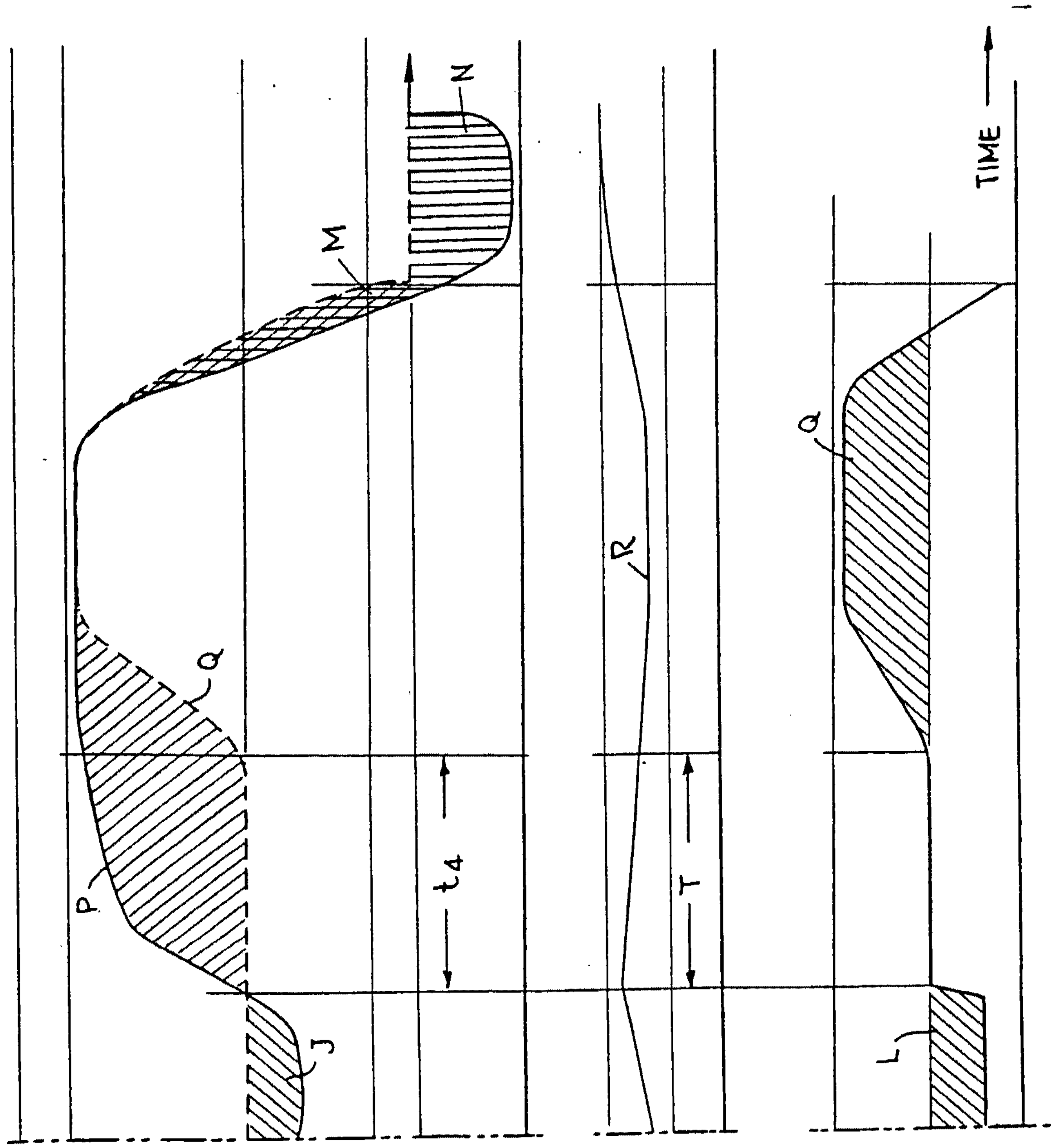


FIG. 13(a) (CONTINUED)

FIG. 13(b) (CONTINUED)

FIG. 13(c) (CONTINUED)

SUBSTITUTE SHEET (RULE 26)

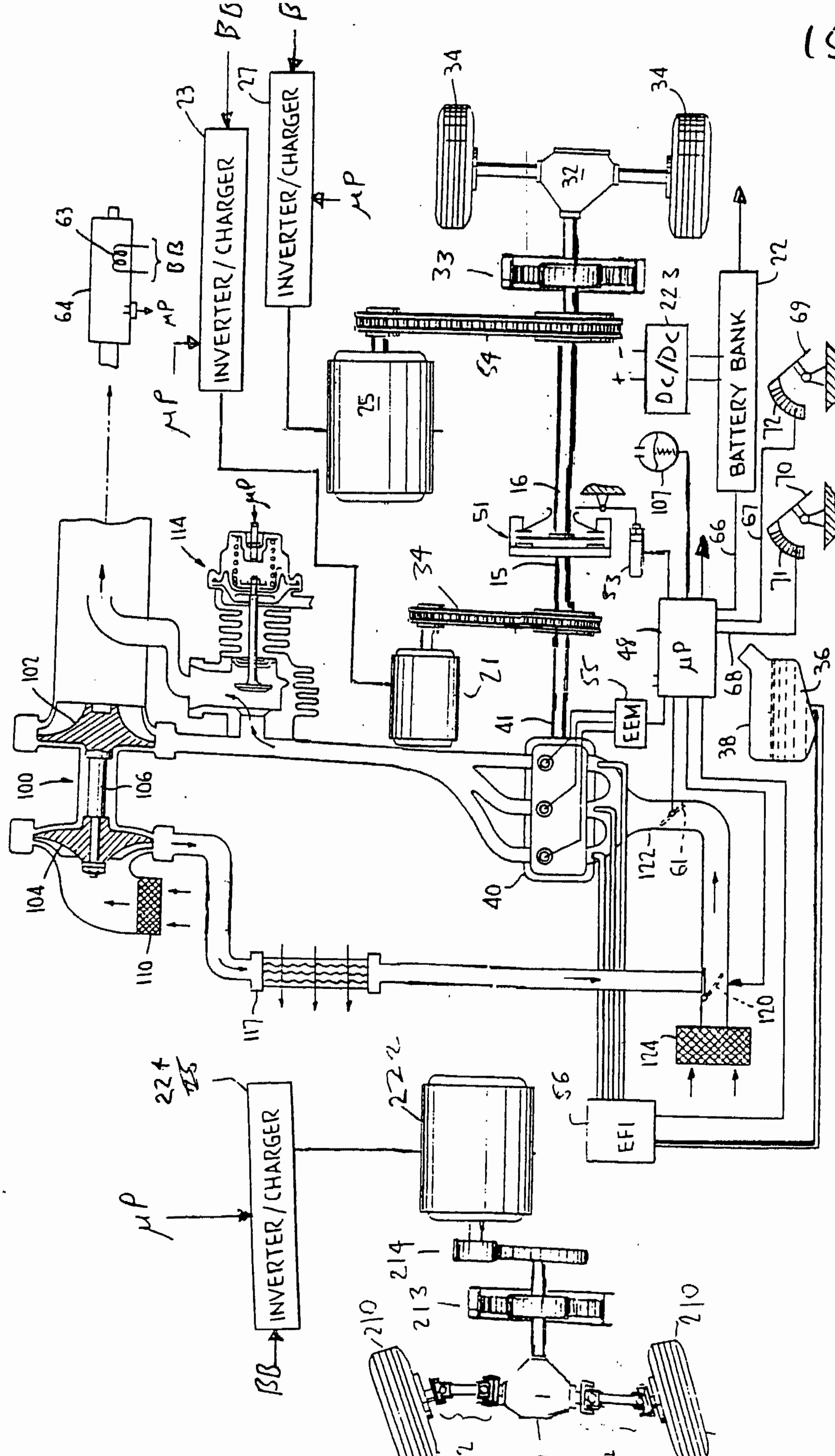

INVERTER/CHARGER
INVERTER/CHARGER
INVERTER/CHARGER
BATTERY BANK
Dc/Dc
μP
EEM
EFI
BB
B
MP

FIG. 14

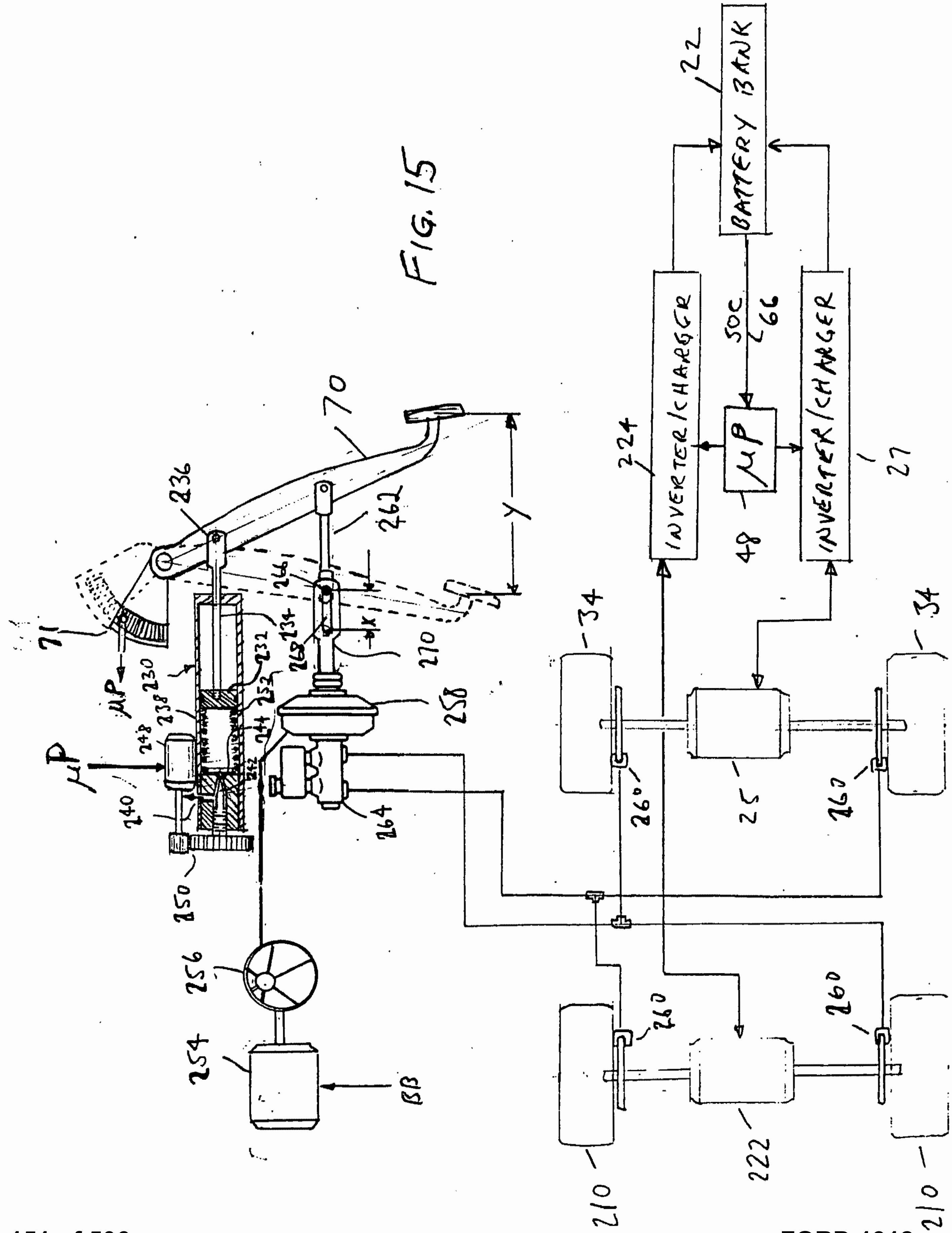

BATTERY BANK
22
INVERTER/CHARGER
224
INVERTER/CHARGER
27
μP
48
SOC
66
34
34
25
260
260
260
260
222
210
210
70
71
236
262
Y
X
258
264
256
254
BB
250
240
248
μP
μP

FIG. 15

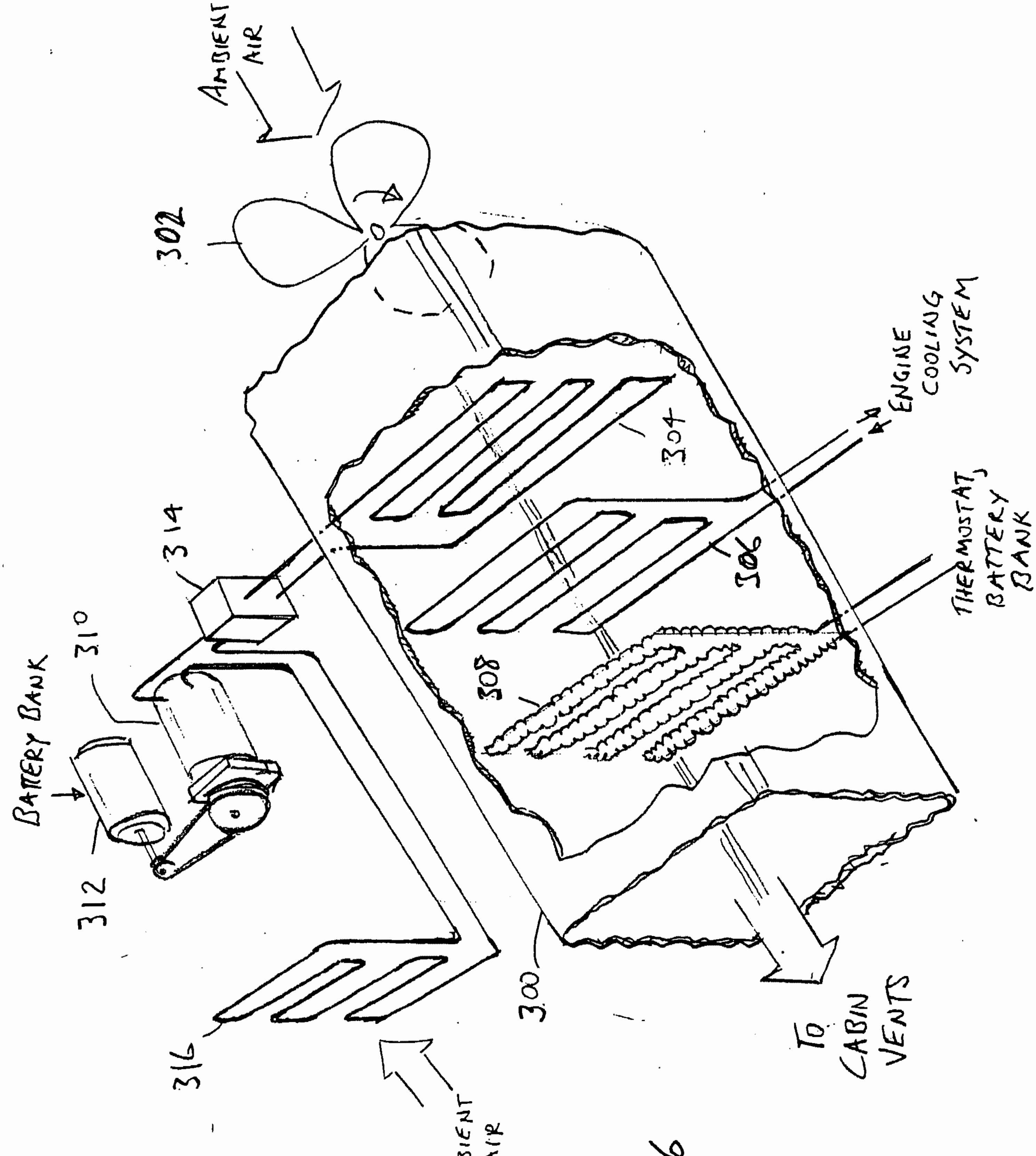

AMBIENT AIR
302
ENGINE COOLING SYSTEM
304
306
THERMOSTAT, BATTERY BANK
308
314
310
BATTERY BANK
312
316
300
TO CABIN VENTS
AMBIENT AIR

FIG 16

17/17

This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning Operations and is not part of the Official Record

BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- ☐ BLACK BORDERS
- ☐ IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- ☐ FADED TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☑ BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☐ SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- ☐ COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS
- ☐ GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS
- ☐ LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT
- ☐ REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY
- ☐ OTHER: ______________________

IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.
As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

RULE 60 APPLICATION

Atty. Dkt. PAICE201.DIV.2

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Sir:

This is a request for filing a **divisional** application under 37 CFR § 1.60 of pending prior application Serial No. 10/382,577 filed on March 7, 2003 entitled Hybrid Vehicles

Full Name of first joint inventor: Alex J. Severinsky

Residence: Washington, D.C. Citizenship: U.S.

Post Office Address: 4704 Foxhall Crescent, Washington D. C. 20007

Full Name of second joint inventor: Theodore Louckes

Residence: Holly, Michigan Citizenship: U.S.

Post Office Address: 10398 Appomattox, Holly, MI 48442

X Enclosed is a copy of the prior application as originally filed. I hereby verify that the attached papers are a true copy of the prior application Serial No. 10/382,577 as originally filed on March 7, 2003.

X The filing fee is calculated below: Claims as filed, less any claims canceled:

								LARGE ENTITY
CLAIMS					Basic Filing Fee:			$300
Total	7	-	20	=	0	x	$50	$0
Indep.	3	-	3	=	0	x	$200	$0

Search fee	$500
Examination fee	$200

The PTO did not receive the following listed Items(s) page 8 of 109 of Spec.

Size fee (110 sheets text, 17 sheets of drawing) $500

Total Fee $1500

_X_ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge fees under 37 CFR § 1.16 and § 1.17 which may be required, or credit any overpayment of Deposit Account No. 04-0401. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.

___ Status as a "small entity" under 37 CFR 1.9 is claimed by way of the attached declaration.

___ A preliminary amendment is enclosed.

___ An information disclosure statement is enclosed.

_X_ Cancel the following claims before calculating the filing fee: 1 - 9.

_X_ A check in the amount of $ 1500.00 is enclosed.

___ Priority of application Serial No. _________ filed on _____ in (country) ___________ is claimed under 35 U.S.C. § 119.

a) ____ Certified copy is on file in prior application Serial No. _________ filed ____________________.

b) ____ Certified copy filed herewith.

_X_ Amend the specification by inserting following before the first line thereof:

This is a **divisional** application of application Serial No. 10/382,577 filed March 7, 2003, which was a divisional application of Ser. No. 09/822,866 filed April 2, 2001, now Patent 6,554,088, which was a continuation-in-part of Ser. No 09/264,817 filed March 9, 1999, now U.S. patent 6,209,672, issued April 3, 2001, which in turn claimed priority from provisional application Ser. No. 60/100,095, filed September 14, 1998, and was also a continuation-in-part of Ser. No 09/392,743, filed September 9, 1999, now U. S. patent 6,338,391 issued January 15, 2002, in turn claiming priority from provisional application Ser. No. 60/122,296, filed March 1, 1999.

___ Transfer the drawings for the prior application to this application, and abandon said prior application as of the filing date accorded this application. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed for filing in the prior application file.

X New formal drawings are enclosed.

X The prior application is assigned of record to PAICE LLC via a document dated April 28, 2004 and recorded by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office on April 28, 2004 at Reel 014546 Frame 0351.

X The power of attorney in the prior application (filed in grandparent application Ser. No. 09/822,866) is to Michael de Angeli, Reg. No. 27,869. The power was filed June 26, 2001.

X Address all future communications to:

Michael de Angeli
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown RI 02835
401-423-3190

X The undersigned declare further that all statements made herein of his own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issuing thereon.

Respectfully submitted,

Sept. 18, 2005
Dated

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown RI 02835
401-423-3190

PATENT APPLICATION SERIAL NO ____________

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
FEE RECORD SHEET

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

10/13/2005 CV0111 00000013 11229762

01 FC:1081 250.00 OP

Repln. Ref: 10/13/2005 CV0111 0018490400
DA#:040401 Name/Number:11229762
FC: 9204 $250.00 CR

09/22/2005 MBELETE1 00000076 11229762

01 FC:1011 300.00 OP
02 FC:1111 500.00 OP
03 FC:1311 200.00 OP
04 FC:1081 500.00 OP

Adjustment date: 10/13/2005 CV0111
09/22/2005 MBELETE1 00000076 11229762
04 FC:1081 -500.00 OP

PTO-1556
(5/87)

U.S. Government Printing Office: 2002 — 489-267/69033

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD

Substitute for Form PTO-875

Application or Docket Number: 11229762

APPLICATION AS FILED – PART I

FOR	NUMBER FILED (Column 1)	NUMBER EXTRA (Column 2)	SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	SMALL ENTITY FEE ($)	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY FEE ($)
BASIC FEE (37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c))							300
SEARCH FEE (37 CFR 1.16(k), (i), or (m))							500
EXAMINATION FEE (37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q))							200
TOTAL CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(i))	7 minus 20 =	*	X$ 25=		OR	X$50=	
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(h))	3 minus 3 =	*	X$100=			X$200=	
APPLICATION SIZE FEE (37 CFR 1.16(s))	If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is $250 ($125 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR						250
MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT (37 CFR 1.16(j))			N/A			N/A	
			TOTAL			TOTAL	1250

* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2.

APPLICATION AS AMENDED – PART II

AMENDMENT A

	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT (Column 1)		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR (Column 2)	PRESENT EXTRA (Column 3)	SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	ADDITIONAL FEE ($)	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	ADDITIONAL FEE ($)
Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus	**	=	X =		OR	X =	
Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus	***	=	X =		OR	X =	
Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))									
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))					N/A		OR	N/A	
					TOTAL ADD'T FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'T FEE	

OR

AMENDMENT B

	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT (Column 1)		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR (Column 2)	PRESENT EXTRA (Column 3)	SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	ADDITIONAL FEE ($)	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	ADDITIONAL FEE ($)
Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus	**	=	X =		OR	X =	
Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus	***	=	X =		OR	X =	
Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))									
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))					N/A		OR	N/A	
					TOTAL ADD'T FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'T FEE	

* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.
** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20".
*** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest number found in the appropriate box in column 1.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371 (c) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTORNEY DOCKET NUMBER
11/229,762	09/20/2005	Alex J. Severinsky	PAICE201.DIV. 2

CONFIRMATION NO. 3347

FORMALITIES LETTER

Michael de Angeli
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835

Date Mailed: 10/13/2005

NOTICE OF OMITTED ITEM(S) IN A NONPROVISIONAL APPLICATION

FILED UNDER 37 CFR 1.53(b)

A filing date has been accorded to the above-identified nonprovisional application papers; however, the following item(s) appear to have been omitted from the application:

- Page(s) **8** of the specification (description and claims).

I. Should applicant contend that the above-noted omitted item(s) was in fact deposited in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) with the nonprovisional application papers, a copy of this Notice and a petition (and $400.00 petition fee *(37 CFR 1.17(f))*) with evidence of such deposit **must** be filed within **TWO MONTHS** of the date of this Notice. The petition fee will be refunded if is determined that the item(s) was received by the USPTO.

II. Should applicant desire to supply the omitted item(s) and accept the date that such omitted item(s) was filed in the USPTO as the filing date of the above-identified application, a copy of this Notice, the omitted item(s) (with a supplemental oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63 and 1.64 referring to such items), and a petition under 37 CFR 1.182 (with the $400.00 petition fee *(37 CFR 1.17(f))* requesting the later filing date **must** be filed within **TWO MONTHS** of the date of this Notice.

Applicant is advised that generally the filing fee required for an application is the filing fee in effect on the filing date accorded the application and that payment of the requisite basic filing fee on a date later than the filing date of the application requires payment of a surcharge (37 CFR 1.16(f)). To avoid processing delays and payment of a surcharge, applicant should submit any balance due for the requisite filing fee based on the later filing date being requested when submitting the omitted items(s) and the petition (and petition fee) requesting the later filing date.

III. The failure to file a petition (and petition fee) under the above options (I) or (II) within **TWO MONTHS** of the date of this Notice (37 CFR 1.181(f)) will be treated as a constructive acceptance by the applicant of the application as deposited in the USPTO. **THIS TWO MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDABLE UNDER 37 CFR 1.136(a) or (b)**. In the absence of a timely filed petition in reply to this Notice, the application will maintain a filing date as of the date of deposit of the application papers in the USPTO, and original application papers (*i.e.*, the original disclosure of the invention) will include only those application papers present in the USPTO on the date of deposit.

In the event that applicant elects not to take action pursuant to options (I) or (II) above (thereby constructively electing option (III)), amendment of the specification to renumber the pages consecutively and cancel incomplete sentences caused by any omitted page(s), and/or amendment of the specification to cancel all references to any omitted drawing(s), relabel the drawing figures to be numbered consecutively (if necessary), and correct the references in the specification to the drawing figures to correspond with any relabeled drawing figures, is required.

A copy of the drawing figures showing the proposed changes in red ink should accompany with any drawing changes . Such amendment and/or correction to the drawing figures, if necessary, should be by way of preliminary amendment submitted prior to the first Office action to avoid delays in the prosecution of the application.

Applicant is cautioned that correction of the above items may cause the specification and drawings page count to exceed 100 pages. If the specification and drawings exceed 100 pages, applicant will need to submit the required application size fee.

Replies should be mailed to: Mail Stop Missing Parts
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

A copy of this notice MUST be returned with the reply.

Office of Initial Patent Examination (571) 272-4000, or 1-800-PTO-9199, or 1-800-972-6382
PART 3 - OFFICE COPY

by a "fluid coupling or torque converter of conventional construction". Col. 2, lines 16 - 17. Such transmissions and fluid couplings or torque converters are very inefficient, are heavy, bulky, and costly, and are to be eliminated according to one object of the present invention, again as discussed in detail below.

Furthermore, the primary means of battery charging disclosed by Hunt involves a further undesirable complexity, namely a turbine driving the electric motor in generator configuration. The turbine is fueled by waste heat from the internal combustion engine. See col. 3, lines 10 - 60. Hunt's internal combustion engine is also fitted with an alternator, for additional battery charging capability, adding yet further complexity. Thus it is clear that Hunt fails to teach a hybrid vehicle meeting the objects of the present invention - that is, a hybrid vehicle competitive with conventional vehicles with respect to performance, cost and complexity, while achieving substantially improved fuel efficiency.

Kawakatsu U.S. Patents Nos. 4,305,254 and 4,407,132 show a parallel hybrid involving a single internal combustion engine coupled to the drive wheels through a conventional variable-ratio transmission, an electric motor, and an alternator, to allow efficient use of the internal combustion engine. As in the Hunt disclosure, the engine is intended to be operated in a relatively efficient range of engine speeds; when it produces more torque than is needed to propel the vehicle, the excess is used to charge the batteries; where the engine provides insufficient torque, the motor is energized as well.

A further Kawakatsu patent, No. 4,335,429, shows a hybrid vehicle, in this case comprising an internal combustion engine and two motor/generator units. A first larger motor/generator, powered by a battery, is used to provide additional torque when that provided by the engine is insufficient; the larger motor-generator also converts excess torque provided by the engine into electrical energy, to be stored by the battery, and is used in a regenerative braking mode. The second smaller motor/generator is similarly used

RECEIVED
CENTRAL FAX CENTER
JAN 13 2006

MICHAEL M. DE ANGELI, P.C.
ATTORNEY AT LAW
60 INTREPID LANE
JAMESTOWN, RHODE ISLAND 02835
(401) 423-3190

REGISTERED PATENT ATTORNEY

ADMITTED TO BARS OF PA & MD
NOT ADMITTED IN RI

FAX: (401) 423-3191
E-MAIL: MDEANGE@COX.NET

FACSIMILE TRANSMISSION

To: Office of Initial Patent Examination
Mail Stop Missing Parts
U. S. Patent and Trademark Office
P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria VA 22313-1450

Fax Number: 571-273-8300 Date: January 13, 2006

Re: U.S. Ser. No. 11/229,762

Total Pages (including this sheet): 5

Dear Sirs:

I respond herewith to the Notice of Omitted Item(s) in a Nonprovisional Application mailed in this application on October 13, 2005, a copy of which is enclosed herewith. I apologize for not having responded sooner.

The Notice indicates that page 8 of the specification was omitted from the application. A copy of page 8 is enclosed; kindly add this to the previously-filed application papers.

I understand from a conversation with your office that this submission will result in this application being accorded today's date as the filing date. As presently advised that will be perfectly acceptable.

More specifically, this application is a continuation of Ser. No. 10/382,577, which is about to issue, but according to an on-line search of the PTO records, has not yet thus issued. Accordingly, if as a result of this submission the present application is accorded today's filing date, and is thus co-pending with Ser. No. 10/382,577, there will be no need for further proceedings. However, applicant reserves his right to proceed as outlined in paragraph III of the Notice if this turns out to be necessary, that is, to obtain the benefit of the earlier filing date of September 20, 2005, if needed to ensure copendency with Ser. No. 10/382,577.

Please charge any fees due in connection with this submission to my Deposit Account No. 04-0401.

Office of Initial Patent Examination
Page 2
January 13, 2006

Please feel free to contact the undersigned at the number above if there are any questions.

Respectfully submitted,

Jan. 13, 2006
Dated

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190

RECEIVED
CENTRAL FAX CENTER

JAN 13 2006

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NUMBER	FILING OR 371 (c) DATE	FIRST NAMED APPLICANT	ATTORNEY DOCKET NUMBER
11/229,762	09/20/2005	Alex J. Severinsky	PAICE201.DIV. 2

CONFIRMATION NO. 3347

Michael de Angeli
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835

FORMALITIES LETTER

Date Mailed: 10/13/2005

NOTICE OF OMITTED ITEM(S) IN A NONPROVISIONAL APPLICATION

FILED UNDER 37 CFR 1.53(b)

A filing date has been accorded to the above-identified nonprovisional application papers; however, the following item(s) appear to have been omitted from the application:

- Page(s) 8 of the specification (description and claims).

I. Should applicant contend that the above-noted omitted item(s) was in fact deposited in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) with the nonprovisional application papers, a copy of this Notice and a petition (and $400.00 petition fee *(37 CFR 1.17(f))*) with evidence of such deposit **must** be filed within **TWO MONTHS** of the date of this Notice. The petition fee will be refunded if is determined that the item(s) was received by the USPTO.

II. Should applicant desire to supply the omitted item(s) and accept the date that such omitted item(s) was filed in the USPTO as the filing date of the above-identified application, a copy of this Notice, the omitted item(s) (with a supplemental oath or declaration in compliance with 37 CFR 1.63 and 1.64 referring to such items), and a petition under 37 CFR 1.182 (with the $400.00 petition fee *(37 CFR 1.17(f))* requesting the later filing date **must** be filed within **TWO MONTHS** of the date of this Notice.

Applicant is advised that generally the filing fee required for an application is the filing fee in effect on the filing date accorded the application and that payment of the requisite basic filing fee on a date later than the filing date of the application requires payment of a surcharge (37 CFR 1.16(f)). To avoid processing delays and payment of a surcharge, applicant should submit any balance due for the requisite filing fee based on the later filing date being requested when submitting the omitted items(s) and the petition (and petition fee) requesting the later filing date.

III. The failure to file a petition (and petition fee) under the above options (I) or (II) within **TWO MONTHS** of the date of this Notice (37 CFR 1.181(f)) will be treated as a constructive acceptance by the applicant of the application as deposited in the USPTO. **THIS TWO MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDABLE UNDER 37 CFR 1.136(a) or (b).** In the absence of a timely filed petition in reply to this Notice, the application will maintain a filing date as of the date of deposit of the application papers in the USPTO, and original application papers (*i.e.*, the original disclosure of the invention) will include only those application papers present in the USPTO on the date of deposit.

In the event that applicant elects not to take action pursuant to options (I) or (II) above (thereby constructively electing option (III)), amendment of the specification to renumber the pages consecutively and cancel incomplete sentences caused by any omitted page(s), and/or amendment of the specification to cancel all references to any omitted drawing(s), relabel the drawing figures to be numbered consecutively (if necessary), and correct the references in the specification to the drawing figures to correspond with any relabeled drawing figures, is required.

A copy of the drawing figures showing the proposed changes in red ink should accompany with any drawing changes . Such amendment and/or correction to the drawing figures, if necessary, should be by way of preliminary amendment submitted prior to the first Office action to avoid delays in the prosecution of the application.

Applicant is cautioned that correction of the above items may cause the specification and drawings page count to exceed 100 pages. If the specification and drawings exceed 100 pages, applicant will need to submit the required application size fee.

Replies should be mailed to: Mail Stop Missing Parts
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

A copy of this notice <u>MUST</u> be returned with the reply.

Office of Initial Patent Examination (571) 272-4000, or 1-800-PTO-9199, or 1-800-972-6382
PART 2 - COPY TO BE RETURNED WITH RESPONSE

OIPE IAP88
MAY 08 2006
PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

IFW

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of	:	
	:	
Severinsky et al	:	Examiner: N/A
	:	
Serial No.: 11/229,762	:	Group Art Unit: 3616
Filed: January 13, 2006	:	Att. Dkt.:PAICE201.DIV.2
	:	
For: Hybrid Vehicles		

TRANSMITTAL OF AMENDMENT

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P. O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

Transmitted herewith is an amendment in the above - identified application.

___ A check for the additional claim fee of $ 2150.00 as calculated below is enclosed for this amendment.

x The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge the additional claim fee of $ 2150.00 as calculated below, and any underpayment (or to credit overpayment) to our Deposit Account No. 04-0401. A duplicate copy of this sheet is attached.

	TOTAL CLAIMS	CLAIMS PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR		PRESENT EXTRA		LARGE ENTITY ADDITIONAL RATE	
TOTAL	59	20	=	39	Extra	x 50	$1950.00
INDEP.	4	3	=	1	Extra	x 200	$ 200.00
						TOTAL:	$2150.00

Respectfully submitted,

[signature]

Dated May 5, 2006

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown RI 02835
401-423-3190

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of	:	
	:	
Severinsky et al	:	Examiner: N/A
	:	
Serial No.: 11/229,762	:	Group Art Unit: 3616
	:	
Filed: January 13, 2006	:	Att.Dkt:PAICE201.DIV.2
	:	
For: Hybrid Vehicles		

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT

Sir:

Prior to examination, kindly amend the above-identified application as follows:

REMARKS

The above new claims are presented to ensure proper scope to the protection of the invention. No new matter is included. Entry and favorable consideration are respectfully requested.

Respectfully submitted,

May 5, 2006
Dated

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190

IN THE CLAIMS:

Amend the claims to appear as follows:

1 - 16 (canceled)

17. (new) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

one or more wheels;

an internal combustion engine operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a first electric motor coupled to the engine;

a second electric motor operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a battery coupled to the first and second electric motors, operable to:

provide current to the first and/or the second electric motors; and

accept current from the first and second electric motors; and

a controller, operable to control the flow of electrical and mechanical power between the engine, the first and the second electric motors, and the one or more wheels;

wherein the controller is operable to operate the engine when torque required from the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle and/or to drive one or more of the first or the second motors to charge the battery is at least equal to a setpoint (SP) above which the torque produced by the engine is efficiently produced, and wherein the torque produced by the engine when operated at the SP is substantially less than the maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine.

18. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to stop the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

19. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to stop the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

20. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein to operate the engine, the controller is operable to start the engine via the first electric motor if the engine is not already running.

21. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is further operable to monitor patterns of vehicle operation over time and vary the SP accordingly.

22. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is further operable to:

monitor road load (RL) on the hybrid vehicle over time; and

control transition between propulsion of the hybrid vehicle by the first and/or the second electric motors to propulsion by the engine responsive to the RL reaching the SP, wherein the transition only occurs when:

the RL > the SP for at least a first length of time; or

the RL > a second setpoint (SP2), wherein the SP2 > the SP.

23. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 22, wherein if the engine is not started, the controller is operable to start the engine for the transition between propulsion of the hybrid vehicle by the first and/or the second electric motors to propulsion by the engine.

24. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 22, wherein the

controller is further operable to control transition from propulsion of the hybrid vehicle by the engine to propulsion by the first and/or the second electric motors such that the transition occurs only when the RL < the SP for at least a second length of time.

25. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 24, wherein the first length of time is the same as the second length of time.

26. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 24, wherein the first length of time and the second length of time are predetermined.

27. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 24, wherein the controller is further operable to stop the engine after the transition between propulsion of the hybrid vehicle by the engine to propulsion by the first and/or the second electric motors.

28. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to vary the SP as a function of speed of the engine.

29. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the SP is at least approximately 20% of the MTO of the engine when normally-aspirated.

30. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO of the engine when normally-aspirated.

31. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the SP is less than approximately 70% of the MTO of the engine when normally-aspirated.

32. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to implement a plurality of operating modes responsive to road load (RL) and the SP, wherein both the RL and the SP are expressed as percentages of the MTO of the engine when normally-aspirated, and wherein the operating modes comprise:

a low-load mode I, wherein, when the RL < the SP, the second electric motor is operable to provide torque to propel the hybrid vehicle;

a highway cruising mode IV, wherein, when the SP < the RL < the MTO, the engine is operable to provide torque to propel the hybrid vehicle, and wherein the controller is operable to start the engine if the engine is not running to enter the highway cruising mode IV; and

an acceleration mode V, wherein, when the RL > the MTO, the engine, the first electric motor, and/or the second electric motor is operable to provide torque to propel the hybrid vehicle, and wherein the controller is operable to start the engine if the engine is not running to enter the acceleration mode V.

33. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 32, wherein the controller is operable to decouple the engine and the first electric motor from the one or more wheels during operation in the mode I and couple the engine and the first electric motor to the one or more wheels during operation in the modes IV and V.

34. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 32, wherein the plurality of operating modes further comprise a low-speed battery charging mode II, wherein, when the RL < the SP and a state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level:

the controller is operable to decouple the engine and the first electric motor from the one or more wheels and start the engine if the engine is not running to enter the battery charging mode II;

the second electric motor is operable to provide torque to propel the hybrid vehicle; and

the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to the first motor for charging the battery.

35. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 32, wherein the controller is operable to control direct transition from operation of the hybrid vehicle in the mode I to operation of the hybrid vehicle in the mode V in response to operator input, and wherein the operator input specifies a rapid increase in torque to be applied to the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

36. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 32, further comprising a turbocharger controllably coupled to the internal combustion engine, operable to increase the MTO of the engine;

wherein the plurality of operation modes further comprise a sustained high-power turbocharged mode VI, wherein, when the RL > the MTO for more than a predetermined time T, the controller is operable to engage the turbocharger to increase the effective MTO of the engine.

37. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 36, wherein the controller is operable to vary the time T with respect to a state of charge of the battery.

38. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, further comprising a turbocharger controllably coupled to the internal combustion engine, operable to increase the MTO of the engine.

39. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the

controller is operable to receive operator input of a desired cruising speed, and thereafter control instantaneous torque output of the engine and/or one or more of the first or the second electric motors in accordance with variation in RL so as to maintain a substantially constant vehicle speed.

40. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the battery is operable to be regeneratively charged when instantaneous torque output by the internal combustion engine > the RL, when the RL is negative, and/or when braking is initiated by the operator.

41. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein total torque available to the one or more wheels from the engine is no greater than total torque available from the first and second electric motors combined.

42. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the engine and first electric motor are coupled to a first set of the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle and the second electric motor is coupled to a second set of the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

43. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, further comprising a variable-ratio transmission disposed between the engine and the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

44. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to rotate the engine via the first electric motor before starting the engine such that cylinders of the engine are heated by compression of air therein.

45. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the

controller is operable to limit a rate of change of torque produced by the engine, such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs substantially at a stoichiometric ratio, and wherein if the engine is incapable of supplying an instantaneous torque required, the controller is operable to transfer additional torque from one or more of the first or the second electric motors.

46. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

47. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 46, wherein the clutch connects a first output shaft of or driven by the engine and the first electric motor with a second output shaft of or driven by the second electric motor coupled to the one or more wheels, and wherein the controller is operable to control the speeds of the engine and the first electric motor and of the second motor such that when the clutch is engaged, the speeds of the first and second output shafts are substantially equal.

48. (new) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to start and operate the engine at torque output levels less than SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

49. (new) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than a setpoint (SP);

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO; and

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO.

50. (new) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

51. (new) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

52. (new) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to:

store power from the at least one electric motor and/or the engine; and

transmit power to the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle.

53. (new) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery indicates the need to do so, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to propel the hybrid vehicle and to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, wherein a first portion of the torque equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, wherein a second portion of the torque in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

54. (new) The method of claim 49, wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle and said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle, each comprises:

if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

55. (new) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

monitoring patterns of vehicle operation over time and varying the SP accordingly.

56. (new) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

monitoring the RL over time;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine to propel the hybrid vehicle is performed when:

the RL > the SP for at least a predetermined time; or

the RL > a second setpoint (SP2), wherein the SP2 is a larger percentage of the MTO than the SP.

57. (new) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

monitoring the RL over time;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle is performed when the RL < the SP for at least a predetermined amount of time.

58. (new) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a desired cruising speed;

controlling instantaneous engine torque output and operation of the at least one electric motor in accordance with variation in the RL to maintain the speed of the hybrid vehicle according to the desired cruising speed.

59. (new) The method of claim 49, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO.

60. (new) The method of claim 49,

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a highway cruising operation mode IV; and

wherein said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V.

61. (new) The method of claim 60, further comprising:

decoupling the engine from wheels of the hybrid vehicle for operation in mode I; and

coupling the engine to the wheels for operation in modes IV and V.

62. (new) The method of claim 60, wherein the at least one electric motors comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to store power from the engine and/or the at least one electric motor and transmit power to the at least one electric motor to propel the vehicle;

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level and when the RL < the SP, wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery composes a low-load battery charging mode II, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises:

decoupling the engine from wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

the engine providing torque at least equal to the SP to the first electric motor to charge the battery;

wherein during said operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level, the hybrid vehicle is propelled by torque provided by the second electric motor in response to energy supplied by the battery.

63. (new) The method of claim 60, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a change in required torque to be applied to wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

if the received operator input specifies a rapid increase in the required torque, changing operation from operating mode I directly to operating mode V.

64. (new) The method of claim 60, wherein the hybrid vehicle further comprises a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine, and wherein said operating both the engine and the at least one electric motor occurs when the RL > the MTO for less than a predetermined time T, wherein the method further comprises:

operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine when desired, wherein said operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine occurs when the RL > the MTO for more than the predetermined time T, and wherein said operating the turbocharger composes a turbocharged operation mode VI.

65. (new) The method of claim 64, further comprising:

varying the time T responsive to the state of charge of the battery.

66. (new) The method of claim 49, wherein the hybrid vehicle further comprises a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine, wherein the method further comprises:

operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine when desired.

67. (new) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

regeneratively charging a battery of the hybrid vehicle when instantaneous torque output of the engine > the RL, when the RL is negative, and/or when braking is initiated by an operator of the hybrid vehicle.

68. (new) The method of claim 49, wherein the hybrid vehicle comprises a variable-ratio transmission disposed between the engine and the wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

69. (new) The method of claim 49, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

70. (new) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

controlling the engine such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs substantially at a stoichiometric ratio, wherein said controlling the engine comprises limiting a rate of change of torque output of the engine; and if the engine is incapable of supplying instantaneous torque required to propel the hybrid vehicle, supplying additional torque from the at least one electric motor.

71. (new) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

rotating the engine before starting the engine such that its cylinders are heated by compression of air therein.

72. (new) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

operating the engine at torque output levels less than the SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

73. (new) A method of operating a hybrid vehicle, the method comprising:

receiving an operator request for acceleration;

if a vehicle load is greater than a first amount in response to the operator request, supplying torque from an internal combustion engine to wheels of the vehicle;

if the vehicle load is less than a first amount in response to the operator request, supplying torque from an electric motor to the wheels of the vehicle;

wherein the engine is not operated when the vehicle load is less than the first amount, wherein the vehicle load is independent of the speed of the vehicle;

a battery supplying electrical power to the electric motor during said supplying torque from the electric motor to the wheels of the vehicle;

the battery storing electrical power generated by the vehicle responsive to torque provided by one or more of the engine or regeneration during deceleration of the vehicle.

74. (new) The method of claim 73,

wherein the first amount of vehicle load is a minimum load value at which the engine is efficiently operated, wherein the first amount varies in accordance with engine speed, and the engine is operated in a range of output torques from a minimum value of output torque to a maximum value of output torque which is sufficient to satisfy the vehicle's maximum continuous design load requirement.

75. (new) A method of operating a hybrid vehicle, the method comprising:

if vehicle load is greater than a first amount during city driving, an internal combustion engine of the vehicle supplying torque to wheels of the vehicle;

if vehicle load is less than the first amount during city driving, an electric motor of the vehicle supplying torque to the wheels of the vehicle;

wherein if vehicle load is below the first amount during city driving, the engine is not operated;

wherein the engine is used between a first percentage of total vehicle load on the engine and 100% of the total vehicle load on the engine, and wherein the first percentage of the total vehicle load is less than 70%.

11/22 9762

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD

Effective December 8, 2004

CLAIMS AS FILED - PART I

	(Column 1)	(Column 2)
TOTAL CLAIMS		
FOR	NUMBER FILED	NUMBER EXTRA
TOTAL CHARGEABLE CLAIMS	minus 20=	*
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS	minus 3 =	*
MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT		☐

* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2

SMALL ENTITY TYPE ☐ OR OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY

RATE	FEE		RATE	FEE
BASIC FEE		OR	BASIC FEE	
X$ 25=		OR	X$50=	
X100=		OR	X200=	
+180=		OR	+360=	
TOTAL			TOTAL	

CLAIMS AS AMENDED - PART II

5806

AMENDMENT A

	(Column 1) CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		(Column 2) HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	(Column 3) PRESENT EXTRA
Total	* 59	Minus	** 20	= 39
Independent	* 4	Minus	*** 3	= 1
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM				☐

SMALL ENTITY OR OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY

RATE	ADDITIONAL FEE		RATE	ADDITIONAL FEE
X$ 25=		OR	X$50=	1950.00
X100=		OR	X200=	200.00
+180=		OR	+360=	
TOTAL ADDIT. FEE		OR	TOTAL ADDIT. FEE	

AMENDMENT B

	(Column 1) CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		(Column 2) HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	(Column 3) PRESENT EXTRA
Total	*	Minus	**	=
Independent	*	Minus	***	=
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM				☐

RATE	ADDITIONAL FEE		RATE	ADDITIONAL FEE
X$ 25=		OR	X$50=	
X100=		OR	X200=	
+180=		OR	+360=	
TOTAL ADDIT. FEE		OR	TOTAL ADDIT. FEE	

AMENDMENT C

	(Column 1) CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		(Column 2) HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	(Column 3) PRESENT EXTRA
Total	*	Minus	**	=
Independent	*	Minus	***	=
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM				☐

RATE	ADDITIONAL FEE		RATE	ADDITIONAL FEE
X$ 25=		OR	X$50=	
X100=		OR	X200=	
+180=		OR	+360=	

United States Patent and Trademark Office
- Sales Receipt -

05/17/2006 WANTHONY 00000001 040401 11229762
Sale Ref: 00000001 DA#: 040401 11229762
01 FC:1202 800.00 DA

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of	:	
Severinsky et al	:	Examiner: David Dunn
Serial No.: 09/822,866	:	Group Art Unit: 3616
Filed: April 2, 2001	:	Att. Dkt.: PAICE201
For: Hybrid Vehicles		

Hon. Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Washington, DC 20231

SECOND SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Dear Sir:

Listed on accompanying PTO-1449 form(s) are a number of additional patents that may be considered relevant by the Examiner to the claims of this application. These patents were identified in supplemental searching conducted after the filing of the application. Copies of the newly-cited documents are provided herewith. The examiner is respectfully requested to consider these documents in connection with the patentability of the claims of this application. Citation of these documents should not be construed to admit they are necessarily statutory prior art effective against this application.

The relevance of the documents thus cited is as follows:

Goehring et al patent 6,394,209 discloses a hybrid vehicle in which the internal combustion engine is stated to be operated only at or near full load. To thus operate the engine of the vehicle of the invention is an object of the invention, and a limitation to that effect is present in claim 1 of the application as amended. However, the Goehring reference refers only to a serial hybrid, and therefore does not teach a hybrid vehicle operated in different modes responsive to the road load, as also required by claim 1.

Tabata et al patent 6,081,042, to be candid, is extrememly difficult to comprehend. It does appear that Tabata shows a hybrid vehicle which can be driven by a motor/generator, an engine, or both, the operation mode to be chosen based on "the currently required output Pd" and the battery state of charge. See Fig. 6 and cols. 17 - 20. Insofar as understood, the value Pd is not the same thing as applicants' instantaneous torque requirement or road load RL. Pd is defined as "an output of the hybrid drive system 210 required to drive the vehicle against a running resistance. This currently required output Pd is calculated according to a predetermined data map or equation, on the basis of the operation amount θ_{AC} of the accelerator pedal, a rate of change of this value θ_{AC}, running speed of the vehicle (speed N_o of the output shaft 19) or the currently established operating position of the automatic transmission." Col. 18, lines 34 - 42.

Another Tabata patent, 5982,045, is directed to control of mode shifting in a hybrid such that transmission ratios or torque distribution ratio changes are prevented from occurring concurrently with mode shifting, the goal evidently being to smooth mode shifting. No disclosure of control of mode shifting responsive to a quantity comparable to applicants' road load is apparent.

Lawrie et al patent 5,993,350 discloses an "automated manual transmission clutch controller" which purports to combine the advantages of conventional automatic and manual transmissions. Mode shifting is evidently carried out responsive to any or several of various "information..includ[ing] vehicle speed, RPM or the like..[or] other vehicle condition signals". Col. 8, lines 37 - 49. The disclosures of three further Lawrie and Lawrie et al patents, 6,006,620, 6,019,698, and 5,797,257 appear to be essentially identical.

Nagano et al patent 6,059,064 shows a hybrid vehicle and appears to be directed to improvements in the braking system employed; these include using a prime mover (e.g., an electric motor) on one axle and another, e.g., an IC engine on another axle. Hill-holding is also addressed, as is anti-lock. The improvements in brake "feel" addressed in the present application do not appear to be discussed by Nagano.

The Examiner is respectfully urged to consider these patents in connection with examination of this application, and to indicate that he has done so in the file of the case.

Respectfully submitted,

9/1/02

Dated

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER 09/822,866 10/382577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 4/2/2001	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
DD	6394209	5/2002	Goehring et al			
	6081042	6/2000	Tabata et al			
	5982045	11/1999	Tabata et al			
	5993350	11/1999	Lawrie et al			
	6019698	02/2000	Lawrie et al			
	5979257	11/1999	Lawrie			
	6006620	12/1999	Lawrie et al			
DD	6059064	05/2000	Nagano et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
[signature]	11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

Notice of References Cited	Application/Control No. ~~09/822,866~~	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination SEVERINSKY ET AL.	
	Examiner David Dunn	Art Unit 3616	Page 1 of 1

10/382577 U.S. PTO 03/07/03 JC493

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Name	Classification
DD	A	US-6,315,068	11-2001	Hoshiya et al.	180/65.2
DD	B	US-6,330,498	12-2001	Tamagawa et al.	701/22
DD	C	US-6,359,404	03-2002	Sugiyama et al.	318/432
DD	D	US-6470983	10-2002	Amano et al.	180/65.2
	E	US-			
	F	US-			
	G	US-			
	H	US-			
	I	US-			
	J	US-			
	K	US-			
	L	US-			
	M	US-			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Country	Name	Classification
	N					
	O					
	P					
	Q					
	R					
	S					
	T					

NON-PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		Include as applicable: Author, Title Date, Publisher, Edition or Volume, Pertinent Pages)
	U	
	V	
	W	
	X	11/19/04

*A copy of this reference is not being furnished with this Office action. (See MPEP § 707.05(a).)
Dates in MM-YYYY format are publication dates. Classifications may be US or foreign.

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office
PTO-892 (Rev 01-2001)

Notice of References Cited

Part of Paper No. 14

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of	:	
Severinsky et al	:	Examiner: David Dunn
Serial No.: 09/822,866	:	Group Art Unit: 3616
Filed: April 2, 2001	:	Att. Dkt.: PAICE201
For: Hybrid Vehicles		

Hon. Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Washington, DC 20231

THIRD SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Dear Sir:

Listed on accompanying PTO-1449 form(s) are five Japanese patent publications that may be considered relevant by the Examiner to the claims of this application. These publications were cited by the Japanese Patent Office in an office action dated September 2, 2002 in connection with prosecution of a Japanese patent application corresponding to the parent US applications, Ser. No. 09/264,817, now patent 6,209,672, and Ser. No. 09/392,743, now patent 6,338,391. A copy of a translation of this Japanese office action is attached, and copies of the newly-cited documents are provided herewith marked (1) - (5), in accordance with the Japanese Examiner's usage; copies of uncertified, partial translations of references 1 and 4 are also provided. The Examiner is respectfully requested to consider these documents in connection with the patentability of the claims of this application.

The relevance of the documents thus cited is as follows:

Japanese utility model registration 63-82283, published as "laid-open No. 2-7702", which was referred to in the Japanese office action as Reference 1 (a partial noncertified translation also being supplied), shows a hybrid vehicle comprising an internal combustion engine, an electric "traction" motor for providing additional torque to the wheels of the vehicle, and a second electric motor that can be operated to also supply additional torque to the wheels or operate as a generator to charge the battery during braking or hill descent. Typically, such hybrids are operated in different modes depending on whether the vehicle is sitting at a traffic light, accelerating, cruising on the highway, and so on. The same is true of the vehicle of the present invention.

In order that the hybrid vehicle can be made commercially acceptable, it is important that the "mode switching" decisions be made by a microprocessor or the like instead of the driver. Various references teach making this decision in different ways. Reference 1 does not address this question. Commonly, as in Japanese published application 06-080048, cited by the Japanese patent office as Reference 3 (which corresponds to US patent 5,697,466, already of record), the decision is made based on the degree to which the driver has depressed the accelerator pedal. By comparison, according to the present invention, as discussed extensively in the earlier prosecution of this and the parent applications, the mode switching decision is made based on the vehicle's instantaneous torque requirement or "road load" RL.

As previously, it is important to emphasize exactly what the terms "road load" RL means as used in the present claims, to distinguish over the art. "Road load" is a somewhat subtle concept, since during many phases of vehicle operation the road load quantitatively resembles, for example, the operator's foot pressure on the accelerator pedal, or simply the engine output power. However, the road load as used herein is neither of these. "Road load" as used herein is simply that amount of torque that must be supplied to the vehicle wheels in order to carry out the operator's current command.

Note that "road load" as thus defined can be positive, as during highway cruising, "highly" positive, as during acceleration or hill-climbing, negative, as during hill descent, and "heavily" negative, as during braking. Figs. 7 and 13 show this clearly, and it is explained in the specification of the application as well. The flowchart of Fig. 9 illustrates precisely how the mode switching decisions are made responsive to road load (with an additional variation possible based on the battery state of charge.)

The fact that according to the present invention the mode switching decisions are made responsive to road load, a quantity which can be positive or negative, distinguishes this invention from all prior art of which we are aware. It will be appreciated that making all of the mode switching decisions based essentially on monitoring this single variable (with subsidiary attention to the battery state of charge, as below) greatly simplifies the decision-making process, as compared, for example, to a system in which the operator's foot pressure on the throttle and brake pedals must be continually monitored.

The new references made of record hereby does not show this invention. Reference 1 does show a hybrid vehicle having components arranged comparably to those recited in claim 1, but there is no mention of the manner in which the mode-switching determinations are made. The Japanese Examiner made the comment that "the vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes in response to states of operation such as a load of the vehicle and the like", apparently based on the description in reference 1 of vehicle operation in different modes depending on the driving conditions. However, we find nothing in reference 1 that suggests mode switching based on road load as defined above.

None of the other references cited by the Japanese Examiner and made of record hereby (nor any of those previously made of record, of course) supply this deficiency of Reference 1. The Japanese Examiner cited published application 06-144020 (referred to as reference 2) against claim 1, for showing that the first motor also starts the engine, and cited reference 3 against claim 2, for showing that the state of charge of the battery can be considered in mode switching.

More specifically, in his remarks concerning claim 4, the Japanese Examiner asserted that reference 3 describes mode switching responsive to "road load (a press down amount of an accelerator pedal)(see [Fig. 3]) or the like". As above, "road load" as used in this application is something quite different than the degree to which the accelerator pedal is pressed down; for example, the latter cannot be negative, and road load as used herein can decidedly be negative. We have reviewed US patent 5,697,466 (which corresponds to Reference 3) in detail and it shows nothing comparable to mode switching based on road load as used in this application.

Claims 8 and 9 of this application are directed to the "turbocharger-on-demand" concept, which was an important aspect of the invention in parent application Ser. No. 09/392,743, now patent 6,338,391. Claims 15 - 20 of the Japanese application recite this concept, i.e., that of a turbocharger that is operated only when the road load exceeds a predetermined value for more than a minimum period of time. That is, the turbocharger is not operated continually, as in the usual prior art vehicles, but is only operated when needed, i.e., when road load exceeds the engine's normally aspirated torque capabilities (i.e., RL > MTO); moreover, the turbocharger is operated only when RL > MTO for more than some predetermined period of time T. This is an extremely powerful concept, and one which is only applicable to a hybrid vehicle. Providing the turbocharger on demand allows the engine to provide additional torque when needed, but to operate as a smaller, more efficient engine at other times.

More specifically, in a conventional turbocharged vehicle the turbocharger is spinning constantly, so that a turbine driven by the exhaust flow drives a compressor forcing air into the engine. The main problem with turbochargers as thus used is poor throttle response or "turbo lag", that is, a substantial time delay between the driver calling for more power by pressing on the accelerator pedal and the engine's response. While some progress has been made, mostly by use of smaller turbochargers, this problem is inevitable to some degree, since it takes some time for the turbocharger to "spool up" to its full speed.

The Japanese Examiner cited Japanese published application 55-069724 as reference 4; as noted, a partial noncertified translation of this reference is also provided. Reference 4 shows a turbocharger which is operated on demand, in response to a "load detecting means"; this is the first reference we have seen showing this concept. There is no suggestion of use of this turbocharger in a hybrid vehicle. A conventional (i.e., non-hybrid) vehicle fitted with a turbocharger of this type would have extremely poor throttle response if used to provide additional power for passing (i.e., overtaking) or hillclimbing; the "turbo lag" inherent in operation of a turbocharger starting from zero rpm would be on the order of tens of seconds, which would be totally unacceptable for a consumer vehicle. Possibly such a system would be useful in heavy truck operation or the like, where the load will vary significantly depending on whether the truck was loaded or not; in that case, the operator could be the "load detecting means", i.e., could throw a switch when he knew high power would be needed for an extended period of time.

By comparison, a turbocharger can be employed "on demand" in a hybrid vehicle according to the invention without poor throttle response caused by turbo lag, and without requiring any intervention by the operator. This is simply because the traction motor can be used to supply the vehicle's torque requirements in excess of MTO. Thus, when RL > MTO, the traction motor provides the additional torque required. If RL > MTO for longer than T, the turbocharger is activated and begins to spin. When it is up to operating speed, the traction motor can be deactivated. All this is shown clearly by Fig. 13, and would not be possible simply given the turbocharger-on-demand of Reference 4 in a conventional, non-hybrid vehicle. By comparison, in the present vehicle, at no point are the vehicle's torque requirements not met; therefore there is no "turbo lag".

It is apparent that this advantage can only be achieved by use of a turbocharger on demand in a hybrid vehicle. No combination of references can fairly be said to make this obvious. Specifically, the Japanese Examiner's comment as to claim 17, "it is a usual matter to control a turbocharger in response to a road load or the like" is not correct, for several reasons: no reference shows taking any kind of control action in response to road load as claimed; no reference suggests combining the turbocharger on demand of Reference 4 with a hybrid vehicle; and certainly no reference suggests the complete elimination of the turbo lag problem thus achieved, while at the same time the vehicle's useful load range is greatly broadened.

Finally, Japanese published application 04-274926 (Reference 5) was cited for a showing of preheating a catalyst before starting the associated engine, which is not a feature of the present claims.

The Examiner is respectfully urged to consider these patents in connection with examination of this application, and to indicate that he has done so in the file of the case.

Respectfully submitted,

Nov. 28, 2002
Dated

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~09/822,866~~ 10/382577
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 4/2/01	GROUP ART UNIT: 3616

1

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	63 8 2 2 8 3	6/1988	Japan				
DD	06 1 4 4 0 2 0	11/1992	Japan				
DD	06 0 8 0 0 4 8	11/1992	Japan				
DD	55 0 6 9 7 2 4	11/1978	Japan				
DD	04 2 7 4 9 2 6	2/1991	Japan				

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER: [signature] DATE CONSIDERED: 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

BEST AVAILABLE COPY 1

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of	:	
Severinsky et al	:	Examiner: N/A
Serial No.: 09/822,866	:	Group Art Unit: 3619
Filed: April 2, 2001	:	Att. Dkt.: PAICE201
For: Hybrid Vehicles		

Hon. Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Washington, DC 20231

SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Dear Sir:

Listed on attached PTO-1449 forms are a number of new patents discovered after filing of the above application. Copies of the listed patents are enclosed. The Examiner is respectfully requested to consider these patents with respect to the claims of this application.

The relevance of the newly-listed patents may be summarized as follows:

US patent 6,307,276 to Bader shows a hybrid drive system comprising an engine, a traction motor coupled to the countershaft of a multispeed transmission, and a controller which determines a running average value for the vehicle's "required driving torque". The engine output power is then varied as the average required power changes. The specification and claims give examples of 15 and 50 seconds as the time period over which the average is calculated, and it is made clear that the engine power is varied accordingly slowly. Where the engine power is insufficient to satisfy the instantaneous torque requirement, the battery is used to supply power to a traction motor; conversely, when the engine is producing more power than is needed, the excess is used to charge the batteries.

Insofar as Fig. 2 of Bader suggests that the "required driving torque" can be negative (for example, a negative torque can be considered to be applied to the motor/generator(s) by the kinetic energy of the vehicle, i.e., under deceleration or descents, for regenerative braking), this parameter might be misunderstood to be generally comparable to the "road load" parameter, which is analyzed by the present system to make its mode switching determinations, as illustrated by Figs. 6, 7, and 9. However, Bader's "drive power P_o can be calculated from the torque M_o and the rotational speed n_o". Col. 4, lines 21-22. Hence the "drive power" is not in fact suggestive of applicants' road load, since the engine output, i.e., "the torque M_o at the gear input" (col. 4, line 18), cannot be negative.

In any event, there is no suggestion in Bader of changing operational modes of a hybrid vehicle responsive to the value of the "drive power P_o", whether or not this is fairly equivalent to the road load. As made explicit by the relevant claims 1 - 9 of this application, according to an important aspect of the invention the vehicle is operated in different modes according to the road load (among other variables), and so that the engine is operated only under sufficient load to make its operation efficient. For example, when the road load is low, e.g., at low speeds, the engine is run only as necessary to charge the batteries. By comparison, in Bader it appears the engine is to be run constantly, and its speed varied slowly in accordance with the then average value of drive power. Bader thus fails to teach an important aspect of the invention.

Nii patent 6,131,680 is directed to a hybrid vehicle wherein an internal combustion engine and first and second motors are all connected to one of the sun gear, the planet carrier, or the ring gear of a planetary gearbox. Nii adjusts the relative gear ratios according to the torque required, which is apparently derived directly from the position of the accelerator pedal - see col. 22, lines 27 - 30. The Nii hybrid is operated in different modes depending on the state of charge of the battery, and the torque required. See Fig. 9. Under certain circumstances the planetary gearbox may be locked-up to avoid inefficiency. See, e.g., col. 9 line 1 - 7, and Fig. 10. However, the modes shown by Nii are not the same as those used by applicants, although there are some similarities. For example, as stated at col. 37, lines 1 - 6, and in Fig. 26, Nii sets his engine speed to idle when the vehicle is being operated in "motor driving" (i.e., electric car) mode; this is highly inefficient, since the engine produces no useful power at idle. By comparison, applicants shut the engine off completely except when it is being operated at high efficiency.

Mikami patent 5,839,533 is discussed in the application as filed, but was apparently not listed on the PTO-1449 forms filed previously; this patent is acordingly listed on the PTO-1449 filed herewith. A copy of this patent is also provided herewith.

Stemler patent 6,300,735 relates to control of planetary gearboxes as might be used in hybrid vehicles to control the torque supplied by the internal combustion engien and electric motors. Such a gearbox is not a feature *per se* of the invention described by the claims of the present application.

Yanase et al patent 6,318,487 shows a scheme for braking a hybrid vehicle when the battery is fully charged, so that regenerative braking would be inappropriate, and whereby friction braking is avoided; specifically, the engine is motored, so that energy is consumed by compressing air in the engine. This is not a feature of the invention defined by the claims of this application.

Deguchi et al patent 6,278,915 shows a control system for a hybrid comprising a continuously-variable transmission, wherein the transmission ratio is set responsive to target values for the driving torque, the generated electrical power, and the engine speed. Such a transmission is not found in the system defined by the claims of this application, and the control scheme described by this patent is irrelevant to the present claims.

Deguchi et al patent 6,190,282 relates to controlling the engine, motor, and clutch of a hybrid so as to avoid shock to the passengers upon clutch engagement. This is not relevant to the claims of the present application. A similar Deguchi et al patent, 5,993,351, was made of record previously.

Obayashi et al patent 6,232,733 appears to be a further development of the invention described in Egami patents 5,789,881 and 6,018,694, previously made of record. All three of these patents relate to operating the electric motors of a hybrid to reduce vibration when the engine is started. This is not a feature of the claims of this application.

Friedmann et al patent 5,788,004 shows a control system for hybrid vehicles wherein the overall system efficiency is continuously optimized by adjustment of the operational parameters of the various system components.

Kashiwase patent 6,146,302 shows a drive system for a hybrid wherein an engine and first motor are connected to the ring gear of a planetary gearbox, a second motor is connected to its planet carrier, a transmission is connected between the planet carrier and the road wheels of the vehicle, and clutches are provided to engage two of the sun gear, planet carrier and ring gear. No such planetary gearbox is required by the system of the invention.

Frank patent 6,116,363 is stated to be a continuation-in-part of patent 5,842,534, already made of record and disucssed in this application as filed. Both of these Frank patents disclose a braking system for a hybrid vehicle wherein the first 30% of pedal travel initiates regenerative braking, while the latter 70% of pedal travel initiates mechanical braking. See also Frank patent 6,054,844, already of record, which limits the braking torque to be provided by regenerative braking as a function of vehicle speed.

Maeda et al patent 6,074,321 shows a transaxle for a hybrid vehicle having a specific construction that is not particularly relevant to any of the claims of this application.

Moroto reissue patent Re. 36,678 is a reissue of patent 5,513,719, already of record.

Finally, Severinsky et al patent 6,338,391 has recently issued on application Serial No. 09/392,743, that is, is one of the parent applications.

An early and favorable action on the merits of the application is earnestly solicited.

Respectfully submitted,

2/8/02
Dated

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION

DOCKET NUMBER	~~ANA201~~
APPLICATION NUMBER	~~09/822,866~~ 10/382,577
APPLICANT	Severinsky et al
FILING DATE	~~April 2, 2001~~
GROUP ART UNIT	~~3619~~ 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	6307276	10/2001	Bader			
	6131680	10/2000	Nii et al			
	5839533	11/1998	Mikami et al			
	6300735	10/2001	Stemler			
	6318487	11/2001	Yanase et al			
	6278915	8/2001	Deguchi et al			
	6190282	2/2001	Deguchi et al			
	6232733	5/2001	Obayashi et al			
	5788004	8/1998	Friedmann et al			
	6146302	11/2000	Kashiwase			
	6116363	9/2000	Frank			
DD	6074321	6/2000	Maeda et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER	[signature]
DATE CONSIDERED	11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~09/822,866~~ 10/382577
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 4/2/2001	GROUP ART UNIT: ~~3619~~

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	Re36678	5/2000	Moroto et al			
DD	6338391	1/2002	Severinsky et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] | DATE CONSIDERED 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of	:	
Severinsky et al	:	Examiner: David Dunn
Serial No.: 10/382,577	:	Group Art Unit: 3616
Filed: March 7, 2003	:	Att.Dkt.:PAICE201.DIV
For: Hybrid Vehicles	:	

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

FOURTH SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Sir:

Applicant submits this Information Disclosure Statement for consideration by the Examiner. The issued patents from which this application claims priority have been asserted against Toyota Motor Corporation, Toyota Motor North America, Inc. and Toyota Motor Sales, USA, Inc. (collectively "Toyota") in civil action 2:04-CV-211 in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Texas. A jury trial was recently conducted December 6-20, 2005, and a verdict holding the parent patents as valid but not infringed was returned.

Applicants submit herewith materials from this litigation for the purpose of full disclosure. Applicants respectfully request the Examiner to fully review and consider these materials in determining patentability of the present application. The materials submitted include transcripts of the trial and deposition testimony of the witnesses on whom Toyota relied for prior art assertions, with any confidential material redacted therefrom, together with copies of the documentary evidence discussed therein.

The materials also include a copy of the Court's Markman ruling construing the claims of the parent patents.

The Examiner is respectfully requested to consider these materials and indicate that he has done so in the file of this application.

Should the Examiner have any questions concerning the materials submitted, he is invited to telephone the undersigned at the number given below.

A Supplemental Notice of Allowability is earnestly solicited.

March 27, 2006
Dated:

Respectfully submitted,

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION		
	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER: 10/382,577
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT: 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
	5371412	12/1994	Iwashita			
	5412251	5/1995	Furutani			
	5993169	11/1999	Adachi et al			
	6007451	12/1999	Matsui et al			
	6032753	3/2000	Yamazaki et al			
	6155364	12/2000	Nagano et al			
	5539318	7/1996	Sasaki			
	5680050	10/1997	Kawai et al			
	5964309	10/1999	Kimura et al			
	5883496	3/1999	Esaki et al			
	5905360	5/1999	Ukita			
	6158541	12/2000	Tabata et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

Trial and deposition transcripts of witnesses relied upon to assert invalidity of parent patents in Civil Docket No. 2:04-CV-211-DF (E.D. Texas)

Claim construction order entered September 28, 2005 in Civil Docket No. 2:04-CV-211-DF (E.D. Texas)

Toyota Hybrid System, Toyota Press Information, Tokyo, 1997

Prius Hybrid EV, Toyota brochure, undated

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
	5253929	10/1993	Ohori			
	5326158	7/1994	Ohori			
	5476151	12/1995	Tsuchida et al			
	5569995	10/1996	Kusaka et al			
	5637977	6/1997	Saito et al			
	5789935	8/1998	Suga et al			
	5895100	4/1999	Ito et al			
	5951115	9/1999	Sakai et al			
	5973463	10/1999	Okuda et al			
	6053841	4/2000	Koide et al			
	5929594	7/1999	Nonobe et al			
	5924395	7/1999	Moriya et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
	0136055	03.04.85	European Patent Office				

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

	Miller et al, "Starter-Alternator for Hybrid Electric Vehicle.." (1996)
	Johnston et al, "The Design and Development of the [UC Davis].." (No date)
	Johnston et al, "The Design and Development of the [UC Davis].." (1997)
	Alexander et al, "A Mid-Sized Sedan Designed for High Fuel..." (No date)
	"PRIUS New Car Features", (Toyota manual) (1998)
	TRW Systems Group, "Analysis and Advanced Design Study..." (1971)

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
	4646896	3/1987	Hammond et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
	0769403	23.4.1997	European Patent Office				
	7172196	29.9.1994	Japan			X	
	9170533	9.5.1996	Japan			abst.	
	5319110	5.19.1992	Japan			abst.	
	3273933	12.5.1991	Japan			abst.	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

Gelb, "An Electromechanical Transmission for Hybrid Vehicle..." (1971)

Hirose et al, "The New High Expansion Ratio Engine..." (1997)

Hong, "Toyota's Hybrid Program", *Road & Track*, August 1997

Law, "Toyota Tech", *Car & Driver*, August 1997

"Dual-Engine Fuel Saver", *Popular Mechanics*, July 1997

"Toyota Launches Break-Through Hybrid EV", *Motor Trend*, September 1997

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
	7268922	10.17.1995	Japan			abst.	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

	"Toyota touts advances in safety, emissions", *Automotive News*, 4/28/97
	"'96 North Wind Performance", undated
	Wakefield, "History of the Electric Automobile - Hybrid Electric Vehicles" (1998)
	"Escort 92-94", undated
	"Near-Term Hybrid Vehicle Program", General Electric Company (1979)

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
	913846	3/1909	Pieper			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

	"Electric and Hybrid Vehicle Design Studies", SAE SP-1243 (1997)
	Gelb, "The case for Constant Speed Accessory Drives", (1975)
	Sasaki, "Toyota's Newly Developed Hybrid Powertrain", (1998)
	"Near-Term Hybrid Vehicle Program, Phase 1", General Electric Co. (1979)
	"Near-Term Hybrid Vehicle Program, Phase 1, App. A.", Gen'l Elec. (1979)
	"Joint Feasibility Study of Hybrid Vehicle, Final Report (1982)

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION

DOCKET NUMBER	PAICE201.DIV
APPLICATION NUMBER	10/382,577
APPLICANT	Severinsky et al
FILING DATE	3/7/2003
GROUP ART UNIT	361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

		North American Technology Seminar plans, April 1997
		Hermance, THS Technical Explanation (undated)
		"Toyota" brochure describing Prius (undated)
		Hermance, "Toyota Hybrid System" (undated)

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION		
	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
	5 4 1 2 2 9 3	5/1995	Minesawa et al			
	5 8 8 3 4 8 4	3/1999	Akao			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
	8 2 1 4 5 9 2	8.20.1996	Japan			abst.	
	1 0 6 6 3 8 3	3.6.1998	Japan			abst.	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

	Cuddy et al, "Analysis of the Fuel Economy Benefit..." SAE 970289 (1997)
	"Team Paradigm Shines in FutureCar Competition" (1996)
	Takaoka et al, "Study of the Engine Optimized for Hybrid System" (undated)
	Gelb et al, "Cost and Emission Studies of a Heat Engine/Battery.." (1972)
	Gelb et al, "Design and Performance Characteristics..." SAE 690169 (1969)
	"Electric/Hybrid Vehicles: Alternative Powerplants..." SAE SP-1284 (1997)

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of	
Severinsky et al	Examiner: N/A
Serial No.: N/A	Group Art Unit: N/A
Filed: Herewith	Att. Dkt.: PAICE201.DIV
For: HYBRID VEHICLES	

Hon. Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Washington, DC 20231

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Dear Sir:

This application is a divisional of Ser. No. 09/822,866. Incorporated herein by this reference are the original and three supplemental Information Disclosure Statements filed in the parent, copies of which are enclosed herewith. These, together with an Examiner's Notice of References Cited, a copy of which is also enclosed, collectively list all of the art deemed relevant to the claims of the application. Copies of the references were provided in the parent or in the applications from which it in turn claimed priority and thus are not being provided herewith. The Examiner is requested to indicate that all of the art thus listed has been considered.

Early and favorable action on the merits is earnestly solicited.

Respectfully submitted,

3/5/03
Dated

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of	:	
Severinsky et al	:	Examiner: N/A
Serial No.: 09/822,866	:	Group Art Unit: N/A
Filed: April 2, 2001	:	Att. Dkt.: PAICE201
For: Hybrid Vehicles		

Hon. Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Washington, DC 20231

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Dear Sir:

Listed on attached PTO-1449 forms are the issued patents and literature references considered to be most relevant to the patentability of the claims of this application. Copies of the patents listed on page 15 of the PTO-1449 are attached for the convenience of the Examiner, as is a copy of German patent 1,905,641, with uncertified translation. Copies of the other listed references were provided to the Examiner in connection with one or both of patent applications 09/264,817 and 09/392,743, so additional copies are not being submitted herewith.

Comments on the relevance of the new references which are material to the claims of this continuation-in-part *per se* are found in the application as filed, while the comments on these references found in the prosecution files of the two parent applications are also incorporated by reference herein.

Early and favorable action on the merits is earnestly solicited.

5/21/01
Dated

Respectfully submitted,

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
Suite 330
1901 Research Blvd.
Rockville, MD 20850
(301) 217-9585

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION

DOCKET NUMBER	PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER	~~09/822,866~~ 10/382577
APPLICANT	Severinsky et al		
FILING DATE	04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT	~~N/A~~ 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5343970	9/94	Severinsky	180	65.2	
	5492192	2/96	Brooks et al			
	3566717	3/71	Berman et al			
	3732751	5/73 ~~5/93~~	Berman et al			
	4165795	8/79 ~~8/49~~	Lynch et al			
	5117931	6/92	Nishida			
	3923115	12/75	Helling			
	4588040	5/86	Albright, Jr., et al			
	5318142	6/94	Bates et al			
	5120282	6/92	Fjällström			
	4405029	9/83	Hunt			
	4470476	9/84	Hunt			
DD	4305254	12/81	Kawakatsu			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	1905641	6/76	Germany			X	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Simanaitis, "Electric Vehicles", *Road & Track*, May 1992, pp. 126-136
DD	Reynolds, "AC Propulsion CRX", *Road & Track*, Oct. 1992, pp. 126-129
DD	Kalberlah, "Electric Hybrid Drive Systems...", SAE Paper No. 910247, 1991
DD	Bullock, "The Technological Constraints of Mass,Volume, Dynamic Power Range and Energy Capacity..." SAE Paper No. 891659 1989
DD	Electric and Hybrid Vehicle Technology, vol. SP-915, SAE, Feb. 1992

EXAMINER: [signature] DATE CONSIDERED: 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: 09/822,866
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	4407132	10/83	Kawakatsu			
	4335429	6/82	Kawakatsu			
	4180138	12/79	Shea			
	4351405	9/82	Fields et al			
	4438342	3/84	Kenyon			
	4593779	6/86	Krohling			
	4923025	5/90	Ellers			
	3791473	2/74	Rosen			
	4269280	5/81	Rosen			
	4400997	8/83	Fiala			
	4697660	10/87	Wu et al			
	3970163	7/76	Kinoshita			
DD	4095664	6/78	Bray			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Wouk, "Hybrids: Then and Now", IEEE Spectrum, Vol. 32, 7, July 1995
DD	Bates, "Getting a Ford HEV on...", IEEE Spectrum, Vol. 32, 7, July 1995
DD	King et al, "Transit Bus takes...", IEEE Spectrum, Vol. 32, 7, July 1995
DD	Yamaguchi, "Toyota readies gasoline/electric hybrid system", Automotive Engineering, July 1997, pp. 55-58
DD	Wilson, "Not Electric, Not Gasoline..." Autoweek, June 2, 1997, pp. 17-18

EXAMINER: [signature] DATE CONSIDERED: 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~09/822,866~~ 10/382577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	4148192	4/79	Cummings			
	4306156	12/81	Monaco et al			
	4313080	11/82	Park			
	4354144	10/82	McCarthy			
	4533011	8/85	Heidemeyer			
	4951769	8/90	Kawamura			
	5053632	10/91	Suzuki et al			
	3525874	8/70	Toy			
	3650345	8/72	Yardney			
	3837419	9/74	Nakamura			
	3874472	4/75	Deane			
	4042056	8/77	Horwinski			
DD	4562894	1/86	Yang			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Bulgin, "The Future Works, Quietly", Autoweek, Feb. 23, 1998 pp. 12-13
DD	"Toyota Electric and Hybrid Vehicles", a Toyota brochure
	Nagasaka et al, "Development of the Hybrid/Battery ECU...", SAE paper 981122, 1998, pp. 19-27

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

Page 3 of 15

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: 09/822,866
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DP	4611466	9/86	Keedy			
	4815334	3/89 ~~8/89~~	Lexen			
	3623568	11/71	Mori			
	3454122	7/69 ~~8/69~~	Grady, Jr.			
	3211249	10/65	Papst			
	2666492	1/54	Nims et al			
	3502165	3/70	Matsukata			
	1824014	9/31	Froelich			
	3888325	6/75 ~~10/75~~	Reinbeck			
	4578955	4/86	Medina			
	4765656	8/88	Weaver			
	4439989	4/84	Yamakawa			
DP	5301764	4/94	Gardner			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: 09/822,866
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5346031	9/94	Gardner			
	5667029	9/97	Urban et al			
	5704440	1/98	Urban et al			
	5495906	3/96	Furutani			
	5842534	12/98	Frank	180	65.2	
	5823280	10/98	Lateur	180	65.2	
	5826671	10/98	Nakae et al			
	5846155	12/98	Taniguchi et al			
	5845731	12/98	Buglione et al	180	65.2	
	5586613	12/96	Ehsani			
	5635805	6/97	Ibaraki et al			
	5249637	10/93	Heidl et al			
DD	5558588	9/96	Schmidt			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
[signature]	11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION

DOCKET NUMBER	PAICE201
APPLICATION NUMBER	09/822,866
APPLICANT	Severinsky et al
FILING DATE	04/02/01
GROUP ART UNIT	N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5558595	~~10/96~~ 9/96	Schmidt et al			
	59~~80~~08077	6/99	Moore			
	5722911	3/98	Ibaraki et al			
	5789882	8/98	Ibaraki et al			
	5550445	8/96	Nii			
	5650931	7/97	Nii			
	5865263	2/99	Yamaguchi et al			
	5788006	8/98	Yamaguchi et al			
	5791427	8/98	Yamaguchi et al			
	5799744	9/98	Yamaguchi et al			
	5806617	9/98	Yamaguchi et al			
	5899286	5/99	Yamaguchi et al			
DD	5433282	7/95	Moroto et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: 09/~~822,~~866
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5778326	7/98	Moroto et al			
	5775449	7/98	Moroto et al			
	5697466	12/97	Moroto et al	180	65.2	
	5608308	3/97	Kiuchi et al			
	5614809	3/97	Kiuchi et al			
	5621304	4/97	Kiuchi et al			
	5893895	4/99	Ibaraki			
	5656921	8/97	Farrall			
	5773904	6/98	Schiebold et al			
	5515937	5/96	Adler et al			
	5650713	7/97	Takeuchi et al			
	5632352	5/97	~~Jeanneret~~ Jeanneret et al			
DD	5492189	2/96	Kreigler et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
[signature]	11/14/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: 09/822,866
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	4354144	10/82	McCarthy			
	4697660	10/87	Wu et al			
	5831341	11/98	Selfors et al			
	5495907	3/96	Data			
	5672920	9/97	Donegan et al			
	5826671	10/98	Nakae et al			
	5757151	5/98	Donegan et al			
	6018694	1/00	Egami et al	701	102	
	5993351	11/99	Deguchi et al	477	5	
	5568023	10/96	Grayer et al			
	5890555	4/99	Miller			
	5172784	12/92	Varela, Jr.			
DD	4444285	4/84	Stewart et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
[signature]	1/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

Page 8 of 15

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~09/822,866~~
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	4562894	1/86	Yang			
	4495451	1/85	Barnard			
	4583505	4/86	Frank et al			
	4597463	7/86	Barnard			
	5789881	8/98	Egami et al			
	5786640	7/98	Sakai et al			
	5176213	1/93	Kawai et al			
	5839530	11/98	Dietzel			
	5898282	4/99	Drozdz et al			
	5327987	7/94	Abdelmalek			
	5415245	5/95	Hammond			
	5705859	1/98	Karg et al			
DD	5713425	2/98	Buschhaus et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609: Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~09/822,866~~
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5820172	10/98	Brigham et al			
	5713426	2/98	Okamura			
	5713814	2/98	Hara et al			
	5823281	10/98	Yamaguchi et al			
	5427196	6/95	Yamaguchi et al			
	5839533	11/98	Mikami et al			
	5725064	3/98	Ibaraki et al			
	5755303	5/98	Yamamoto et al			
	5778997	7/98	Setaka et al			
	5785136	7/98	Falkenmayer et al			
	5785137	7/98	Reuyl			
	5785138	7/98	Yoshida			
DD	5566774	10/96	Yoshida			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER 09/822,866
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5492190	2/96	Yoshida			
	5441122	8/95	Yoshida			
	5558175	9/96	Sherman			
	5558173	9/96	Sherman			
	5788597	8/98	Boll et al			
	5788003	8/98	Spiers			
	5791426	8/98	Yamada			
	5323868	6/94	Kawashima			
	5545928	8/96	Kotani			
	5291960	3/94	Brandenburg et al			
	5255733	10/93	King			
	5664635	9/97	Koga et al			
DD	5463294	10/95	Valdivia			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: 09/~~822~~,866
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5562565	10/96	Moroto et al			
	5513719	5 ~~6~~/96	Moroto et al			
	5513718	5/96	Suzuki et al			
	5833022	11/98	Welke			
	5841201	11/98	Tabata et al			
	5887670	3/99	Tabata et al			
	5862497	1/99	Yano et al			
	5637987	6/~~94~~ 97	Fattic et al			
	5643119	7/97 ~~4/94~~	Yamaguchi et al			
	5644200	7/97 ~~4/94~~	Yang			
	5489001	2/96	Yang			
	5653302	8/~~94~~ 97	Edye et al			
DD	5350031	9 ~~6~~/94	Sugiyama et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
[signature]	11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609: Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~09/822,866~~
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5345761	9 ~~6~~/94	King et al			
	5337848	8/94	Bader			
	5327992	7 ~~6~~/94	Boll			
	5589743	12/96	King			
	5345154	9/94	King			
	4862009	8/89	King			
	5372213	12/94	Hasebe et al			
	5495912	3 ~~5~~/96	Gray, Jr., et al			
	5588498	12/96	Kitada			
	5492189	2/96	Kriegler			
	5193634	3/93	Masut			
	5125469	6/92	Scott			
DD	4511012	4/85	Rauneker			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/17/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609: Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: 09/~~822~~,866
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	4631456	12/86	Drescher et al			
	4680986	7/87	Elsner			
	4953646	9/90	Kim			
	5927417	7/99	Brunner et al	180	65.6	
	6048289	4/00	Hattori et al	477	15	
	6026921	2/00	Aoyama et al	180	65.2	
	6053842	4/00	Kitada et al	477	5	
	5767637	6/98	Lansberry			
	5934395	8/99	Koide et al	180	65.2	
	5969624	10/99	Sakai et al	340	636	
	5986376	11/99	Werson			
	6018198	1/00	Tsuzuki et al			
DD	6054844	4/00	Frank	322	16	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/17/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER 09/822,866
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	6059059	5/00 ~~9/94~~	Schmidt-Brucken			
	6098733	8/00	Ibaraki et al			
	6161384	12/00	Reinbold et al			
	5996347	12/99	Nagae et al			
	6109025	8/00	Murata et al			
	6131538	10/00	Kanai			
	4774811	10/88	Kawamura			
DD	5327992	7/94	Boll			
	~~5249637~~	~~10/93~~	~~Heidl et al~~			DUPLICATE
	~~5495906~~	~~3/96~~	~~Furutani~~			"
	~~6018694~~	~~1/00~~	~~Egami et al~~			"
DD	6209672	4/01	Severinsky			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning Operations and is not part of the Official Record

BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- ☐ BLACK BORDERS
- ☐ IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- ☐ FADED TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☐ BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☐ SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- ☑ COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS
- ☐ GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS
- ☑ LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT
- ☐ REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY
- ☐ OTHER: ______________________

IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.
As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of	:	
	:	
Severinsky et al	:	Examiner: David Dunn
	:	
Serial No.: 10/382,577	:	Group Art Unit: 3616
	:	
Filed: March 7, 2003	:	Att.Dkt.:PAICE201.DIV
	:	
For: Hybrid Vehicles		

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

SECOND SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Listed on attached PTO-1449 forms are a number of documents that have come to applicants' attention since the filing of the Supplemental Information Disclosure Statement filed in this application on May 28, 2004. Applicants' thus making these documents of record should not be deemed a concession that they are necessarily available as prior art as defined by 35 USC Sect. 102. The Examiner is respectfully requested to consider these newly-cited documents and to indicate that he has done so in the file of this application.

The relevance of the newly-cited documents to the present invention is summarized as follows:

Japanese Patent Application Publication 7-54983 (Nakagawa et al) (provided with noncertified translation) shows controlling the shifting of an automatic transmission. The usual method is described as controlling the ratio based on detected engine load and vehicle speed, following a predetermined shift pattern. Prior art shows detecting increase in loading, e.g., "uphill running", if the speed drops below shift boundary line while the throttle opening is over a predetermined value. This is stated to be workable only under limited circumstances. This invention calculates a "running load coefficient KFUKA" which is then smoothed and used to correct the predtermined shift pattern.

From paragraph 10, "[T]he running load coefficient KFUKA is calculated according to an equation KFUKA=2-(b/a) when the detected vehicle speed 'b' is lower than the standard loaded-vehicle speed 'a', and according to an equation KFUFA=a/c when the detected vehicle speed 'c' is higher than the standard value 'a' ". This is mathematically inconsistent, since both "b" and "c" are the "detected vehicle speed". Further, it is clear that KFUKA is a running load <u>coefficient</u>, that is, a correction factor somehow responsive to variation in running load, not the running load itself.

Japanese Patent Application Publication 4-244568 (Onishi et al) (provided with noncertified translation) - Shifting of an automatic transmission is controlled responsive to a predictive program that calculates the torque to be available after shifting. Running load is employed in this calculation. It is stated to be determined as follows:

"(0022) The running load estimating means 101 now multiplies the torque converter output torque Tt by the gear ratio "r" to calculate the torque Tm generated at the wheels, and calculates the running load T_L based on the relational formula T_L = Tm − M · rw · α from the vehicle mass M, the effective wheel radius rw and the acceleration α. The flow of this calculation shown in FIG. 6.

"(0023) In FIG. 6,

Step 601: Reading of the respective data of vehicle speed V_{SP} and engine rotational speed N, gear ratio "r" an acceleration α is performed.

Step 602: the turbine rotational speed Nt is calculated by the following formula:

$Nt = V_{SP}/120\pi/rw \cdot r \times 1000$

Step 603: Torque converter or rotational ratio "e" is calculated and pump torque coefficient τ and torque ratio "t" are searched.

$e = Nt/N,\ \tau = f_1(e),\ t = f_2(e)$

Step 604: Pump torque Tp and turbine torque Tt are calculated.

$Tp = \tau \cdot (N/1000)^2.\ Tt = t \cdot Tp$

Step 605: Calculation of torque Tm. Tm = Tp · r

Step 606: Calculation of running load T_L. $T_L = Tm - M \cdot r \cdot \alpha$".

This makes no sense. In particular, it is clear that the idea is to correct the torque at the wheels Tm by the factor M · r · α to reach the running load, but calculating M · r · α does not yield a torque in units of kg-m, but a value in kg − m^2/sec^2.

In any event it is clear that neither reference refers remotely to hybrid vehicles, much less controlling operating modes thereof responsive to road load.

US Patent 6,067,801 (Harada) is based on Japanese application 9-329430. The disclosure is directed to reducing driveline shock occasioned upon shutting off the engine in a hybrid by loading it using one of the two motor/generators. Road load per se is not discussed; mode switching is discussed only inferentially, e.g., "..at the time when the engine is not required, for example, during a reduction of the speed or a downslope run, the hybrid vehicle stops operation of the engine 150 and runs only with the motor MG2" (col. 9, lines 40 - 43). Harada states nothing of relevance to operating the engine when loaded to above a setpoint SP.

However, this reference is generally relevant in that it acknowledges that the engine can be loaded by the battery charging load as well as the loading required for vehicle propulsion (col. 1, lines 15 - 17), that the engine can be shut off when not needed (as noted, col. 9, lines 40 - 43) and that it should be operated at an efficient operating point (same). The vehicle's power requirements, including power for acceleration, for charging, and for auxiliaries, is calculated, and a decision made whether the engine is required. Engine activation is based on vehicle speed, or the necessity of battery charging (col. 10, line 41 - col. 11, line 18). The engine is run at low power levels (col. 12, line 49), and idling is permitted (col. 11, line 65). The engine can be motored to warm it up prior to starting (col. 12, line 17). It is noted that for a given output power requirement it is more efficient to run the engine at lower RPM and higher torque than at higher RPM and lower torque output (col. 13, lines 34 - 45). The minimum RPM of the engine in the loaded state is maintained greater than in the non-loaded state, in order to allow gentle variation in torque applied to the motor MG1 during mode changes, avoiding rough operation (col. 16, lines 17 - 38), not so as only to operate the engine when loaded to the point of efficient operation. Most of the topologies shown involve the usual planetary gearset for combining the torque from the engine and two motors, but an embodiment is shown in Fig. 12 which avoids the planetary gearbox and first motor in favor of a "clutch motor MG3" which includes first and second rotors that function as an electromagnetic coupling (col. 18, lines 43 - 56). A series hybrid version, in which the engine never transmits torque directly to the wheels, is shown in Fig. 13.

Japanese Patent Application Publication 11-122712 (Morita et al) (provided with partial noncertified translation) shows a hybrid with a traction motor and engine propelling the vehicle; a second motor drives the ancillaries and starts the engine (there is no suggestion that this second motor is used to charge the battery), so the topology is effectively a single-motor hybrid with a separate starter. The invention is essentially to disengage a clutch connecting the engine and wheels upon braking, so that the engine can be shut off; when braking ends, the starter is used to motor the engine, and when the accelerator is then applied fuel is supplied and the engine started. Mode shifting is thus performed strictly in accordance with the operation of the accelerator and brake pedals.

Japanese Patent Application Publication 11-113956 (Hisamura) (provided with partial noncertified translation) shows a control device for a continuously variable transmission. The slope of the road being driven on is determined by a calculation employing the actual torque being supplied and the vehicle speed and acceleration. The "flatland" required torque is calculated and compared to the actual torque, to determine the slope of the road, and the transmission ratio adjusted accordingly.

Japanese Unexamined Patent Publication 11-82260 (Tsuzuki et al) (supplied without translation) - Topology includes engine, first clutch, motor/generator, second clutch, and automatic transmission, and wheels, in that order. In order to reduce shock upon engine starting, the second clutch is opened and left open until the engine and motor/generator are synchronized. This would be completely useless, since power flow to the wheels would be interrupted, seriously impacting drivability. Moreover, this would occur under acceleration, just when it would be most annoying and possibly even unsafe.

Japanese Unexamined Patent Publication 11-82261 (Tsuzuki et al) (supplied without translation) is closely related to the above Tsuzuki patent application. According to notes provided by our searcher, this simply adds the idea of providing a starter on the engine. This would suffer the same drivability problem.

According to our German searcher, German applications 198 38 853, 102 60 435, and 198 14 402, (all supplied without translations) describe methods for starting the engines of single motor hybrids.

Fiala US patent 4,411,171 shows a single-motor hybrid wherein the engine is connected through a first clutch to one side of a flywheel; a second clutch on the other side of the flywheel allows the flywheel to be locked to the output shaft, for direct drive, or to serve as the sun gear of a planetary gearbox. The planet carrier is connected to the output shaft, and the ring gear to a single motor/generator. The flywheel can also be locked, which provides an electric-car mode. The vehicle must be stopped to allow starting of the engine (col. 3, line 55), so clearly the vehicle must be operated in distinct low speed (electric car) and high-speed hybrid modes. The engine is to be used to start the vehicle from a standing stop by using some of the engine's torque to drive the motor/generator, i.e., the motor/generator acts as a brake (col. 5, lines 1 - 7), with the planetary gearbox thus decoupling the engine from the output shaft.

Maeda U.S. patent 3,620,323 shows a hybrid vehicle in which the engine is intended to be operated at full throttle at all times; see the abstract, col. 1, lines 37 - 38, col. 5, lines 13 - 15.

Tabata et al U. S. Patent 6,317,665 is directed to control of a lock-up clutch in a hybrid vehicle so as to smooth transitions between operation in motor-drive and engine-drive modes. Tabata et al patent 6,183,389 is also directed to control of operation of lock-up clutches. Finally, Tabata patent 5,887,670 is also directed to smoothing transitions.

Hagiwara patent 5,565,711 is the US equivalent to a Japanese patent document cited against a Japanese application claiming priority from the same basic application as the present application. The Hagiwara patent relates to specifics of the connection of the individual batteries in a battery bank. No claims are pending in this application which are drawn to this aspect of the invention.

Again, the Examiner is respectfully requested to consider these documents, and to indicate that he has done so in the file of the application.

Dated: 2/17/05

Respectfully submitted,

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190

OIPE JC98 FEB 2 2 2005 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

CANCELLED

OIPE IAP100 JUL 0 7 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION 1/2	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
DD	6 0 6 7 8 0 1	5/2000	Harada et al			
DD	4 4 1 1 1 7 1	10/1983	Fiala			
DD	3 6 2 0 3 2 3	5/1968	Maeda			
DD	6 3 1 7 6 6 5	11/2001	Tabata et al			
DD	6 1 8 3 3 8 9	2/2001	Tabata et al			
DD	5 5 6 5 7 1 1	10/1996	Hagiwara			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	7 5 4 9 8 3	2/1995	Japan			X	
DD	4 2 4 4 6 5 8	9/1992	Japan			X	
DD	11 0 8 2 2 6 1	3/1999	Japan				X
DD	11 1 2 2 7 1 2	4/1999	Japan			partial	
DD	62 1 1 3 9 5 6	5/1987	Japan			partial	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER DD	DATE CONSIDERED 3/16/05

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION 2/2	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	11082260	3/1999	Japan				X
DD	19838853	8/1998	Germany				X
DD	19814402	3/1998	Germany				X

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 3/16/05

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP § 609: Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of	:	
	:	
Severinsky et al	:	Examiner: David Dunn
	:	
Serial No.: 10/382,577	:	Group Art Unit: 3616
	:	
Filed: March 7, 2003	:	Att.Dkt.:PAICE201.DIV
	:	

For: Hybrid Vehicles

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Sir:

The issued patents from which this application claims priority are being asserted against an alleged infringer in civil litigation in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Texas. The defendants in that case have brought a number of new patents and other documents to applicants' attention. New documents have also been cited in a Complete Search Report prepared by the European Patent Office, dated May 5, 2005 (copy enclosed) against a European application claiming priority from the same US applications. These newly-cited patents and other documents thus located are listed on attached PTO-1449 forms, and are discussed below. The Examiner is respectfully requested to consider these new documents and to indicate that he has done so in the file of this application, and to then re-issue the Notice of Allowance mailed April 21, 2005.

Citation of a document herein should not be considered an admission that the disclosure thereof is indeed relevant to the invention defined by the claims, nor that the document thus made of record is indeed effective as prior art under 35 USC 102.

It is respectfully submitted that although this Statement is being filed after issue of a Notice of Allowance, it is timely under 37 CFR 1.97 (e). The fee of $180.00 (per 37 CFR 1.17(p)) is enclosed.

It is respectfully submitted that none of the newly-cited patents or other documents made of record hereby disclose or suggest the invention claimed herein. Early and favorable action on the merits of the application - specifically, issue of the patent, the Issue Fee having been paid concurrently with submission of this Statement - is earnestly solicited.

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: 6/30/05

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190

CANCELLED

OIPE JC135 JUL 0 ? 2005 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

OIPE IAP100 JUL 0 7 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
DD	5844342	12/1998	Miyatani et al			
DD	5804947	9/1998	Nii et al			
DD	5457363	10/1995	Yoshii et al			
DD	5907191	5/1999	Sasaki et al			
DD	5914575	6/1999	Sasaki			
DD	6005297	12/1999	Sasaki et al			
DD	6166499	12/2000	Kanamori et al			
DD	5801497	9/1998	Shamoto et al			
DD	5909720	6/1999	Yamaoka			
DD	5698955	12/1997	Nii			
DD	5428274	6/1995	Furutani et al			
DD	6077186	6/2000	Kojima et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	2419832	3/1978	France			X	
DD	3124201	10/1989	Japan			X	
DD	51103220	2/1975	Japan			X	
DD	H564531	9/1984	Japan			X	
DD	S48491115	10/1971	Japan			X	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Winkelman et al, SAE paper 730511, "Computer Simulation...." (1973)
DD	Berman et al, IEEE VT-23, NO. 3, pp. 61-72 "Propulsion Systems...."(1974)
DD	Berman SPC-TUE-2 "Battery Powered Regenerative SCR Drive"(1970)
DD	Gelb et al "Performance Analyses..." ACS pub (1972), pp 977-988
DD	Berman SPC-TUE-1 "Design Considerations...." (1971)
DD	Berman SPC-TUE-2" All Solid State Method....." (1971)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 10/12/05

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

OIPE JC139 JUL 0 2005 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

CANCELLED

OIPE IAP100 JUL 07 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
DD	5991683	11/1999	Takaoka et al			
DD	5473228	12/1995	Nii			
DD	5927415	7/1999	Ibaraki et al			
DD	5928301	7/1999	Soga et al			
DD	6176807	1/2001	Oba et al			
DD	5904631	5/1999	Morisawa et al			
DD	5789877	8/1998	Yamada et al			
DD	6087734	7/2000	Maeda et al			
DD	5973460	10/1999	Taga et al			
DD	5988307	11/1999	Yamada et al			
DD	5991683	11/1999	Takaoka et al			
DD	5818116	10/1998	Nakae			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	S 50 3 0 2 2 3	7/1973	Japan			X	
DD	WO 82 0 11 7 0	4/1982	PCT				
DD	0510582	12/1995	EPO				
DD	4297330	3/1991	Japan				✓

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Minorikawa et al, "Current Status and Future Trends...." (Undated)
DD	Baum et al "Semiconductor Technologies..." (Undated)
DD	Chen "Automotive Electronics in the Year 2000..." (Apparently 1992)
DD	Brusaglino, SAE paper 910244 "Electric Vehicle Development..." (1991)
DD	Anderson et al, SAE paper 910246 "Integrated Electric..." (1991)
DD	Burke, SAE paper 911914 "Battery Availability for Near-Term..." (1991)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 10/12/07

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

2

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

.17

OIPE JC139 JUL 01 2005 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE — CANCELLED

OIPE IAP100 JUL 07 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD		Chang, IEEE AES Magazine (1993) "Recent Developments of Electric ..."
DD		Kamiyama et al, IEEE 0-7803-0582-5 (1992) "Application Trends...."
DD		Sen, IEEE Trans. Ind. Elec. (1990) "Electric Motor Drives..."
DD		Wang et al, PCSC '71 Record, "Analysis of SCR Chopper Drive" (1971)
DD		EPRI Report TR-101264 "Assessment of Electric Motor Technology (1992)
DD		Berman et al, SAE paper 720111 "Electric Car Drives...." (1972)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 10/12/05

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

OIPE JC135 JUL 07 2005 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE CANCELLED

OIPE IAP100 JUL 07 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

,10

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER: 10/382,577
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT: 361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	WO 99 2 4 2 8 0	11/1997	PCT			X	
DD	EP 07 4 3 2 1 1	5/1996	EP				
DD	EP 08 3 9 6 8 3	10/1997	EP				

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Gelb et al, "The Application of Solid Electrolyte Batteries..." (Undated)
DD	Miller, "Integrated Power Module Requirements for Automotive..." (Undated)
DD	Vukosavic et al, IEEE Trans. Ind. App. "SRM Inverter Topologies..." (1991)

EXAMINER: [signature] DATE CONSIDERED: 10/12/05

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

JFW

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of	:	
Severinsky et al	:	Examiner: N/A
Serial No.: 11/229,762	:	Group Art Unit: 3616
Filed: January 13, 2006	:	Att.Dkt:PAICE201.DIV.2
For: Hybrid Vehicles		

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Sir:

This application is a divisional of Ser. No. 10/382,577. Incorporated herein by reference are the several Information Disclosure Statements (IDSs) that were filed in Ser. No. 10/382,577, and its predecessor, Ser. No. 09/822,866, now Patent 6,554,088. Copies of the IDSs thus incorporated are attached, together with the corresponding PTO-1449 forms. Where available the PTO-1449s attached are those returned by the Examiner, showing corrections that were noted in prosecution of the earlier applications. Copies of the documents thus cited were supplied in the parent and grandparent applications, or in earlier predecessor applications Ser. Nos. 09/264,817, now patent 6,209,672, and 09/392,743, now patent 6,338,391, and copies are accordingly not now being supplied herewith.

The Examiner is respectfully requested to consider the documents thus made of record, and to initial the PTO-1449 forms, indicating that he has done so.

Should there be any questions, the Examiner is invited to telephone the undersigned at the number given below.

Early and favorable action on the merits is earnestly solicited.

July 6, 2006
Dated:

Respectfully submitted,

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown RI 02835
401-423-3190

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of	
Severinsky et al	Examiner: N/A
Serial No.: 10/382,577	Group Art Unit: 3616
Filed: March 7, 2003	Att. Dkt.: PAICE201.DIV
For: Hybrid Vehicles	

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

SUPPLEMENTAL INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

Sir:

As discussed in the Preliminary Amendment dated August 11, 2003 in this application, applicants have performed additional searching for new patents possibly relevant to the subject matter of this application as amended, and other new patents and other documents have also come recently to applicants' attention. A number of patents and other documents thus located are listed on attached PTO-1449 forms, and are discussed below. Citation of a document herein should not be considered an admission that the disclosure thereof is indeed relevant to the invention defined by the claims, nor that the document thus made of record is indeed effective as prior art under 35 USC '102.

A correction is also desirable with respect to a statement made in an earlier Information Disclosure Statement (IDS). In the IDS filed on November 18, 1999 in grandparent application Ser. No. 09/264,817, which has been incorporated by reference to form part of the IDS for the present application, Taniguchi patent 5,846,155 was described as showing "a parallel hybrid of generally conventional topology, that is, comprising an ICE [internal combustion engine] and an electric motor connected to the road wheels of the vehicle through a continuously-variable transmission, but discloses a relatively sophisticated operational scheme, wherein the source of propulsive torque varies in accordance with the road load and the state of charge of the battery bank ('SOC')".

This could be misunderstood to suggest that Taniguchi suggests control of the hybrid vehicle's operating mode responsive to the road load and SOC. In fact, Taniguchi does not teach selection of the source of vehicle propulsive torque, much less the operating mode, in accordance with the road load and SOC, but in response to vehicle speed and accelerator pedal position. See col. 8, lines 13 - 40:

> Moreover, the individual engagement means, as shown in FIGS. 4 and 5, are operated as shown in the operation diagram of FIG. 6. *In the power split mode, the split drive unit 9 functions at the start and at a low/medium speed.* The output of the engine 2 is transmitted to the ring gear R through the input clutch Ci. On the other hand, the rotor 5a of the motor-generator 5 is connected to the sun gear S to charge the engine output partially or to output it as the motor so that the composed force is output from the carrier CR to the CVT input shaft 7a.
>
> On the other hand, *the parallel hybrid mode functions in a medium/high speed range*. In this state, the rotary elements of the planetary gear 6 are rotated together, and the output of the engine 2 is fed as it is to the CVT input shaft 7a. At the same time, the motor-generator 5 is connected to the input shaft 7a to assist the engine output or to charge the output partially.
>
> *The motor mode is in the state in which the accelerator opening is small and in which the revolution number is small, e.g., in which the engine 2 need not be used, such as in a traffic jam. Then, the motor-generator 5 is used as the motor to drive the vehicle.* In this state, the input clutch Ci is released to disconnect the engine 2 and the CVT input shaft 7a, and the direct-coupled clutch Cd is applied to output the revolution of the motor-generator rotor 5a directly to the input shaft 7a.
>
> *On the other hand, the engine mode functions during high speed cruising, and the vehicle is driven exclusively by the engine output without any participation of the motor-generator 5.* [Emphasis added].

The Examiner is respectfully requested to review the Taniguchi reference and confirm that in fact the road load is not used to determine the operating mode; in fact, Taniguchi controls the operation of the CVT, and the source of propulsive torque, in response to the vehicle speed and accelerator pedal position.

Turning now to new documents made of record hereby:

Abe 6,281,660 shows a battery charger for an electric vehicle.

Adler et al patent 5,515,937 claims a series hybrid where the power required by traction motors is drawn from either the batteries or directly from the engine/generator unit directly, depending on evaluation of their respective efficiencies and the batteries' state of charge, with respect to each new demand for power.

Barske patent 5,336,932 ties the operation of a generator used to charge a battery to specific fuel-consumption curves stored in ROM.

Bullock patent 6,170,587 shows a hybrid drive, all claims of which require at least three different types of energy storage, e.g., combustible fuel, battery, flywheel, or hydraulic accumulator.

Fattic et al patent 5,637,987 shows a hybrid vehicle in which an internal combustion engine and motor are coupled by controllable friction or electrical loading devices to control ratios.

Gray, Jr. patent 5,887,674 relates to a vehicle driven by a "fluidic motor", that is, having a hydraulic motor driving the wheels, in turn driven by a pump driven by an internal combustion engine.

Patent 4,762,191 to Hagin discloses a hybrid power train for a bus wherein multiple axles are driven via a driveshaft. Some of the dependent claims of the present application, recite connection of the combination of engine and first electric motor to a first set of wheels and connection of the second electric motor to a second set of wheels, which is quite different.

Hoshiya patent 6,315,068 shows a hybrid in which control of the torque provided by the motor is responsive to the torque provided by the engine, so that the engine can be operated at a target speed.

Ibaraki patent 5,856,709, discloses and claims a hybrid topology wherein an engine and a motor/generator are connected to different elements of a "synthesizing/distributing mechanism". A large number (nine or more) of operating modes are provided. The determination of the amount of torque required to propel the vehicle is apparently made in response to the position of the acclerator pedal; see col. 15, lines 59 - 61.

Patent 6,225,784 of Kinoshita claims a battery charge controller for a vehicle, wherein the level of charge above which further charging is permitted is varied based on the battery temperature. Patent 6,232,748 to the same inventor and assignee allows only discharge when the battery is above a specified temperature, and patent 6,204,636, again to the same inventor and assignee, controls the charging and discharge rate of the battery responsive to sensing of the "memory effect" of the battery. None of these expedients are claimed in the present application.

Four Lawrie and Lawrie et al patents, 5,993,350, 6,019,698, 5,979,257, and 6,006,620, and Reed et al 5,943,918 (et al here including Lawrie) are directed to transmissions for hybrids that combine the efficiency of manual transmissions with the convenience of automatic transmissions. Motors are used to operate the conventional "H"-pattern shifter, and a clutch, while the motor/generator present in a hybrid is employed to match the speeds of input and output shafts, to ensure smooth shifting. Finally, Reed, Jr. et al 6,332,257 claims a method of converting a manual transmission to automated operation.

Lovatt et al patent 6,291,953 shows an "electrical drive system", in some cases applied to a hybrid vehicle, requiring a lock-up torque converter.

Minowa et al patent 6,142,907 (Hitachi) claims a hybrid wherein either an engine or a motor is used to propel the vehicle. A generator is selectively connected to the wheels through a two-speed transmission. Patent 6,328,670 is a continuation.

Morisawa et al 5,984,034 discloses a hybrid wherein regenerative braking is used to oppose engine torque when idling to keep the vehicle stopped. Morisawa et al 6,119,799 issued on a continuation and discloses a hybrid offering control of braking responsive to "obstruction [e.g., a car ahead] detection". Another patent based on the same underlying document, no. 6,334,498, claims supplying power from a motor during upshifts of an automatic transmission being driven by an engine. None of these is a feature of the claimed invention.

Another Morisawa patent, no. 5,895,333, is limited to packaging details for a planetary gearbox for a hybrid vehicle. Still another Morisawa patent, no. 6,306,057, claims a complex planetary gearbox arranged so that the internal combustion engine is used to power the vehicle when reversing.

Nagano et al 6,344,008 discloses a hybrid wherein a transmission is coupled between an engine and a torque synthesizing device, which also accepts torque from a single motor.

Nakajima et al 6,090,007 shows a control scheme for a hybrid vehicle including a continuously variable transmission. Patent

Takaoka et al patent application US 2003/0085577 has claims drawn to control of gear selection in an automatic transmission for a hybrid based on engine efficiency; apparently, if the torque required cannot be supplied efficiently by the engine and motor working together, the transmission is downshifted.

Tuzuki et al patent 5,415,603 shows details of a hydraulic system for a hybrid vehicle in which the oil is used for cooling of a traction motor and lubrication of the transmission.

Wakuta et al patent 6,258,001 is directed to very narrow mechanical aspects of a motor and transmission assembly for a hybrid.

Woon et al patent 5,890,470 claims a method of controlling engine output power, evidently intended to improve on conventional governors as used on diesel engines to smooth throttle response and shifting. Claim 1 is typical and requires operating the engine at a constant horsepower value responsive to throttle position regardless of engine speed.

Yamada et al patent 6,328,122 discloses a series hybrid wherein the ICE can be used for vehicle propulsion only in the event of a failure in the charging system.

Nada patent 6,653,230 is also directed to operation of a hybrid after a particular failure.

Yamaguchi patent 5,915,489 shows a hybrid powertrain. It appears that the output torque is determined based on vehicle speed and accelerator pedal position; see col. 6, lines 17 - 21.

Yamaguchi et al patent 6,278,195 shows applying torque from the electric motor of a hybrid to quickly stop the engine.

Yamaguchi et al patent 6,247,437 claims control of the operation of a starter motor, e.g., for a hybrid, responsive to an engine parameter relevant to its startability. For example, if the engine is cold, fuel is supplied at a lower cranking RPM to limit the drain on the battery. A divisional application (not being supplied), Yamaguchi et al published patent application 2001/0022166, similarly claims a starting control for an engine, in which the rotating speed is limited when the engine is cold to avoid excessive use of battery power.

Yamaguchi patent 5,967,940 is directed to control of the power provided by the engine of a hybrid to prevent noise due to gear backlash.

Yamaguchi 6,135,914 discloses a method of control of a hybrid including an ICE and two motor/generators. The invention has to do with limiting the engine speed so that the first motor/generator is not rotated beyond its capability in the event of a failure The Yamaguchi system operates in engine-only, motor-only, and engine+motor modes (see col. 4, lines 46 - 54), but the method by which the choice between these is made is not explicit.

Field patent 5,081,365 discloses a hybrid vehicle wherein an engine is connected to road wheels through an electric motor, which is operated variously as traction motor or generator, depending on the batteries' state of charge and the vehicle operating mode; the operating mode is selected by the operator from an urban mode, a highway mode, an engine mode, and a cruise control mode. The selection is apparently to be made responsive to motor speed. Field acknowledges at col. 7, line 48 the desirability of operating the engine near its rated power to thus realize high efficiency; as discussed in detail below, Field suggest using an engine that is sized so that it operates at nearly maximum output during flat-highway, constant speed cruising. Such an engine would necessarily be too small to propel the vehicle up hills, so its performance would suffer under such circumstances.

Two additional patents to Field and Field et al, nos. 6,044,922 and 6,481,516, relate to developments of the system disclosed in the '365 Field patent above; the '516 patent is stated to be a continuation of the '922 patent, but their disclosures are not in fact identical. The vehicle described in these patents comprises two separate battery packs, a high-voltage battery pack for supplying power to the traction motor and a lower-powered accessory battery for operating usual vehicle ancillary components such as lights, radio, and the like.

Kubo patent 5,722,502 shows a hybrid vehicle comprising an ICE, a generator and a traction motor also operable as a generator. The vehicle can be operated in a variety of modes, include PEV ("pure electric vehicle", in which the ICE is not run at all; see col. 10, lines 18 - 28), SHV ("serial electric vehicle", wherein the ICE is run to drive the generator, which in turn supplies current to the traction motor to power the vehicle; see col. 5, lines 33 - 51), and "continuous-type PSHV" ("parallel-serial hybrid vehicle", where torque from the ICE is used to propel the vehicle and to drive the generator to power the traction motor to propel the vehicle if torque from the ICE is inadequate; see col. 5, lines 52 - 66). A distinction is drawn between this continuous-type PSHV and a "changeover-type PSHV", as exemplified by Japanese Laid-Open Publication 2-7702; see col. 3, lines 2 - 9 and col. 5, line 66 - col. 6, line 10.

The selection between the PEV mode and one or the other of the SHV and PSHV modes is made by the operator (see col. 10, line 47), while the selection between SHV and PHSV modes is made according to the battery's state of charge (SOC); see col. 6, lines 12 - 13. When the driver selects a mode other than the PEV mode, the engine is operated continuously (col. 11, lines 26 - 32), and may idle when not significantly loaded (col. 12, lines 31 - 32; col. 13, lines 51 - 52); if the battery is fully charged but braking is required, such that regenerative braking would be inappropriate, the engine can be operated as a mechanical brake (col. 11, lines 6 - 20).

In PSHV mode, an engine control unit (ECU) then determines whether torque is to be supplied from the traction motor, ICE, or both, depending on the accelerator pedal angle: "Further, if the change in accelerator pedal angle is too large for the torque to be supplied...by the ICE alone or...by the ICE alone because fuel consumption and emission are degraded, the ECU 20 controls the [inverter] to compensate by using the motor 10 for at least that part of the torque required at the driving wheels." (Col. 13, lines 32 - 39). At low speeds in PSHV mode, it appears that the ICE provides power to the traction motor through the first motor, being operated as a generator.

Tsukamoto et al 5,771,478 shows a hybrid vehicle in which the function of a clutch or torque converter, allowing slipping of an ICE with respect to the wheels of a vehicle, e.g., when accelerating from a stop, is provided by a gearbox connected between the ICE, wheels, and a motor-generator. Excess torque provided by the ICE at starting is absorbed by the motor-generator and stored in a battery; it can then be used to run accessories or propel the vehicle.

Tabata et al 5,833,570 relates to smoothing the shifting of an automatic transmission of a hybrid by application of torque from the traction motor. Tabata 5,951,614 is generally similar, but shows smoothing of shifting by reducing the torque supplied by either the motor/generator or ICE.

Hata et al 5,875,691 discloses and claims a specific arrangement of the components of a hybrid (ICE, motor, transmission) for packaging convenience.

Haka 5,931,271 shows a hybrid powertrain wherein one-way clutches are provided so that the same motor/generator can start an ICE and be disconnected therefrom for efficient regenerative braking.

Shibata et al patent 3,719,881 shows a battery charger arrangement especially for a serial hybrid vehicle, wherein an internal combustion engine is operated to drive a generator only above a minimum load, so as to reduce emissions, which increase at low loads.

Etienne patent 4,187,436 also shows a battery charging arrangement for a serial hybrid vehicle, which includes a first battery for powering the traction motor and a second battery for starting the ICE.

Lynch et al patent 4,165,795 shows a hybrid drive arrangement in which an ICE and a motor/generator are mechanically coupled to one another, and to the wheels of the vehicle, through a transmission. The engine is sized to provide the average power necessary for ordinary driving, and is operated near its optimal efficiency point at all times; the motor/generator is operated for load-leveling, that is, when the vehicle's torque requirements exceed the power provided by the engine the motor/generator adds torque, and when the engine's torque output exceeds the vehicle's torque requirement, the motor/generator operates as a battery charger. The difficulty with this approach is simply that the vehicle's torque requirements may vary by a factor of up to 1000%, or more, between city driving and highway driving, particularly when there are grades (using battery power to climb a grade of any length will quickly discharge any reasonably-sized battery bank) so this solution is not useful in "real-world" driving.

Hadley et al 5,283,470 shows an electric car, that is, without ICE, with regenerative braking. Hadley et al 5,406,126 is similar.

Schmidt 5,669,842 shows a hybrid drive in which either the ICE or one of several separate motors drive the accessories, depending on whether the engine is running. The engine and motors are arranged so that the engine and the mating member of the geartrain are driven at the same speed, allowing the clutch to be synchronously engaged.

Ibaraki et al 6,003,626 discloses a hybrid in which the engine normally propels the vehicle and charges the battery through a generator; if the generator fails, the engine propels the vehicle.

Takahara et al 6,009,365 discloses a hybrid with ICE and motor connected to the wheels through a continuously variable transmission (CVT). During coasting the actual torque being exerted is compared to a calculated desired torque and the actual torque adjusted accordingly.

Bower patent 6,231,135 relates to improvements in brake systems for hybrid vehicles. Although the present application is a division of an application which was a continuation-in-part of earlier applications, and which added disclosure of a new braking system to the disclosure of the parent application, no claims to that braking system are now being pursued in this application.

Soejima 5,951,118 discloses a vehicle braking system, not limited to hybrids, which includes a seating velocity reducing device for slowing the closing of a valve; this can be employed together with regenerative braking in a hybrid. Otomo et al 5,984,432 is similar. As above, no claims of the present application are directed to improvements in braking systems, although the parent was a C-I-P which added material relating thereto to the disclosure of the grandparent application.

Numazawa et al patent 5,497,941, Umebayahi et al patent 6,265,692, and Matsuda et al patent 6,357,541 all relate to improvements in HVAC systems. As in the case of the braking systems discussed above, no claims are currently being pursued to certain new material relating to HVAC systems that was added by the parent C-I-P application to the disclosure of the parent applications.

Takahara et al patent 6,064,161 shows operating a motor/generator of a hybrid to brake a slipping wheel. This is not a feature of the claimed invention. Takahara also shows that the vehicle operating mode can be controlled responsive to accelerator pedal position and vehicle velocity, in common with many other references. See Fig. 5.

Kaiser et al 5,979,158 suggests that emissions of an ICE on starting can be reduced by spinning the ICE to a speed approximating its idle speed, activating the ignition system for about a second, and only then activating the fuel supply. This is suggested to be useful in a hybrid. No claims of the present application are directed to high-rpm starting, although the advantages of doing so are discussed in the application. Kaiser also mentions preheating of the catalyst; this step is recited in claim 77, but is not solely relied upon for patentability. Claim 77 recites, *inter alia,* that the vehicle's operating mode is selected responsive to road load, which is not shown by Kaiser.

Salecker 5,983,740 discloses a system for controlling the engine speed during shifting of an automatic transmission to smooth transition between gears; there is a brief mention that this could be useful in a hybrid.

Salecker 6,006,149 has a closely related disclosure and claims continuing to monitor operating parameters, especially temperatures of various components, for a time (the example being one second) after the engine has been shut off.

Yang patent 5,562,566 is extremely difficult to understand, but appears to disclose a power unit combining an ICE and a motor, which is stated to be useful in vehicles, ships, aircraft, and in industrial and process equipment. The invention seems to be directed to a unit for combining the torque, but again the patent is extremely difficult to understand. Patents 5,547,433 and 5,549,524, also to Yang, appear to be directed to related inventions.

Origuchi patent 5,212,431 is directed to a serial electric hybrid vehicle wherein a generator, preferably to be driven by a gas turbine, is operated in response to monitoring of the battery's state of charge.

Antony et al 5,714,851 shows a serial hybrid with a bypass current path around the rectifiers and battery, to connect a generator driven by an ICE directly to a traction motor.

Horwinski patent 3,904,883 discloses a hybrid, wherein a single electric motor/generator is provided with separably rotatable armature and rotator, so that the unit can be operated as both motor and generator. An ICE is provided to drive the unit, and also to propel the vehicle under various conditions. Mode switching is apparently to be accomplished responsive to the battery's state of charge; see col. 5, lines 20 - 21 and col. 6, lines 64 - 66. The vehicle is intended to operate primarily as an electric car, with overnight charging from the power grid (see col. 6, lines 45 - 51) with the engine primarily provided as a range-extender, though, as noted, the engine can supply torque to the wheels; see col. 5, line 64 - col. 6 line 30.

Reichmann et al 5,851,698 and Venkatesan et al 5,856,047 are directed to nickel-metal hybride (NiMH) batteries optimized for hybrid vehicle applications.

Park 4,331,911 shows a method for equalizing the voltage across individual cells of storage batteries.

Miller et al 4,126,200 shows a vehicle having a flywheel for energy storage. Hagin et al 4,216,684 is similar. Matthews 4,591,016 shows recovering energy during regenerative braking by accelerating a flywheel. Michel 4,592,454 shows doing so employing a hydropneumatic accumulator.

Stuhr 4,674,280 shows an accumulator for the storage of energy in a hydraulic system.

Fiala 4,416,360 shows a vehicle powertrain in which a flywheel connected to the engine by a clutch is rotated by a starter motor, and then used to start the engine using rotational inertia stored in the flywheel; the "starter" motor can then be operated as a generator to recharge the battery.

Moore 4,090,577 shows a hybrid with a conventional engine/transmission assembly driving one pair of wheels, with a solar-charged battery and motor combination driving a second pair.

Walker 5,323,688 discloses hydraulic wheel motors stated to be capable of regenerative braking.

Coe 5,384,521 discloses flywheel energy storage for a vehicle, with electromagnetic couplers.

Boll et al 5,623,194 shows a charge information system for an electric or hybrid vehicle for monitoring battery status and advising the operator.

Weiss 5,947,855 shows a hybrid drive for a tractor or the like wherein torque from an ICE is combined with torque from an electric motor, driven by a generator powered by the ICE is combined individually at the drive wheels by a "Ravigneaux" summing gear set. This is stated to provide flexibility in control.

Smith 5,971,088 shows a battery charging apparatus for regenerative charging wherein the generator is built into the vehicle driveshaft and moves with it as the vehicle encounters bumps and the like.

Walker 5,971,092 shows a hybrid comprising two ICEs, sized to accomodate differing typical loads, plus a hydraulic accumulator. The engines are preferably two-strokes with "inertia pistons" sliding in bores in the main pistons.

Schulze et al 5,675,203 shows a motor/generator; the direction of rotation of the output shaft can be reversed by axial movement of a short-circuit winding.

Fliege 5,675,222 shows switchable winding motors for electric road vehicles.

Fliege 5,915,488 shows reducing the power supplied to switching components in a hybrid drive in response to detection of acceleration over a limiting value, e.g., to prevent sparking and erosion of switch contacts as they are jarred apart over bumps.

Lutz 5,679,087 and 5,685,798 disclose details of planetary gearboxes for vehicles.

Lutz 5,691,588 shows a clutch assembly for connecting motor and ICE of a hybrid, having separately-actuated friction plates on opposite sides of a hub forming part of the rotor.

Lutz et al patent 5,755,302 discloses a specific arrangement of a clutch connecting an engine, motor, and transmission of a hybrid - the rotor is attached to the transmission shaft and the stator to either the engine or the transmission housing, while the clutch also fits at least partially within the stator.

Fliege 5,678,646 discloses modular motors that can be stacked with interconnected coolant circuits to provide different power capacities, stated to be useful in hybrids.

Ruthlein et al 5,698,905 relates to emergency starting of a hybrid with a dead battery, by rearranging connections to allow starting by towing.

Lutz 5,713,427 shows a coupling structure for a hybrid comprising a deformable, resilient disc member.

Lutz 5,829,542 shows vehicles with separate motors on each wheel of at least one pair of wheels.

Welke patent 5,833,022 shows a specific constructional arrangement for a clutch and single traction motor of a hybrid vehicle. No operating scheme is discussed.

Adler et al 5,816,358 shows automatic disconnection of the current supply in the event of accident or the like in vehicles having relatively high current and voltage electric power supplies, e.g., hybrid vehicles.

Gardner 4,753,078 shows a hopelessly complicated hybrid vehicle design involving, among other impracticalities, "recovery of electricity from electromagnetic wind generators, gyrogenerators, and gravitational generators, and for the recovery of compressed air from air pumps...replacing the standard shock absorbers."

Wicks 5,000,003 shows a "combined cycle" engine wherein heat normally lost in the exhaust gases and rejected by heat exchange with cooling water from an ICE is recovered and used to drive a turbine or the like, and suggests that this might be especially suitable for use in a hybrid vehicle.

Lay 5,141,173 shows a vehicle capable of flight as well as travel along the ground. An ICE can propel the vehicle or drive a generator and thence electric motors, depending on the range and speed of intended travel.

Kutter 5,242,335 shows a drivetrain for a hybrid vehicle, shown in automobile and bicycle embodiments, wherein muscle power is combined with power from an auxiliary motor.

Kuang 5,264,764 shows use of an ICE as a power source to serve as a range extender for an electric car, that is, the ICE does not directly propel the vehicle.

Addie 3,699,351 shows a bi-modal vehicle, such as a rail car, which can be propelled by an external power source, such as a third rail, or by a prime mover, such as a gas turbine. A split torque device allows some of the turbine torque to be delivered to the output shaft and the remainder to a motor/generator combination.

Shibata et al 3,719,881 shows a series hybrid, that is, an electric car comprising an ICE arranged to charge a battery connected to a traction motor, wherein the battery's state of charge is monitored and used to control operation of the ICE; the load on the ICE is monitored and the ICE is shut off when the load drops below a predetermined value.

Berman patent 3,753,059 shows a control circuit for a motor operated in both propulsive and regenerative modes, as might be employed in the hybrid vehicle drive system of Berman patent 3,566,717, already of record. Berman 3,790,816 shows an "energy storage and transfer power processor" apparently intended for use with the same system.

Williams 4,099,589 shows a series hybrid wherein the preferred power path is from an ICE to an AC generator to an AC motor, to the wheels; a rectifier, battery and DC motor are also provided as an auxiliary or additional power source.

Rowlett 4,233,858 shows a vehicle propulsion system wherein two electric motors are provided. Torque from the two motors is combined; excess torque is stored in a flywheel, to provide load-leveling.

Dailey 4,287,792 shows a variable gear ratio transmission.

Fiala 4,411,171 shows a hybrid vehicle power train in which a single electric motor/generator and an ICE are coupled to the wheels of the vehicle. Various operating modes are described.

Tankersley et al patent 5,403,244 shows an electric vehicle with a planetary gearbox for reducing the shaft speed of an electric motor to a speed suitable for driving the wheels of the vehicle, and also providing a direct drive.

Hadley et al 5,406,126 shows another serial hybrid. The invention appears to have to do with the method of regenerative charging offered.

Westphal patent 5,570,615 shows a three-mass flywheel construction, with two of the masses connected by springs and the thrid by planetary gears for balancing of various moments and vibrations.

Nedungadi patent 6,110,066 shows a hybrid vehicle operating in four modes, as follows (col. 4, lines 25 - 38): "There are four modes of operation for the vehicle, namely: (a) electric; (b) charge; (c) assist; and, (d) regenerative. In the electric mode, only the motor is providing propulsion power to the vehicle. In the charge mode, part of the engine power drives the vehicle and the rest is absorbed by the motor (operating as a generator) to charge the batteries. In the assist mode, both the engine and the motor are providing power to propel the vehicle. In the regenerative mode, power from the decelerating wheels is diverted to the motor so that it can be used to charge the batteries. .... The controller selects the most appropriate mode depending upon the position of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed and the state of charge of the battery." Nedungadi makes it clear that the idea is to keep the engine "as loaded as possible" (col. 8, line 46). In assist mode, this is done by keeping the engine at maximum power; in the charge mode, the engine is maintained at its point of maximum fuel efficiency. See col. 5, lines 46 - 53.

Fini patent 6,387,007 shows several embodiments of hybrids. Mode control appears to be accomplished responsive to accelerator pedal position.

Tsai et al 6,592,484 shows a hybrid comprising an ICE and a single motor as prime movers. The invention is directed to a transmission including four clutches and two planetary gearsets. Some 13 operating modes are stated to be provided.

Horwinski patent 3,904,883 is essentially a predecessor of the Horwinski patent already of record.

Yamada patent 6,041,877 was recently cited in an Office Action issued against a Japanese application based on a PCT application with disclosure corresponding to the disclosures of the two parent applications. According to a non-certified translation of the Office Action, Yamada was cited because it shows "a hybrid vehicle in which a battery is configured as two separate battery sub-banks"; this was cited against a claim not corresponding to any now in this application, including a similar recitation. (Claim 29 of issued patent 6,209,672 includes a comparable limitation.) The disclosure of Yamada otherwise seems merely cumulative to numerous references of record. Japanese Utility Model Application No. 50-099456 (provided with a translated summary sheet only) was also cited in the same Office Action, the Japanese Examiner stating that "there is described a technology in which two battery groups in an electrically driven vehicle (B1 and B2, B4 and B3) are connected in series and the middle of the two battery groups is earthed to a vehicle chassis." Again, this is not relevant to any claim now being asserted herein.

Tabata patent 5,887,670 shows a single-motor hybrid. Mode determination is accomplished (see Fig. 7) responsive to a "currently required output Pd" which is determined responsive to pedal position, rate of change thereof, vehicle speed and trasnmission lever position (see col. 23, lines 20 - 26).

Otsu et al patent 6,123,163 shows a single-motor hybrid configured as a sort of city scooter. The vehicle operates in different modes depending on the "aimed" torque, which is determined responsive to accelerator opening and vehicle speed.

See Fig. 13, col. 10, lines 56 - 67 and col. 17, lines 11 - 33. Otsu 6,260,644 seems to have the same disclosure, and Suzuki 6,253,865 to relate to the same design.

Arai patent 6,435,296 shows a hybrid with an engine driving one set of wheels and a motor driving the other. In order that a DC motor can be used, avoiding the expense of an inverter, the motor is to be used as little as possible.

Sherman 5,789,823 shows both a torque converter and a friction clutch in a single motor hybrid. This is essentially an engine-assist arrangement; the engine can only be started when the vehicle transmission is in neutral (see col. 3, lines 30 - 38), so that it must be run at all times, and the motor/generator is stated to only assist the engine during times of peak power requirement (col. 4, lines 36 - 38). Another Sherman patent 5,258,651 is not directed to hybrid vehicles, but to a system for starting an ICE.

Onimaru 6,007,443 (Nippon Soken) shows a hybrid wherein an ICE is connected through a CVT and a clutch to a motor/generator, the output shaft of which drives the wheels. Above a minimum velocity, the engine is operated at a maximum speed. See col. 7, line 17. At lower vehicle speeds, the engine is permitted to idle; see col. 6, lines 9 - 23.

Ehsani et al, in "Propulsion System Design of Electric and Hybrid Vehicles", discuss determination of the sizes and capacities of an ICE and traction motor for a hybrid vehicle. This is generally relevant to the subject matter of claims 16 and 112. However, note that Ehsani fails entirely to address the relationship claimed between the voltage and current of the battery bank, as claimed. Ehsani et al, in "Parametric Design of the Drive Train of an Electrically Peaking Hybrid (ELPH) Vehicle", go into further detail, and indicate that the vehicle of concern is a single-motor hybrid wherein torque from the ICE and motor can be combined by a "matchgear", as in applicant's prior patent 5,343,970. Ehsani patent 5,586,613, apparently directed to the same work, is discussed in the application as filed.

Yamaguchi et al, "Development of a New Hybrid System - Dual System", SAE paper 960231 (1996) appears to be merely cumulative to numerous patents to the same inventors already of record. "Dual System - Newly Developed Hybrid System" (publication details not known), by some of the same authors, of which only a partial copy is available, is generally cumulative but does provide a diagram showing operation of the various components as a function of time

Takaoka et al, in "A High-Expansion-Ratio Gasoline Engine for the Toyota Hybrid System", discuss the details of an ICE designed for use in a hybrid vehicle. This paper states that "By using the supplementary drive power of the electric motor, the system eliminates the light-load range, where concentrations of hydrocarbons in the emissions are high and the exhaust temperature is low." (p. 57; a similar statement is made on p. 59) and "By allocating a portion of the load to the electric motor, the system is able to reduce engine load fluctuation under conditions such as rapid accleeration. This makes it possible to reduce quick transients in engine load so that the air-fuel ratio can be stabilized easily." (p. 58). The former statement simply emphasizes the fact that engines are operated more efficiently at higher loads, and the latter that stoichiometric combustion can be more nearly obtained if the engine's speed and/or load is varied as slowly as possible.

Sasaki et al, "Toyota's Newly Developed Electric-Gasoline Hybrid Powertrain System" (publication data not available) provides a mathematical analysis of the planetary gearbox.

PCT application PCT/SE81/00280, published as WO 82/01170, shows a hybrid vehicle wherein an ICE is used for propulsion under some circumstances and an electric motor under others, e.g., to provide a forklift truck that operates electrically when indoors and is driven by the ICE when outdoors. The change from one torque source to the other is made as a function of vehicle speed. See p. 3, lines 19 - 28.

Japanese utility model publication 53-55105 (of which only a partial translation is available) appears to show a hybrid vehicle having both an ICE and a motor as sources of propulsive torque, but the description provided is inadequate to understand how the two sources are to be operated. The disclosure of Japanese patent application publication 48-64626 (of which only a partial translation is available) seems to be similar.

Japanese unexamined patent application publication 4-67703 (of which only a partial translation is available) appears to relate to an electric vehicle.

Japanese patent application publication 4-297330 (of which only a partial translation is available) seems to relate to supplementing the regenerative braking available using a traction motor as the source of braking torque with regenerative braking from a generator attached to an ICE, and with friction from motoring the engine under braking.

Japanese patent application publication 55-110328 (of which only a partial translation is available) relate to a vehicle wherein a first pair of wheels is driven by a "main driving unit", a second pair being driven by an "auxiliary power unit", wherein the auxiliary power unit is controlled responsive to a difference in speed between the first and second pairs of wheels.

Japanese utility model publication 51-103220 (of which only a partial translation is available) describes a control system for a hybrid wherein the output shaft of an ICE is connected to that of an electric motor through a clutch, the clutch being controlled to operate when speed sensors on the shafts indicate that their rotational speeds are equal.

Japanese patent 49-29642 (of which only a partial translation is available) also shows a hybrid wherein the shaft of an ICE is connected by a clutch to that of an electric motor; in this case a one-way clutch is also provided.

Japanese patent publication 6-245317 (of which only a partial translation is available) relates to a device for preventing overcharging of the battery of an electric vehicle.

European patent application publication no. 510 582 shows a vehicle powerplant featuring both an ICE and an electric motor as sources of propulsion, and thus a hybrid of sorts, though the term is not mentioned. No suggestion is made that the control of operating mode is made other than by an operator; the determining factor seems to be whether emission must be completely prohibited, as in indoor operation.

European patent application publication no. 510 582 also shows a hybrid vehicle featuring both an ICE and an electric motor as sources of propulsion. Again there is no teaching of the specifics of switching operating mode; the invention has to do with loading the ICE by means of the generator so as to match the speed of the engine to the speed of a drive shaft driven by the traction motor before engaging a clutch connecting the two.

German OS 25 17 110, provided with an English-language abstract, is stated by the abstract to show a hybrid vehicle with a turbine engine. It appears that the vehicle is operated as an electric car until the current drawn exceeds a preset value, when the turbine is actuated; thereafter, the turbine is run at an "optimum setting", with the load split between battery charging and vehicle propulsion.

Mayrhofer et al, "A Hybrid Drive Based on a Structure Variable Arrangement" (1994), shows a hybrid vehicle design involving an ICE, two motor/generators, a planetary gearbox to enable combinations of sources of torque, and no less than four clutches, obviously much more complicated than would be desirable. Of interest with respect to the present invention is that in one operating strategy (see page 196) Mayrhofer et al suggest that the ICE should be activated only when the mean value of the power demanded exceeds a limit for more than a minimum time, 20 seconds being the example given. It is apparent that the ICE is thus to be used only for load-leveling and that mode changes are not being made based on the road load *per se*. In other strategies the engine operation appears to be even further afield from applicants' simple and direct strategy.

A December 1990 *Popular Science* article, "Diesel-Electric VW", describes a hybrid wherein an electric motor, also serving a generator and engine starter, is disposed between clutches connecting the motor to an ICE on one side and the vehicle wheels on the other. It is not clear what modes are provided, although some transitions are apparently made responsive to accelerator pedal position and vehicle velocity.

A May 1991 *Popular Science* article, "Electric Vehicles Only", addresses the then-current state of the art in electric vehicles and mentions hybrids only peripherally.

An April 1991 article appearing in *NASA Tech Briefs* discusses lead/acid batteries having woven electrodes.

As indicated, none of the newly-cited patents made of record hereby disclose or suggest the invention claimed herein. Early and favorable action on the merits of the application is earnestly solicited.

Respectfully submitted,

May 19, 2004
Dated

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190

CANCELLED

MAY 2 0 2004 PAT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

OIPE IAP100 JUL 0 7 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	6281660	08/2001	Abe			
	~~5515937~~	~~5/1996~~	~~Adler et al~~			previously cited
DD	5336932	4/1994	Barske			
DD	6170587	1/2001	Bullock			
DD	5887674	3/1999	Gray			
DD	4762191	8/88	Hagin et al.			
	~~6315068~~	~~11/2001~~	~~Hoshiya et al~~			previously cited
DD	5856709	1/1999	Ibaraki et al			
DD	6204636	3/2001	Kinoshita et al			
DD	6225784	5/2001	Kinoshita et al			
DD	6232748	5/2001	Kinoshita et al			
	~~6019698~~	~~2/2000~~	~~Lawrie~~			previously cited

RECEIVED JUN 0 2 2004 GROUP 3600

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER	[signature]	DATE CONSIDERED	11/24/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP § 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

CANCELLED

OIPE IAP100 JUL 0 7 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
	5993350	11/1999	Lawrie et al			
	5979257	11/1999	Lawrie			
	6006620	12/1999	Lawrie et al			
DD	6291953	9/2001	Lovatt et al			
DD	6332257	12/2001	Reed Jr. et al			
DD	5943918	8/1999	Reed Jr. et al			
	5755302	5/1998	Lutz et al			on page 10
DD	6142907	11/2000	Minowa			
DD	6328670	12/2001	Minowa			
DD	6119799	9/2000	Morisawa			
DD	5984034	11/1999	Morisawa			
DD	6334498	1/2002	Morisawa			

RECEIVED JUN 0 2 2004 GROUP 3600

previously cited

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/29/07

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP § 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

OIPE JC177 MAY 2 8 2004 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

CANCELLED

OIPE IAP100 JUL 0 7 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5895333	4/1999	Morisawa			
DD	6306057	10/2001	Morisawa			
DD	6344008	2/2002	Nagano			
DD	6090007	7/2000	Nakajima			
DD	6328671	12/2001	Nakajima			
DD	5660077	8/1997	Nekola			
DD	6203468	3/2001	Nitta			
DD	6321150	11/2001	Nitta			
DD	5944630	8/1999	Omote			
DD	6070680	6/2000	Oyama			
DD	6123642	9/2000	Saito			
DD	6158541	12/2000	Tabata			

RECEIVED
JUN 0 2 2004
GROUP 3600

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD		Published application US 2001/0037905 ~~of~~ Nogi et al, ~~Nov~~ 11/2001

EXAMINER [signature]	DATE CONSIDERED 11/29/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP § 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

OIPE JC177 MAY 28 2004 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

CANCELLED

OIPE IAP100 JUL 07 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5847469	12/1998	Tabata			
DD	6317665	11/2001	Tabata			
DD	6183389	2/2001	Tabata			
DD	5873426	2/1999	Tabata			
DD	5923093	7/1999	Tabata			
DD	6340339	1/2002	Tabata			
DD	5935040	8/1999	Tabata et al			
DD	5415603	5/1995	Tuzuki et al			
DD	6258001	6/2001	Wakuta			
DD	5890470	4/1999	Woon			
DD	6328122	12/2001	Yamada			
DD	6278195	8/2001	Yamaguchi et al			

RECEIVED JUN 02 2004 GROUP 3600

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	4864626	9/1973	Japan			part.	
DD	4929642	8/1974	Japan			"	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Published patent application US 2003/0085577 of Takaoka et al, May 8, 2003

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/29/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP § 609: Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

OIPE JC17 MAY 2 8 2004 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE CANCELLED

OIPE IAP100 JUL 0 7 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER: 10/382,577
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT: 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

RECEIVED JUN 0 2 2004 GROUP 3600

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	6247437	6/2001	Yamaguchi et al			
DD	5967940	10/1999	Yamaguchi et al			
DD	5081365	1/1992	Field et al			
DD	6044922	4/2000	Field			
DD	6481516	11/2002	Field et al			
	~~3719881~~	~~3/1971~~	~~Shibata et al~~			cited on pg 10
DD	4187436	2/1980	Etienne			
DD	57~~7~~ 2 2502	3/1998	Kubo			
DD	6231135	5/2001	Bower et al			
DD	6357541	3/2002	Matsuda et al			
DD	6265692	7/2001	Umebayahi et al			
DD	5497941	3/1996	Numazawa et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	53551055	05/1978	Japan			part	
DD	467703	3/1992	Japan			"	
DD	6245317	2/1993	Japan			"	
DD	4297330	10/1992	Japan			"	
DD	51103220	8/1976	Japan			"	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD Mayrhofer et al "A Hybrid Drive Based on a Structure Variable Arrangement" (1994)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/29/07

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

2

CANCELLED

OIPE JC17 MAY 18 2004 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

OIPE IAP100 JUL 07 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

RECEIVED JUN 02 2004 GROUP 3600

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	6064161	5/2000	Takahara			
DD	5562566	10/1996	Yang			
DD	5212431	5/1993	Origuchi et al			
	~~4165795~~	~~8/1979~~	~~Lynch et al~~			Previously cited
DD	5283470	2/1994	Hadley et al			
DD	5406126	8/1995	Hadley et al			
DD	5669842	9/1997	Schmidt			
DD	5771478	6/1998	Tsukamoto			
DD	5833570	11/1998	Tabata			
DD	5951614	9/1999	Tabata			
DD	5875691	3/1999	Hata			
DD	5931271	8/1999	Haka			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	510582	10/1992	European Patent Office				
DD	136055	3/1985	European Patent Office				
DD	2517110	10/1975	German				
DD	8201170	4/1982	PCT/SE81/00280				
DD	55110328	8/1980	Japan			part	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	"Diesel-Electric VW", *Popular Science*, December 1990, p. 30.
DD	"Electric Vehicles Only", *Popular Science*, May 1991, pp. 76-81 and 110.
DD	"Lightweight, High-Energy Lead/Acid Battery" *NASA Tech Briefs*, 4/91, 22-24.

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/29/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

x

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICB201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5951118	9/1999	Soejima			
DD	5984432	11/1999	Otomo et al			
DD	5979158	11/1999	Kaiser			
DD	5983740	11/1999	Salecker et al			
DD	6006149	12/1999	Salecker et al			
DD	6003626	12/1999	Ibaraki et al			
DD	6009365	12/1999	Takahara et al			
DD	4126200	11/1978	Miller et al			
DD	4090577	5/1978	Moore			
DD	5323688	6/1994	Walker			
DD	5384521	1/1995	Coe			
DD	5623194	4/1997	Boll			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/29/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP § 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

x

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER: 10/382,577
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/03	GROUP ART UNIT: 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5675203	10/1997	Schulze et al			
DD	5675222	10/1997	Fliege			
DD	5679087	10/1997	Lutz			
DD	5685798	11/1997	Lutz			
DD	5691588	11/1997	Lutz			
DD	5698905	12/1997	Ruthlein et al			
DD	5713427	2/1998	Lutz			
DD	5714851	2/1998	Antony et al			
DD	5856047	1/1999	Venkatesan et al			
DD	5851698	12/1998	Reichmann et al			
DD	4216684	8/1980	Hagin et al			
DD	4331911	5/1982	Park			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER: [signature]	DATE CONSIDERED: 4/29/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP § 609: Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER 10/382,577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/03	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	4416360	11/1983	Fiala			
DD	4591016	5/1986	Matthews			
DD	4592454	6/1986	Michel			
DD	4674280	6/1987	Stuhr			
DD	4753078	6/1988	Gardner			
DD	5000003	3/1991	Wicks			
DD	5141173	8/1992	Lay			
DD	5242335	9/1993	Kutter			
DD	5264764	11/1993	Kuang			
DD	5915488	6/1999	Fliege			
DD	5947855	9/1999	Weiss			
DD	5971088	10/1999	Smith			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature]	DATE CONSIDERED 11/29/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

k

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION

DOCKET NUMBER	PAICE201.DIV
APPLICATION NUMBER	10/382,577
APPLICANT	Severinsky et al
FILING DATE	3/7/03
GROUP ART UNIT	3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5971092	10/1999	Walker			
DD	5755302	5/1998	Lutz			
DD	5678646	10/1997	Fliege			
	~~5833022~~	~~11/1998~~	~~Welke~~			prev cited
DD	5816358	10/1998	Adler et al			
DD	3699351	10/1972	Addie			
DD	3719881	3/1973	Shibata et al			
DD	3753059	8/1973	Berman			
DD	3790816	2/1974	Berman			
DD	4099589	7/1978	Williams			
DD	4233858	11/1980	Rowlett			
DD	4287792	9/1981	Dailey			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/29/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP § 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

OIPE SC17 MAY 2 8 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE CANCELLED

OIPE IAP100 JUL 0 7 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION

DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER: 10/382,577
APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
FILING DATE: 3/7/03	GROUP ART UNIT: 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

RECEIVED JUN 0 2 2004 GROUP 3600

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
DD	4411171	10/1983	Fiala			
DD	5403244	4/1995	Tankersley			
	~~5406128~~	~~4/1995~~	~~Hadley et al~~			cited on pg 6
DD	5549524	8/1996	Yang			
DD	5547433	8/1996	Yang			
DD	5570615	11/1996	Westphal et al			
DD	5915489	6/1999	Yamaguchi			
DD	6110066	8/2000	Nedungadi et al			
DD	6135914	10/2000	Yamaguchi et al			
DD	6387007	5/2002	Fini			
DD	6563230	5/2003	Nada			
DD ✓	6592484	7/2003	Tsai			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Yamaguchi et al, "Dual System - Newly Developed Hybrid System" (incomplete)
DD	Takaoka et al "A High-Expansion-Ratio Gasoline Engine for the Toyota Hybrid System", *Toyota Technical Review* ~~47, 2, 1998~~ Vol. 47, No. 2, April 1998.
DD	Sasaki et al, "Toyota's Newly Developed Electric-Gasoline Hybrid Powertrain System" (publication data not available)

EXAMINER: [signature]	DATE CONSIDERED: 11/24/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

2

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER: 10/382,577
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 3/7/03	GROUP ART UNIT: 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
DD	3904883	9/1975	Horwinski			
DD	6041877	3/2000	Yamada et al			
	~~5887670~~	~~3/1999~~	~~Tabata et al~~			previ cited
DD	6123163	9/2000	Otsu et al			
DD	6260644	7/2001	Otsu			
DD	6253865	7/2001	Suzuki			
DD	6435296	8/2002	Arai			
DD	5258651	11/1993	Sherman			
DD	5789823	8/1998	Sherman			
DD	6007443	12/1999	Onimaru			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
	~~50099456~~	~~1/1977~~	~~Japan~~			NOT SUBMITTED	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Ehsani et al "Propulsion System Design of Electric and Hybrid Vehicles", *IEEE Trans. Ind. Elec.*, **44** 1 (1997)
DD	Ehsani et al, "Parametric Design of the Drive Train of an Electrically Peaking Hybrid (ELPH) Vehicle", SAE paper 970294 (1997)
DD	Yamaguchi et al, "Development of a New Hybrid System - Dual System", SAE papers 960231 (1996)

EXAMINER	[signature]	DATE CONSIDERED	11/29/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

1

This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning Operations and is not part of the Official Record

BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- ☐ BLACK BORDERS
- ☐ IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- ☐ FADED TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☐ BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☐ SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- ☑ COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS
- ☐ GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS
- ☑ LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT
- ☐ REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY
- ☐ OTHER: ______________________

IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.
As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.

EAST Search History

Ref #	Hits	Search Query	DBs	Default Operator	Plurals	Time Stamp
S1	462	dunn-da$.xa. or dunn-da$.xp.	USPAT	OR	OFF	2006/08/02 13:15
S2	1000312	engine	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/01 10:58
S3	328663	electric$ near2 motor	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/01 11:00
S4	26785	S2 same S3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/02 13:19
S5	33075	(road or vehicle) near2 load	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/02 13:18
S6	245	S4 same S5	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/01 10:58
S7	20439	S2 with S3	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/01 10:59
S8	123	S7 with S5	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/01 10:59
S9	2451625	motor	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/01 11:01
S10	118480	S2 with S9	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/01 11:01
S11	493	S5 with S10	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/01 11:01
S12	10	("3921446" | "4535412" | "5241855" | "5452207" | "5658213" | "5669851" | "5703776" | "6135920" | "6173226" | "6253144").PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT; USOCR	OR	OFF	2006/08/01 11:08

EAST Search History

S15	462154	torque	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/02 13:18
S16	1000312	engine	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/02 13:19
S17	328663	electric$ near2 motor	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/02 13:19
S18	26785	S16 same S17	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/02 13:20
S19	4450	S15 same S18	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/02 13:20
S20	20439	S16 with S17	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/02 13:20
S21	2324	S15 with S20	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/02 13:21
S22	205	S21 with mode	US-PGPUB; USPAT; EPO; JPO; DERWENT	OR	OFF	2006/08/02 14:36
S23	1	("6054844").PN.	USPAT	OR	OFF	2006/08/02 14:36

Search Notes	Application/Control No. 11/229,762	Applicant(s)/Patent under Reexamination SEVERINSKY ET AL.
	Examiner David Dunn	Art Unit 3616

SEARCHED

Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner
180	65.2 65.3 65.4 65.8 165	8/1/2006	DD
477	2, 3		
701	54		

SEARCH NOTES (INCLUDING SEARCH STRATEGY)

	DATE	EXMR
EAST text search; see enclosed.	8/1/2006	DD

INTERFERENCE SEARCHED

Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
11/229,762	01/13/2006	Alex J. Severinsky	PAICE201.DIV. 2	3347

7590 08/10/2006

Michael de Angeli
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835

EXAMINER	
DUNN, DAVID R	
ART UNIT	**PAPER NUMBER**
3616	

DATE MAILED: 08/10/2006

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

PTO-90C (Rev. 10/03)

Office Action Summary	Application No. 11/229,762	Applicant(s) SEVERINSKY ET AL.	
	Examiner David Dunn	Art Unit 3616	

-- *The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address* --

Period for Reply

A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR REPLY IS SET TO EXPIRE 3 MONTH(S) OR THIRTY (30) DAYS, WHICHEVER IS LONGER, FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS COMMUNICATION.
- Extensions of time may be available under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.136(a). In no event, however, may a reply be timely filed after SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- If NO period for reply is specified above, the maximum statutory period will apply and will expire SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication.
- Failure to reply within the set or extended period for reply will, by statute, cause the application to become ABANDONED (35 U.S.C. § 133). Any reply received by the Office later than three months after the mailing date of this communication, even if timely filed, may reduce any earned patent term adjustment. See 37 CFR 1.704(b).

Status

1)☒ Responsive to communication(s) filed on *08 May 2006*.
2a)☐ This action is **FINAL**. 2b)☒ This action is non-final.
3)☐ Since this application is in condition for allowance except for formal matters, prosecution as to the merits is closed in accordance with the practice under *Ex parte Quayle*, 1935 C.D. 11, 453 O.G. 213.

Disposition of Claims

4)☒ Claim(s) *17-75* is/are pending in the application.
4a) Of the above claim(s) _____ is/are withdrawn from consideration.
5)☐ Claim(s) _____ is/are allowed.
6)☒ Claim(s) *17-75* is/are rejected.
7)☐ Claim(s) _____ is/are objected to.
8)☐ Claim(s) _____ are subject to restriction and/or election requirement.

Application Papers

9)☐ The specification is objected to by the Examiner.
10)☐ The drawing(s) filed on _____ is/are: a)☐ accepted or b)☐ objected to by the Examiner.
Applicant may not request that any objection to the drawing(s) be held in abeyance. See 37 CFR 1.85(a).
Replacement drawing sheet(s) including the correction is required if the drawing(s) is objected to. See 37 CFR 1.121(d).
11)☐ The oath or declaration is objected to by the Examiner. Note the attached Office Action or form PTO-152.

Priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119

12)☐ Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).
a)☐ All b)☐ Some * c)☐ None of:
1.☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.
2.☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. _____.
3.☐ Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this National Stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).
* See the attached detailed Office action for a list of the certified copies not received.

Attachment(s)

1) ☐ Notice of References Cited (PTO-892)
2) ☐ Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948)
3) ☒ Information Disclosure Statement(s) (PTO-1449 or PTO/SB/08) Paper No(s)/Mail Date *7/07/06*.
4) ☐ Interview Summary (PTO-413) Paper No(s)/Mail Date. _____ .
5) ☐ Notice of Informal Patent Application (PTO-152)
6) ☐ Other: _____.

DETAILED ACTION

An amendment was filed May 8, 2006 in which claims 1-16 were canceled and new claims 17-75 were added.

Double Patenting

1. The nonstatutory double patenting rejection is based on a judicially created doctrine grounded in public policy (a policy reflected in the statute) so as to prevent the unjustified or improper timewise extension of the "right to exclude" granted by a patent and to prevent possible harassment by multiple assignees. A nonstatutory obviousness-type double patenting rejection is appropriate where the conflicting claims are not identical, but at least one examined application claim is not patentably distinct from the reference claim(s) because the examined application claim is either anticipated by, or would have been obvious over, the reference claim(s). See, e.g., *In re Berg*, 140 F.3d 1428, 46 USPQ2d 1226 (Fed. Cir. 1998); *In re Goodman*, 11 F.3d 1046, 29 USPQ2d 2010 (Fed. Cir. 1993); *In re Longi*, 759 F.2d 887, 225 USPQ 645 (Fed. Cir. 1985); *In re Van Ornum*, 686 F.2d 937, 214 USPQ 761 (CCPA 1982); *In re Vogel*, 422 F.2d 438, 164 USPQ 619 (CCPA 1970); and *In re Thorington*, 418 F.2d 528, 163 USPQ 644 (CCPA 1969).

A timely filed terminal disclaimer in compliance with 37 CFR 1.321(c) or 1.321(d) may be used to overcome an actual or provisional rejection based on a nonstatutory double patenting ground provided the conflicting application or patent either is shown to be commonly owned with this application, or claims an invention made as a result of activities undertaken within the scope of a joint research agreement.

Effective January 1, 1994, a registered attorney or agent of record may sign a terminal disclaimer. A terminal disclaimer signed by the assignee must fully comply with 37 CFR 3.73(b).

2. Claims 17-72 are provisionally rejected on the ground of nonstatutory obviousness-type double patenting as being unpatentable over claims 82-122 of copending Application No. 10/382,577. Although the conflicting claims are not identical, they are not patentably distinct from each other because the claims recite the same limitations; for example claim 82 of 10/382,577 recites the engine, motors, battery, and same conditions of the controller as recited in claim 17 of the instant application.

This is a provisional obviousness-type double patenting rejection because the conflicting claims have not in fact been patented.

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 102

3. The following is a quotation of the appropriate paragraphs of 35 U.S.C. 102 that form the basis for the rejections under this section made in this Office action:

> A person shall be entitled to a patent unless –
>
> (e) the invention was described in (1) an application for patent, published under section 122(b), by another filed in the United States before the invention by the applicant for patent or (2) a patent granted on an application for patent by another filed in the United States before the invention by the applicant for patent, except that an international application filed under the treaty defined in section 351(a) shall have the effects for purposes of this subsection of an application filed in the United States only if the international application designated the United States and was published under Article 21(2) of such treaty in the English language.

4. Claims 73 and 74 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) as being anticipated by Tabata et al. (US Patent 5,935,040; cited in IDS).

Tabata et al. discloses a method of operating a hybrid vehicle, the method comprising: receiving an operator request for acceleration; if the vehicle load is greater than a first amount, an internal combustion engine supplies torque to the wheels (see column 15, lines 31-36); if the vehicle load is less than a first amount, supplying torque from an electric motor (see column 15, lines 25-30); wherein the engine is not operated when the vehicle load is less than the first amount ("only the motor/generator 14 as the drive power source.. in the low-load running state"; column 15, lines 25-30), wherein the vehicle load is independent of the speed of the vehicle (the load can be independent of the speed, e.g., a larger load running state would be required on a hill); a batter for supply electrical power to the motor (see column 9,lines 45-50). Regarding claim 74, the vehicle is inherently operated in a range from a minimum load being efficiently operated (relative term) to a maximum load.

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 103

5. The following is a quotation of 35 U.S.C. 103(a) which forms the basis for all obviousness rejections set forth in this Office action:

> (a) A patent may not be obtained though the invention is not identically disclosed or described as set forth in section 102 of this title, if the differences between the subject matter sought to be patented and the prior art are such that the subject matter as a whole would have been obvious at the time the invention was made to a person having ordinary skill in the art to which said subject matter pertains. Patentability shall not be negatived by the manner in which the invention was made.

6. Claim 75 is rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Tabata et al. alone.

Tabata et al. is discussed above but fails to show the engine being used at a load between 100% and 70% of total vehicle load.

It would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to select the operation mode such that the engine was used between a total vehicle load range of 70%-100% as it has generally been held that the selection of an optimum range within prior art general conditions requires only routine skill in the art.

7. Claims 49-54, 58-61, 68, 69, and 72 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Gray, Jr. et al. in view of Tabata et al.

Gray, Jr. et al. discloses a method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising: determining instantaneous road load ("power demand"; see column 7,lines 45-50); operating at least one electric motor to propel the vehicle when the RL is less than a setpoint (point A; see Figure 2D); operating an engine when the RL is between the SP and maximum torque output of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO (see Figure 2B; between points A and B); operating the motor and engine when the torque require is more than the MTO (see Figure 2A; supplied by engine and P/M, above point B). The vehicle comprises a variable-ratio transmission (CVT 3) between the engine and the wheels. Gray, Jr. discloses a clutch 4.

Gray, Jr. et al. does not show an electric motor and battery.

Tabata et al. is discussed above.

It would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to modify Gray, Jr. et al. with the teachings of Tabata et al. to use an electric motor and battery in order to provide a more reliable hybrid vehicle.

Allowable Subject Matter

8. Claims 17-48 would be allowable upon submission of a proper Terminal Disclaimer as noted in the double patenting section above.

9. Claims 55-57, 62-67, and 70-71 would be allowable if rewritten to include all of the limitations of the base claim and any intervening claims and upon submission of a proper Terminal Disclaimer as noted in the double patenting section above.

Conclusion

10. Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to David Dunn whose telephone number is 571-272-6670. The examiner can normally be reached on Mon-Fri, 8:30-5:00.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Paul Dickson can be reached on 571-272-6669. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 571-273-8300.

Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see http://pair-direct.uspto.gov. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free). If you would like assistance from a USPTO Customer Service Representative or access to the automated information system, call 800-786-9199 (IN USA OR CANADA) or 571-272-1000.

David Dunn
Primary Examiner
Art Unit 3616

1 ' S

CANCELLED

OIPE JC135 JUL 0 2005 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

OIPE IAP100 JUL 07 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~10/302,577~~ 11/229 762
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT: 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5844342	12/1998	Miyatani et al			
DD	5804947	9/1998	Nii et al			
DD	5457363	10/1995	Yoshii et al			
DD	5907191	5/1999	Sasaki et al			
DD	5914575	6/1999	Sasaki			
DD	6005297	12/1999	Sasaki et al			
DD	6166499	12/2000	Kanamori et al			
DD	5801497	9/1998	Shamoto et al			
DD	5909720	6/1999	Yamaoka			
DD	5698955	12/1997	Nii			
DD	5428274	6/1995	Furutani et al			
DD	6077186	6/2000	Kojima et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	2419832	3/1978	France			X	
DD	3124201	10/1989	Japan			X	
DD	51103220	2/1975	Japan			X	
DD	H564531	9/1984	Japan			X	
DD	S48491115	10/1971	Japan			X	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER INITIAL		
DD		Winkelman et al, SAE paper 730511, "Computer Simulation...." (1973)
DD		Berman et al, IEEE VT-23, NO. 3, pp. 61-72 "Propulsion Systems...."(1974)
DD		Berman SPC-TUE-2 "Battery Powered Regenerative SCR Drive"(1970)
DD		Gelb et al "Performance Analyses..." ACS pub (1972), pp 977-988
DD		Berman SPC-TUE-1 "Design Considerations...." (1971)
DD		Berman SPC-TUE-2" All Solid State Method....." (1971)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 10/12/05

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

1

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

CANCELLED

OIPE JC139 JUN 0 3 2005 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

OIPE IAP100 JUL 07 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~10/382,577~~ 11/229762
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT: 361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5991683	11/1999	Takaoka et al			
DD	5473228	12/1995	Nii			
DD	5927415	7/1999	Ibaraki et al			
DD	5928301	7/1999	Soga et al			
DD	6176807	1/2001	Oba et al			
DD	5904631	5/1999	Morisawa et al			
DD	5789877	8/1998	Yamada et al			
DD	6087734	7/2000	Maeda et al			
DD	5973460	10/1999	Taga et al			
DD	5988307	11/1999	Yamada et al			
DD	5991683	11/1999	Takaoka et al			
DD	5818116	10/1998	Nakae			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	S50302223	7/1973	Japan			X	
DD	WO8201170	4/1982	PCT				
DD	0510582	12/1995	EPO				
DD	4297330	3/1991	Japan				✓

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Minorikawa et al, "Current Status and Future Trends...." (Undated)
DD	Baum et al "Semiconductor Technologies..." (Undated)
DD	Chen "Automotive Electronics in the Year 2000..." (Apparently 1992)
DD	Brusaglino, SAE paper 910244 "Electric Vehicle Development..." (1991)
DD	Anderson et al, SAE paper 910246 "Integrated Electric..." (1991)
DD	Burke, SAE paper 911914 "Battery Availability for Near-Term..." (1991)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 10/12/07

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

2

.17

11/229762

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER	PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER	~~10/382,577~~
	APPLICANT	Severinsky et al		
	FILING DATE	3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT	361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Chang, IEEE AES Magazine (1993) "Recent Developments of Electric ..."
DD	Kamiyama et al, IEEE 0-7803-0582-5 (1992) "Application Trends...."
DD	Sen, IEEE Trans. Ind. Elec. (1990) "Electric Motor Drives..."
DD	Wang et al, PCSC '71 Record, "Analysis of SCR Chopper Drive" (1971)
DD	EPRI Report TR-101264 "Assessment of Electric Motor Technology (1992)
DD	Berman et al, SAE paper 720111 "Electric Car Drives...." (1972)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 10/12/05

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

1

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

OIPE JC135 JUL 07 2005 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE
CANCELLED

OIPE IAP100 JUL 07 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

,10

11/229762

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~10/382,577~~
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT: 361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	WO 99 2 4 2 8 0	11/1997	PCT			X	
DD	EP 07 4 3 2 1 1	5/1996	EP				
DD	EP 08 3 9 6 8 3	10/1997	EP				

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Gelb et al, "The Application of Solid Electrolyte Batteries..." (Undated)
DD	Miller, "Integrated Power Module Requirements for Automotive..." (Undated)
DD	Vukosavic et al, IEEE Trans. Ind. App. "SRM Inverter Topologies..." (1991)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 10/12/05

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

1

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

11/229762

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~10/302,577~~
1/2	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
DD	6067801	5/2000	Harada et al			
DD	4411171	10/1983	Fiala			
DD	3620323	5/1968	Maeda			
DD	6317665	11/2001	Tabata et al			
DD	6183389	2/2001	Tabata et al			
DD	5565711	10/1996	Hagiwara			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	754983	2/1995	Japan			X	
DD	4244658	9/1992	Japan			X	
DD	11082261	3/1999	Japan				X
DD	11122712	4/1999	Japan			Partial	
DD	62113956	5/1987	Japan			Partial	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER DD | DATE CONSIDERED 3/16/05

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

DD 8/2/06

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION 2/2	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~10/383,677~~
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	11082260	3/1999	Japan				X
DD	19838853	8/1998	Germany				X
DD	19814402	3/1998	Germany				X

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 3/16/05

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP § 609: Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

CANCELLED

O.I.P.E. IAP100 JUL 07 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

11/229762 ~~1 of 12~~

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION

DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201.DIV

APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~10/382,577~~

APPLICANT: Severinsky et al

FILING DATE 3/7/2003

GROUP ART UNIT: 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	6281660	08/2001	Abe			
	~~5515937~~	~~5/1996~~	~~Adler et al~~			previously cited
DD	5336932	4/1994	Barske			
DD	6170587	1/2001	Bullock			
DD	5887674	3/1999	Gray			
DD	4762191	8/88	Hagin et al			
	~~6315068~~	~~11/2001~~	~~Hoshiya et al~~			previously cited
DD	5856709	1/1999	Ibaraki et al			
DD	6204636	3/2001	Kinoshita et al			
DD	6225784	5/2001	Kinoshita et al			
DD	6232748	5/2001	Kinoshita et al			
	~~6019698~~	~~2/2000~~	~~Lawrie~~			prev. cited

RECEIVED JUN 02 2004 GROUP 3600

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER: [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/24/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP § 609: Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

xl

CANCELLED

OIPE JUL 0 7 2006 IAP100 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

~~2 of 12~~

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~10/382,577~~ 11/229762
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT: 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
	~~5993350~~	~~11/1999~~	~~Lawrie et al~~			
	~~5979257~~	~~11/1999~~	~~Lawrie~~			
	~~6006620~~	~~12/1999~~	~~Lawrie et al~~			
DD	6291953	9/2001	Lovatt et al			
DD	6332257	12/2001	Reed Jr. et al			
DD	5943918	8/1999	Reed Jr. et al			
	~~5755302~~	~~5/1998~~	~~Lutz et al~~			on page 12
DD	6142907	11/2000	Minowa			
DD	6328670	12/2001	Minowa			
DD	6119799	9/2000	Morisawa			
DD	5984034	11/1999	Morisawa			
DD	6334498	1/2002	Morisawa			

RECEIVED JUN 0 2 2004 GROUP 3600 previously cited

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/22/07

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP § 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

2

CANCELLED

OIPE JC177 MAY 2 8 2004 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

OIPE IAP100 JUL 0 7 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~10/382,577~~
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT: 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5895333	4/1999	Morisawa			
DD	6306057	10/2001	Morisawa			
DD	6344008	2/2002	Nagano			
DD	6090007	7/2000	Nakajima			
DD	6328671	12/2001	Nakajima			
DD	5660077	8/1997	Nekola			
DD	6203468	3/2001	Nitta			
DD	6321150	11/2001	Nitta			
DD	5944630	8/1999	Omote			
DD	6070680	6/2000	Oyama			
DD	6123642	9/2000	Saito			
DD	6158541	12/2000	Tabata			

RECEIVED JUN 0 2 2004 GROUP 3600

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Published application US 2001/0037905 ~~of~~ Nogi et al, ~~[illegible]~~ 11/2001

EXAMINER: [signature]	DATE CONSIDERED: 11/29/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP § 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

x

OIPE JC177 MAY 28 2004 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

CANCELLED

OIPE IAP100 JUL 07 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~10/382,577~~
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT: 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5847469	12/1998	Tabata			
DD	6317665	11/2001	Tabata			
DD	6183389	2/2001	Tabata			
DD	5873426	2/1999	Tabata			
DD	5923093	7/1999	Tabata			
DD	6340339	1/2002	Tabata			
DD	5935040	8/1999	Tabata et al.			
DD	5415603	5/1995	Tuzuki et al			
DD	6258001	6/2001	Wakuta			
DD	5890470	4/1999	Woon			
DD	6328122	12/2001	Yamada			
DD	6278195	8/2001	Yamaguchi et al			

RECEIVED JUN 02 2004 GROUP 3600

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	4864626	9/1973	Japan			part.	
DD	4929642	8/1974	Japan			"	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Published patent application US 2003/0085577 of Takaoka et al, May 8, 2003

EXAMINER: [signature]	DATE CONSIDERED: 11/29/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP § 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

CANCELLED

OIPE JC17 MAY 2 8 2004 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

OIPE IAP100 JUL 0 7 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~10/302,577~~
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 1/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT: 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	6247437	6/2001	Yamaguchi et al			
DD	5967940	10/1999	Yamaguchi et al			
DD	5081365	1/1992	Field et al			
DD	6044922	4/2000	Field			
DD	6481516	11/2002	Field et al			
	~~3719881~~	~~3/1971~~	~~Shibata et al~~			cited on P810
DD	4187436	2/1980	Etienne			
DD	57~~7~~2 2502	3/1998	Kubo			
DD	6231135	5/2001	Bower et al			
DD	6357541	3/2002	Matsuda et al			
DD	6265692	7/2001	Umebayahi et al			
DD	5497941	3/1996	Numazawa et al			

RECEIVED JUN 0 2 2004 GROUP 3600

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	5355105	05/1978	Japan			part	
DD	467703	3/1992	Japan			"	
DD	6245317	2/1993	Japan			"	
DD	4297330	10/1992	Japan			"	
DD	51103220	8/1976	Japan			"	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Mayrhofer et al "A Hybrid Drive Based on a Structure Variable Arrangement" (1994)

EXAMINER [signature]	DATE CONSIDERED 11/29/07

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

2

CANCELLED

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~10/382,577~~
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT: 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	6064161	5/2000	Takahara			
DD	5562566	10/1996	Yang			
DD	5212431	5/1993	Origuchi et al			
	~~4165795~~	~~8/1979~~	~~Lynch et al~~			previously cited
DD	5283470	2/1994	Hadley et al			
DD	5406126	8/1995	Hadley et al			
DD	5669842	9/1997	Schmidt			
DD	5771478	6/1998	Tsukamoto			
DD	5833570	11/1998	Tabata			
DD	5951614	9/1999	Tabata			
DD	5875691	3/1999	Hata			
DD	5931271	8/1999	Haka			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	510582	10/1992	European Patent Office				
DD	136055	3/1985	European Patent Office				
DD	2517110	10/1975	German				
DD	8201170	4/1982	PCT/SE81/00280				
DD	55110328	8/1980	Japan			part	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	"Diesel-Electric VW", *Popular Science*, December 1990, p. 30.
DD	"Electric Vehicles Only", *Popular Science*, May 1991, pp. 76-81 and 110.
DD	"Lightweight, High-Energy Lead/Acid Battery" *NASA Tech Briefs*, 4/91, 22-24.

EXAMINER: [signature] DATE CONSIDERED: 11/29/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609: Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

OIPE JC127 MAY 28 2004 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE
CANCELLED

OIPE IAP100 JUL 07 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICB201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~10/382,577~~
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

RECEIVED JUN 02 2004 GROUP 3600

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5951118	9/1999	Soejima			
DD	5984432	11/1999	Otomo et al			
DD	5979158	11/1999	Kaiser			
DD	5983740	11/1999	Salecker et al			
DD	6006149	12/1999	Salecker et al			
DD	6003626	12/1999	Ibaraki et al			
DD	6009365	12/1999	Takahara et al			
DD	4126200	11/1978	Miller et al			
DD	4090577	5/1978	Moore			
DD	5323688	6/1994	Walker			
DD	5384521	1/1995	Coe			
DD	5623194	4/1997	Boll			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/29/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

x

OIPE JC17 MAY 1 8 2004 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE
CANCELLED
OIPE IAP100 JUL 0 7 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

11/229 762

~~8 of 12~~

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~10/382,377~~
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/03	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

RECEIVED JUN 0 2 2004 GROUP 3600

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5 6 7 5 2 0 3	10/1997	Schulze et al			
DD	5 6 7 5 2 2 2	10/1997	Fliege			
DD	5 6 7 9 0 8 7	10/1997	Lutz			
DD	5 6 8 5 7 9 8	11/1997	Lutz			
DD	5 6 9 1 5 8 8	11/1997	Lutz			
DD	5 6 9 8 9 0 5	12/1997	Ruthlein et al			
DD	5 7 1 3 4 2 7	2/1998	Lutz			
DD	5 7 1 4 8 5 1	2/1998	Antony et al			
DD	5 8 5 6 0 4 7	1/1999	Venkatesan et al			
DD	5 8 5 1 6 9 8	12/1998	Reichmann et al			
DD	4 2 1 6 6 8 4	8/1980	Hagin et al			
DD	4 3 3 1 9 1 1	5/1982	Park			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/24/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP § 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

2

OIPE ICAP
MAY 2 8 2004
PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE
CANCELLED

OIPE IAP100
JUL 0 7 2006
PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

11/229 762

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~10/382,577~~
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/03	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U. S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	4416360	11/1983	Fiala			
DD	4591016	5/1986	Matthews			
DD	4592454	6/1986	Michel			
DD	4674280	6/1987	Stuhr			
DD	4753078	6/1988	Gardner			
DD	5000003	3/1991	Wicks			
DD	5141173	8/1992	Lay			
DD	5242335	9/1993	Kutter			
DD	5264764	11/1993	Kuang			
DD	5915488	6/1999	Fliege			
DD	5947855	9/1999	Weiss			
DD	5971088	10/1999	Smith			

RECEIVED
JUN 0 2 2004
GROUP 3600

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER	[signature]	DATE CONSIDERED	11/29/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

k

OIPE JCIT0 MAY 2 8 2004 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

CANCELLED

OIPE IAP100 JUL 0 7 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

11/229762 ~~10 of 12~~

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~10/382,577~~
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/03	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

RECEIVED JUN 0 2 2004 GROUP 3600

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5971092	10/1999	Walker			
DD	5755302	5/1998	Lutz			
DD	5678646	10/1997	Fliege			
	~~5833022~~	~~11/1998~~	~~Welke~~			prev cited
DD	5816358	10/1998	Adler et al			
DD	3699351	10/1972	Addie			
DD	3719881	3/1973	Shibata et al			
DD	3753059	8/1973	Berman			
DD	3790816	2/1974	Berman			
DD	4099589	7/1978	Williams			
DD	4233858	11/1980	Rowlett			
DD	4287792	9/1981	Dailey			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/29/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP § 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

OIPE JC17 MAY 2 8 2004 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE CANCELLED

OIPE IAP100 JUL 0 7 2006 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~10/382,577~~
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/03	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

RECEIVED JUN 0 2 2004 GROUP 3600

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
DD	4411171	10/1983	Fiala			
DD	5403244	4/1995	Tankersley			
	~~5406128~~	~~4/1995~~	~~Hadley et al~~			cited on pg 6
DD	5549524	8/1996	Yang			
DD	5547433	8/1996	Yang			
DD	5570615	11/1996	Westphal et al			
DD	5915489	6/1999	Yamaguchi			
DD	6110066	8/2000	Nedungadi et al			
DD	6135914	10/2000	Yamaguchi et al			
DD	6387007	5/2002	Fini			
DD	6563230	5/2003	Nada			
DD ✓	6592484	7/2003	Tsai			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Yamaguchi et al, "Dual System - Newly Developed Hybrid System" (incomplete)
DD	Takaoka et al "A High-Expansion-Ratio Gasoline Engine for the Toyota Hybrid System", *Toyota Technical Review* ~~47, 2, 1998~~ Vol. 47, No. 2, April 1998
DD	Sasaki et al, "Toyota's Newly Developed Electric-Gasoline Hybrid Powertrain System" (publication data not available)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/24/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

OIPE MAY 2 8 2004 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE CANCELLED

OIPE JUL 0 7 2006 IAP100 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~10/382,577~~
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/03	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

RECEIVED JUN 0 2 2004 GROUP 3600

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	3904883	9/1975	Horwinski			
DD	6041877	3/2000	Yamada et al			
	~~5887670~~	~~3/1999~~	~~Tabata et al~~			prev. cited
DD	6123163	9/2000	Otsu et al			
DD	6260644	7/2001	Otsu			
DD	6253865	7/2001	Suzuki			
DD	6435296	8/2002	Arai			
DD	5258651	11/1993	Sherman			
DD	5789823	8/1998	Sherman			
DD	6007443	12/1999	Onimaru			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
	~~50099456~~	~~1/1977~~	~~Japan~~		NOT SUBMITTED		

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Ehsani et al "Propulsion System Design of Electric and Hybrid Vehicles", *IEEE Trans. Ind. Elec.*, 44 1 (1997)
DD	Ehsani et al, "Parametric Design of the Drive Train of an Electrically Peaking Hybrid (ELPH) Vehicle", SAE paper 970294 (1997)
DD	Yamaguchi et al, "Development of a New Hybrid System - Dual System", SAE papers 960231 (1996)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/29/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

OIPE JUL 0 7 2006 IAP100 PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

11/229 762

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION

DOCKET NUMBER	PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER	~~09/822,866~~ ~~10/382577~~
APPLICANT	Severinsky et al		
FILING DATE	04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT	~~N/A~~ 3616

JC490 U.S. PTO 10/382577 03/07/03

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5343970	9/94	Severinsky	180	65.2	
	5492192	2/96	Brooks et al			
	3566717	3/71	Berman et al			
	3732751	5/73 ~~5/93~~	Berman et al			
	4165795	8/79 ~~8/49~~	Lynch et al			
	5117931	6/92	Nishida			
	3923115	12/75	Helling			
	4588040	5/86	Albright, Jr., et al			
	5318142	6/94	Bates et al			
	5120282	6/92	Fjällström			
	4405029	9/83	Hunt			
	4470476	9/84	Hunt			
DD	4305254	12/81	Kawakatsu			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	1905641	6/76	Germany			X	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Simanaitis, "Electric Vehicles", *Road & Track*, May 1992, pp. 126-136
DD	Reynolds, "AC Propulsion CRX", *Road & Track*, Oct. 1992, pp. 126-129
DD	Kalberlah, "Electric Hybrid Drive Systems...", SAE Paper No. 910247, 1991
DD	Bullock, "The Technological Constraints of Mass,Volume, Dynamic Power Range and Energy Capacity..." SAE Paper No. 891659 1989
DD	Electric and Hybrid Vehicle Technology, vol. SP-915, SAE, Feb. 1992

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

Page ~~1 of 15~~

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION		
DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~09/822,866~~
APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	4407132	10/83	Kawakatsu			
	4335429	6/82	Kawakatsu			
	4180138	12/~~19~~ 79	Shea			
	4351405	9/82	Fields et al			
	4438342	3/84	Kenyon			
	4593779	6/86	Krohling			
	4923025	5/90	Ellers			
	3791473	2/74	Rosen			
	4269280	5/81	Rosen			
	4400997	8/83	Fiala			
	4697660	10/87	Wu et al			
	3970163	7/76	Kinoshita			
DD	4095664	6/78	Bray			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Wouk, "Hybrids: Then and Now", IEEE Spectrum, Vol. 32, 7, July 1995
DD	Bates, "Getting a Ford HEV on...", IEEE Spectrum, Vol. 32, 7, July 1995
DD	King et al, "Transit Bus takes...", IEEE Spectrum, Vol. 32, 7, July 1995
DD	Yamaguchi, "Toyota readies gasoline/electric hybrid system", Automotive Engineering, July 1997, pp. 55-58
DD	Wilson, "Not Electric, Not Gasoline..." Autoweek, June 2, 1997, pp. 17-18

EXAMINER: | DATE CONSIDERED: 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

~~Page 2 of 15~~

8/2/06

11/229 762

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION

DOCKET NUMBER	PAICE201
APPLICATION NUMBER	~~09/822,866~~ ~~10/~~
APPLICANT	Severinsky et al
FILING DATE	04/02/01
GROUP ART UNIT	N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	4148192	4/79	Cummings			
	4306156	12/81	Monaco et al			
	4313080	11/82	Park			
	4354144	10/82	McCarthy			
	4533011	8/85	Heidemeyer			
	4951769	8/90	Kawamura			
	5053632	10/91	Suzuki et al			
	3525874	8/70	Toy			
	3650345	8/72	Yardney			
	3837419	9/74	Nakamura			
	3874472	4/75	Deane			
	4042056	8/77	Horwinski			
DD	4562894	1/86	Yang			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Bulgin, "The Future Works, Quietly", Autoweek, Feb. 23, 1998 pp. 12-13
DD	"Toyota Electric and Hybrid Vehicles", a Toyota brochure
	Nagasaka et al, "Development of the Hybrid/Battery ECU...", SAE paper 981122, 1998, pp. 19-27

EXAMINER DMD DATE CONSIDERED 11/9/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

DMD

~~Page 3 of 15~~

8/2/06

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: 09/822,866
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DP	4611466	9/86	Keedy			
	4815334	3/89 ~~8/89~~	Lexen			
	3623568	11/71	Mori			
	3454122	7/69 ~~8/69~~	Grady, Jr.			
	3211249	10/65	Papst			
	2666492	1/54	Nims et al			
	3502165	3/70	Matsukata			
	1824014	9/31	Froelich			
	3888325	6/75 ~~10/75~~	Reinbeck			
	4578955	4/86	Medina			
	4765656	8/88	Weaver			
	4439989	4/84	Yamakawa			
DP	5301764	4/94	Gardner			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609: Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature]

~~Page 4 of 15~~

8/2/06

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~09/822,866~~ 11/229762
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5346031	9/94	Gardner			
	5667029	9/97	Urban et al			
	5704440	1/98	Urban et al			
	5495906	3/96	Furutani			
	5842534	12/98	Frank	180	65.2	
	5823280	10/98	Lateur	180	65.2	
	5826671	10/98	Nakae et al			
	5846155	12/98	Taniguchi et al			
	5845731	12/98	Buglione et al	180	65.2	
	5586613	12/96	Ehsani			
	5635805	6/97	Ibaraki et al			
	5249637	10/93	Heidl et al			
DD	5558588	9/96	Schmidt			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
[signature]	11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature]

~~Page 5 of 15~~

8/2/06

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~09/823,866~~ 11/229762
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5558595	9/96 ~~10/96~~	Schmidt et al			
	59~~80~~ 08 077	6/99	Moore			
	5722911	3/98	Ibaraki et al			
	5789882	8/98	Ibaraki et al			
	5550445	8/96	Nii			
	5650931	7/97	Nii			
	5865263	2/99	Yamaguchi et al			
	5788006	8/98	Yamaguchi et al			
	5791427	8/98	Yamaguchi et al			
	5799744	9/98	Yamaguchi et al			
	5806617	9/98	Yamaguchi et al			
	5899286	5/99	Yamaguchi et al			
DD	5433282	7/95	Moroto et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER: [signature] DATE CONSIDERED: 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature]

~~Page 6 of 15~~ 8/2/06

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICB201	APPLICATION NUMBER 09/~~822,~~866
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5778326	7/98	Moroto et al			
	5775449	7/98	Moroto et al			
	5697466	12/97	Moroto et al	180	65.2	
	5608308	3/97	Kiuchi et al			
	5614809	3/97	Kiuchi et al			
	5621304	4/97	Kiuchi et al			
	5893895	4/99	Ibaraki			
	5656921	8/97	Farrall			
	5773904	6/98	Schiebold et al			
	5515937	5/96	Adler et al			
	5650713	7/97	Takeuchi et al			
	5632352	5/97	~~Jeanneret~~ Jeanneret et al			
DD	5492189	2/96	Kreigler et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 1/14/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature]

~~Page 7 of 15~~
8/2/06

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~09/822,866~~
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	4354144	10/82	McCarthy			
	4697660	10/87	Wu et al			
	5831341	11/98	Selfors et al			
	5495907	3/96	Data			
	5672920	9/97	Donegan et al			
	5826671	10/98	Nakae et al			
	5757151	5/98	Donegan et al			
	6018694	1/00	Egami et al	701	102	
	5993351	11/99	Deguchi et al	477	5	
	5568023	10/96	Grayer et al			
	5890555	4/99	Miller			
	5172784	12/92	Varela, Jr.			
DD	4444285	4/84	Stewart et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER: [signature] DATE CONSIDERED: 1/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature]

~~Page 8 of~~ 15

8/2/06

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION

DOCKET NUMBER	PAICE201
APPLICATION NUMBER	~~09/822,866~~
APPLICANT	Severinsky et al
FILING DATE	04/02/01
GROUP ART UNIT	N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	4562894	1/86	Yang			
	4495451	1/85	Barnard			
	4583505	4/86	Frank et al			
	4597463	7/86	Barnard			
	5789881	8/98	Egami et al			
	5786640	7/98	Sakai et al			
	5176213	1/93	Kawai et al			
	5839530	11/98	Dietzel			
	5898282	4/99	Drozdz et al			
	5327987	7/94	Abdelmalek			
	5415245	5/95	Hammond			
	5705859	1/98	Karg et al			
DD	5713425	2/98	Buschhaus et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER DD | DATE CONSIDERED 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

DD

~~Page 9 of 15~~

8/2/06

11/229 762

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~09/833,866~~
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5820172	10/98	Brigham et al			
	5713426	2/98	Okamura			
	5713814	2/98	Hara et al			
	5823281	10/98	Yamaguchi et al			
	5427196	6/95	Yamaguchi et al			
	5839533	11/98	Mikami et al			
	5725064	3/98	Ibaraki et al			
	5755303	5/98	Yamamoto et al			
	5778997	7/98	Setaka et al			
	5785136	7/98	Falkenmayer et al			
	5785137	7/98	Reuyl			
	5785138	7/98	Yoshida			
DD	5566774	10/96	Yoshida			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
[signature]	11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature]

~~Page 10 of 15~~

8/2/06

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~09/833,866~~
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5492190	2/96	Yoshida			
	5441122	8/95	Yoshida			
	5558175	9/96	Sherman			
	5558173	9/96	Sherman			
	5788597	8/98	Boll et al			
	5788003	8/98	Spiera			
	5791426	8/98	Yamada			
	5323868	6/94	Kawashima			
	5545928	8/96	Kotani			
	5291960	3/94	Brandenburg et al			
	5255733	10/93	King			
	5664635	9/97	Koga et al			
DD	5463294	10/95	Valdivia			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER: [signature] DATE CONSIDERED: 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

~~Page 11 of 15~~

[signature] 8/2/06

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER 09/822,866
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5562565	10/96	Moroto et al			
	5513719	5/~~6~~/96	Moroto et al			
	5513718	5/96	Suzuki et al			
	5833022	11/98	Welke			
	5841201	11/98	Tabata et al			
	5887670	3/99	Tabata et al			
	5862497	1/99	Yano et al			
	5637987	6/~~96~~ 97	Fattic et al			
	5643119	7/97 ~~4/94~~	Yamaguchi et al			
	5644200	7/97 ~~4/94~~	Yang			
	5489001	2/96	Yang			
	5653302	8/~~96~~ 97	Edye et al			
DD	5350031	9/~~6~~/94	Sugiyama et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature]

~~Page 13 of 15~~

8/2/06

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~09/822,866~~
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	5345761	9 ~~6~~/94	King et al			
	5337848	8/94	Bader			
	5327992	7 ~~6~~/94	Boll			
	5589743	12/96	King			
	5345154	9/94	King			
	4862009	8/89	King			
	5372213	12/94	Hasebe et al			
	5495912	3 ~~5~~/96	Gray, Jr., et al			
	5588498	12/96	Kitada			
	5492189	2/96	Kriegler			
	5193634	3/93	Masut			
	5125469	6/92	Scott			
DD	4511012	4/85	Rauneker			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/17/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609: Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature]

~~Page 13 of 15~~

8/2/06

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~09/822,866~~
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	4631456	12/86	Drescher et al			
	4680986	7/87	Elsner			
	4953646	9/90	Kim			
	5927417	7/99	Brunner et al	180	65.6	
	6048289	4/00	Hattori et al	477	15	
	6026921	2/00	Aoyama et al	180	65.2	
	6053842	4/00	Kitada et al	477	5	
	5767637	6/98	Lansberry			
	5934395	8/99	Koide et al	180	65.2	
	5969624	10/99	Sakai et al	340	636	
	5986376	11/99	Werson			
	6018198	1/00	Tsuzuki et al			
DD	6054844	4/00	Frank	322	16	

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature]

~~Page 14 of 15~~

8/2/06

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: 09/822,866
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 04/02/01	GROUP ART UNIT: N/A

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	6059059	~~9/99~~ 5/00	Schmidt-Brucken			
	6098733	8/00	Ibaraki et al			
	6161384	12/00	Reinbold et al			
	5996347	12/99	Nagae et al			
	6109025	8/00	Murata et al			
	6131538	10/00	Kanai			
	4774811	10/88	Kawamura			
DD	5327992	7/94	Boll			
	~~5249637~~	~~10/93~~	~~Heidl et al~~			DUPLICAT
	~~5495906~~	~~3/96~~	~~Furutani~~			"
	~~6018694~~	~~1/00~~	~~Egami et al~~			"
DD	6209672	4/01	Severinsky			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature]

~~Page 15 of 15~~

8/2/06

11/229762

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION

DOCKET NUMBER	~~ANA201~~
APPLICATION NUMBER	~~09/823,856~~ ~~10/382577~~
APPLICANT	Severinsky et al
FILING DATE	April 1, 2001
GROUP ART UNIT	~~3619~~ 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	6307276	10/2001	Bader			
	6131680	10/2000	Nii et al			
	5839533	11/1998	Mikami et al			
	6300735	10/2001	Stemler			
	6318487	11/2001	Yanase et al			
	6278915	8/2001	Deguchi et al			
	6190282	2/2001	Deguchi et al			
	6232733	5/2001	Obayashi et al			
	5788004	8/1998	Friedmann et al			
	6146302	11/2000	Kashiwase			
	6116363	9/2000	Frank			
DD	6074321	6/2000	Maeda et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION

DOCKET NUMBER	PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER	~~09/832,066~~
APPLICANT	Severinsky et al		
FILING DATE	4/2/2001	GROUP ART UNIT	~~3619~~

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	Re36678	5/2000	Moroto et al			
DD	6338391	1/2002	Severinsky et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 11/19/07

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

1

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

 FORD 1312

11/229,762

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER: PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER: ~~09/822,866~~ 10/382577
	APPLICANT: Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE: 4/2/2001	GROUP ART UNIT: 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE
DD	6394209	5/2002	Goehring et al			
	6081042	6/2000	Tabata et al			
	5982045	11/1999	Tabata et al			
	5993350	11/1999	Lawrie et al			
	6019698	02/2000	Lawrie et al			
	5979257	11/1999	Lawrie			
	6006620	12/1999	Lawrie et al			
DD	6059064	05/2000	Nagano et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER: [signature] DATE CONSIDERED: 11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

1

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~09/822,866~~ 10/382577
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 4/2/01	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLASS	FILING DATE

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	63 8 2 2 8 3	6/1988	Japan				
DD	06 1 4 4 0 2 0	11/1992	Japan				
DD	06 0 8 0 0 4 8	11/1992	Japan				
DD	55 0 6 9 7 2 4	11/1978	Japan				
DD	04 2 7 4 9 2 6	2/1991	Japan				

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
[signature]	11/19/04

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

[signature] 8/2/06

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

1

OIPE IAP100
JUL 07 2006
PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~10/382,577~~ 11/229762
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
DD	5371412	12/1994	Iwashita			
	5412251	5/1995	Furutani			
	5993169	11/1999	Adachi et al			
	6007451	12/1999	Matsui et al			
	6032753	3/2000	Yamazaki et al			
	6155364	12/2000	Nagano et al			
	5539318	7/1996	Sasaki			
	5680050	10/1997	Kawai et al			
	5964309	10/1999	Kimura et al			
	5883496	3/1999	Esaki et al			
DD	5905360	5/1999	Ukita			
	~~6158541~~	~~12/2000~~	~~Tabata et al~~			Duplicate

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Trial and deposition transcripts of witnesses relied upon to assert invalidity of parent patents in Civil Docket No. 2:04-CV-211-DF (E.D. Texas)
DD	Claim construction order entered September 28, 2005 in Civil Docket No. 2:04-CV-211-DF (E.D. Texas)
DD	Toyota Hybrid System, Toyota Press Information, Tokyo, 1997
DD	Prius Hybrid EV, Toyota brochure, undated

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 8/2/06

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION

DOCKET NUMBER	PAICE201.DIV
APPLICATION NUMBER	~~10/382,577~~ 11/229762
APPLICANT	Severinsky et al
FILING DATE	3/7/2003
GROUP ART UNIT	3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
DD	5 2 5 3 9 2 9	10/1993	Ohori			
	5 3 2 6 1 5 8	7/1994	Ohori			
	5 4 7 6 1 5 1	12/1995	Tsuchida et al			
	5 5 6 9 9 9 5	10/1996	Kusaka et al			
	5 6 3 7 9 7 7	6/1997	Saito et al			
	5 7 8 9 9 3 5	8/1998	Suga et al			
	5 8 9 5 1 0 0	4/1999	Ito et al			
	5 9 5 1 1 1 5	9/1999	Sakai et al			
	5 9 7 3 4 6 3	10/1999	Okuda et al			
	6 0 5 3 8 4 1	4/2000	Koide et al			
	5 9 2 9 5 9 4	7/1999	Nonobe et al			
DD	5 9 2 4 3 9 5	7/1999	Moriya et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	0 1 3 6 0 5 5	03.04.85	European Patent Office				

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Miller et al, "Starter-Alternator for Hybrid Electric Vehicle.." (1996)
DD	Johnston et al, "The Design and Development of the [UC Davis].." (No date)
DD	Johnston et al, "The Design and Development of the [UC Davis].." (1997)
DD	Alexander et al, "A Mid-Sized Sedan Designed for High Fuel..." (No date)
DD	"PRIUS New Car Features", (Toyota manual) (1998)
DD	TRW Systems Group, "Analysis and Advanced Design Study..." (1971)

EXAMINER [signature]	DATE CONSIDERED 8/2/06

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~10/382,577~~ 11/229762
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
DD	4 6 4 6 8 9 6	3/1987	Hammond et al			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	0 7 6 9 4 0 3	23.4.1997	European Patent Office				
	7 1 7 2 1 9 6	29.9.1994	Japan			X	
	9 1 7 0 5 3 3	9.5.1996	Japan			abst.	
	5 3 1 9 1 1 0	5.19.1992	Japan			abst.	
DD	3 2 7 3 9 3 3	12.5.1991	Japan			abst.	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Gelb, "An Electromechanical Transmission for Hybrid Vehicle..." (1971)
DD	Hirose et al, "The New High Expansion Ratio Engine..." (1997)
DD	Hong, "Toyota's Hybrid Program", *Road & Track*, August 1997
DD	Law, "Toyota Tech", *Car & Driver*, August 1997
DD	"Dual-Engine Fuel Saver", *Popular Mechanics*, July 1997
DD	"Toyota Launches Break-Through Hybrid EV", *Motor Trend*, September 1997

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 8/2/06

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~10/382,577~~
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	7268922	10.17.1995	Japan			abst.	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	"Toyota touts advances in safety, emissions", *Automotive News*, 4/28/97
DD	"'96 North Wind Performance", undated
DD	Wakefield, "History of the Electric Automobile - Hybrid Electric Vehicles" (1998)
DD	"Escort 92-94", undated
DD	"Near-Term Hybrid Vehicle Program", General Electric Company (1979)

EXAMINER [signature] DATE CONSIDERED 8/2/06

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER	PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER	~~10/382,577~~
	APPLICANT	Severinsky et al		
	FILING DATE	3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT	361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
DD	913846	3/1909	Pieper			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	"Electric and Hybrid Vehicle Design Studies", SAE SP-1243 (1997)
DD	Gelb, "The case for Constant Speed Accessory Drives", (1975)
DD	Sasaki, "Toyota's Newly Developed Hybrid Powertrain", (1998)
DD	"Near-Term Hybrid Vehicle Program, Phase 1", General Electric Co. (1979)
DD	"Near-Term Hybrid Vehicle Program, Phase 1, App. A.", Gen'l Elec. (1979)
DD	"Joint Feasibility Study of Hybrid Vehicle, Final Report (1982)

EXAMINER	[signature]	DATE CONSIDERED	8/2/06

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

11/229 762

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~10/382,577~~
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 361

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	North American Technology Seminar plans, April 1997
DD	Hermance, THS Technical Explanation (undated)
DD	"Toyota" brochure describing Prius (undated)
DD	Hermance, "Toyota Hybrid System" (undated)

EXAMINER [signature] | DATE CONSIDERED 8/2/06

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE CITATION IN AN APPLICATION	DOCKET NUMBER PAICE201.DIV	APPLICATION NUMBER ~~10/382,577~~ 11/229762
	APPLICANT Severinsky et al	
	FILING DATE 3/7/2003	GROUP ART UNIT 3616

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

EXAMINER INITIAL	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	NAME	CLASS	SUBCLAS	FILING DATE
DD	5412293	5/1995	Minesawa et al			
DD	5883484	3/1999	Akao			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

	DOCUMENT NUMBER	DATE	COUNTRY	CLASS	SUBCLASS	TRANSLATION YES	TRANSLATION NO
DD	8214592	8.20.1996	Japan			abst.	
DD	10663833	3.6.1998	Japan			abst.	

OTHER DOCUMENTS (Including Author, Title, Date, Pertinent Pages, Etc)

DD	Cuddy et al, "Analysis of the Fuel Economy Benefit..." SAE 970289 (1997)
DD	"Team Paradigm Shines in FutureCar Competition" (1996)
DD	Takaoka et al, "Study of the Engine Optimized for Hybrid System" (undated)
DD	Gelb et al, "Cost and Emission Studies of a Heat Engine/Battery.." (1972)
DD	Gelb et al, "Design and Performance Characteristics..." SAE 690169 (1969)
DD	"Electric/Hybrid Vehicles: Alternative Powerplants..." SAE SP-1284 (1997)

EXAMINER	DATE CONSIDERED
[signature]	8/2/06

EXAMINER: Initial if citation considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP §609; Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to the applicant.

11/229 762

Notice of References Cited	Application/Control No. ~~09/822,866~~	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination SEVERINSKY ET AL.	
	Examiner David Dunn	Art Unit 3616	Page 1 of 1

JC498 U.S. PTO 10/382577 03/07/03

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Name	Classification
DD	A	US-6,315,068	11-2001	Hoshiya et al.	180/65.2
DD	B	US-6,330,498	12-2001	Tamagawa et al.	701/22
DD	C	US-6,359,404	03-2002	Sugiyama et al.	318/432
DD	D	US-6470983	10-2002	Amano et al.	180/65.2
	E	US-			
	F	US-			
	G	US-			
	H	US-			
	I	US-			
	J	US-			
	K	US-			
	L	US-			
	M	US-			

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Country	Name	Classification
	N					
	O					
	P					
	Q					
	R					
	S					
	T					

NON-PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		Include as applicable: Author, Title Date, Publisher, Edition or Volume, Pertinent Pages)
	U	
	V	
	W	
	X	

11/19/04

*A copy of this reference is not being furnished with this Office action. (See MPEP § 707.05(a).)
Dates in MM-YYYY format are publication dates. Classifications may be US or foreign.

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office
PTO-892 (Rev 01-2001)

Notice of References Cited

Part of Paper No. 14

8/2/06

BEST AVAILABLE COPY

Interview Summary	Application No. 11/229,762	Applicant(s) SEVERINSKY ET AL.	
	Examiner David Dunn	Art Unit 3616	

All participants (applicant, applicant's representative, PTO personnel):

(1) David Dunn. (3)_____.

(2) Micheal de Angeli. (4)_____.

Date of Interview: 18 October 2006.

Type: a)☐ Telephonic b)☐ Video Conference
c)☒ Personal [copy given to: 1)☐ applicant 2)☒ applicant's representative]

Exhibit shown or demonstration conducted: d)☐ Yes e)☒ No.
If Yes, brief description: _____.

Claim(s) discussed: Draft amendment .

Identification of prior art discussed: n/a.

Agreement with respect to the claims f)☐ was reached. g)☒ was not reached. h)☐ N/A.

Substance of Interview including description of the general nature of what was agreed to if an agreement was reached, or any other comments: Claims 17-322 were discussed and agreed to be allowable. New claims 329-335 and 337-343 were discussed and will be reviewed in further detail upon submission of an amendment.

(A fuller description, if necessary, and a copy of the amendments which the examiner agreed would render the claims allowable, if available, must be attached. Also, where no copy of the amendments that would render the claims allowable is available, a summary thereof must be attached.)

THE FORMAL WRITTEN REPLY TO THE LAST OFFICE ACTION MUST INCLUDE THE SUBSTANCE OF THE INTERVIEW. (See MPEP Section 713.04). If a reply to the last Office action has already been filed, APPLICANT IS GIVEN A NON-EXTENDABLE PERIOD OF THE LONGER OF ONE MONTH OR THIRTY DAYS FROM THIS INTERVIEW DATE, OR THE MAILING DATE OF THIS INTERVIEW SUMMARY FORM, WHICHEVER IS LATER, TO FILE A STATEMENT OF THE SUBSTANCE OF THE INTERVIEW. See Summary of Record of Interview requirements on reverse side or on attached sheet.

Examiner Note: You must sign this form unless it is an Attachment to a signed Office action.

Examiner's signature, if required

Summary of Record of Interview Requirements

Manual of Patent Examining Procedure (MPEP), Section 713.04, Substance of Interview Must be Made of Record
A complete written statement as to the substance of any face-to-face, video conference, or telephone interview with regard to an application must be made of record in the application whether or not an agreement with the examiner was reached at the interview.

Title 37 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) § 1.133 Interviews
Paragraph (b)
In every instance where reconsideration is requested in view of an interview with an examiner, a complete written statement of the reasons presented at the interview as warranting favorable action must be filed by the applicant. An interview does not remove the necessity for reply to Office action as specified in §§ 1.111, 1.135. (35 U.S.C. 132)

37 CFR §1.2 Business to be transacted in writing.
All business with the Patent or Trademark Office should be transacted in writing. The personal attendance of applicants or their attorneys or agents at the Patent and Trademark Office is unnecessary. The action of the Patent and Trademark Office will be based exclusively on the written record in the Office. No attention will be paid to any alleged oral promise, stipulation, or understanding in relation to which there is disagreement or doubt.

The action of the Patent and Trademark Office cannot be based exclusively on the written record in the Office if that record is itself incomplete through the failure to record the substance of interviews.

It is the responsibility of the applicant or the attorney or agent to make the substance of an interview of record in the application file, unless the examiner indicates he or she will do so. It is the examiner's responsibility to see that such a record is made and to correct material inaccuracies which bear directly on the question of patentability.

Examiners must complete an Interview Summary Form for each interview held where a matter of substance has been discussed during the interview by checking the appropriate boxes and filling in the blanks. Discussions regarding only procedural matters, directed solely to restriction requirements for which interview recordation is otherwise provided for in Section 812.01 of the Manual of Patent Examining Procedure, or pointing out typographical errors or unreadable script in Office actions or the like, are excluded from the interview recordation procedures below. Where the substance of an interview is completely recorded in an Examiners Amendment, no separate Interview Summary Record is required.

The Interview Summary Form shall be given an appropriate Paper No., placed in the right hand portion of the file, and listed on the "Contents" section of the file wrapper. In a personal interview, a duplicate of the Form is given to the applicant (or attorney or agent) at the conclusion of the interview. In the case of a telephone or video-conference interview, the copy is mailed to the applicant's correspondence address either with or prior to the next official communication. If additional correspondence from the examiner is not likely before an allowance or if other circumstances dictate, the Form should be mailed promptly after the interview rather than with the next official communication.

The Form provides for recordation of the following information:
- Application Number (Series Code and Serial Number)
- Name of applicant
- Name of examiner
- Date of interview
- Type of interview (telephonic, video-conference, or personal)
- Name of participant(s) (applicant, attorney or agent, examiner, other PTO personnel, etc.)
- An indication whether or not an exhibit was shown or a demonstration conducted
- An identification of the specific prior art discussed
- An indication whether an agreement was reached and if so, a description of the general nature of the agreement (may be by attachment of a copy of amendments or claims agreed as being allowable). Note: Agreement as to allowability is tentative and does not restrict further action by the examiner to the contrary.
- The signature of the examiner who conducted the interview (if Form is not an attachment to a signed Office action)

It is desirable that the examiner orally remind the applicant of his or her obligation to record the substance of the interview of each case. It should be noted, however, that the Interview Summary Form will not normally be considered a complete and proper recordation of the interview unless it includes, or is supplemented by the applicant or the examiner to include, all of the applicable items required below concerning the substance of the interview.

A complete and proper recordation of the substance of any interview should include at least the following applicable items:
1) A brief description of the nature of any exhibit shown or any demonstration conducted,
2) an identification of the claims discussed,
3) an identification of the specific prior art discussed,
4) an identification of the principal proposed amendments of a substantive nature discussed, unless these are already described on the Interview Summary Form completed by the Examiner,
5) a brief identification of the general thrust of the principal arguments presented to the examiner,
   (The identification of arguments need not be lengthy or elaborate. A verbatim or highly detailed description of the arguments is not required. The identification of the arguments is sufficient if the general nature or thrust of the principal arguments made to the examiner can be understood in the context of the application file. Of course, the applicant may desire to emphasize and fully describe those arguments which he or she feels were or might be persuasive to the examiner.)
6) a general indication of any other pertinent matters discussed, and
7) if appropriate, the general results or outcome of the interview unless already described in the Interview Summary Form completed by the examiner.

Examiners are expected to carefully review the applicant's record of the substance of an interview. If the record is not complete and accurate, the examiner will give the applicant an extendable one month time period to correct the record.

Examiner to Check for Accuracy

If the claims are allowable for other reasons of record, the examiner should send a letter setting forth the examiner's version of the statement attributed to him or her. If the record is complete and accurate, the examiner should place the indication, "Interview Record OK" on the paper recording the substance of the interview along with the date and the examiner's initials.

REMARKS

The Examiner is thanked for his courtesy in extending an interview to applicants' undersigned attorney on October 18, 2006, at which amendments to the claims substantially as above were discussed, as recorded in the Examiner Interview Summary form.

Applicant is in receipt of the Office Action dated August 10, 2006. An obviousness type double patenting rejection was made with respect to copending Ser. No. 10/382,577, now patent 7,104,347. The Examiner indicated that claims 17 - 48 would be allowable subject to entry of a Terminal Disclaimer. A Terminal Disclaimer in proper form is enclosed herewith.

Additionally, the Examiner indicated that claims 55 - 57, 62 - 67, 70, and 71, would be allowable if rewritten in independent form. Claim 49 has been rewritten to include the subject matter of claim 55, and thus is allowable. Correspondingly, claims 55 and 73 - 75 have been cancelled. Furthermore, new claims 76-322 are based on the allowable subject matter as indicated above and are also allowable.

More specifically, new independent claim 100 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 56; new independent claim 135 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 57; new independent claim 168 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 62; new independent claim 182 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 63; new independent claim 195 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 64; new independent claim 209 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 66; new independent claim 236 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 67; new independent claim 272 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 70; and new independent claim 298 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 71.

Sets of dependent claims have also been added reciting additional aspects of the invention and which are clearly supported by the disclosure of the application as filed. Specifically, several sets of claims, e.g. claims 76 - 85, have been added reciting specifics of the preferred ranges of voltage and current, and their ratio; these are supported at, for example, pages 89 - 91 of the application text. Similarly, claims, e.g., claim 86, have been added specifying that the variable-ratio transmission previously in the claims comprises a planetary gear mechanism; this is clearly supported, at pages 91 - 94. Finally, claims, e.g., claim 87, have been added specifying that the traction motor is sufficiently powerful to satisfy the Federal urban driving cycle without use of torque from the engine; this is supported at page 88, lines 25 - 29 of the application. To the extent this incorporation of a standard which might change over time could be considered to render the claim indefinite, applicants refer to this standard as effective as of September 9, 1999, the filing date of predecessor application Ser. No. 09/392,743, now patent 6,338,391, where support for this limitation first appeared.

Finally, new claims 323 - 337 have been added. These claims are similar in certain respects to claims previously allowed in this and predecessor applications. For example, claims 323 - 332 have similarity in certain respects to claims 1 and 2 of patent 6,209,672, and include limitations related to maximum DC voltage, current, and the ratio therebetween, as above. Claims 333 - 337 have similarity in certain respects to claim 17 of this application, and include a limitation related to control of the engine as well as limitations related to the voltage, current and ratio therebetween, as above.

Reconsideration and allowance of all claims is earnestly solicited.

Respectfully submitted,

Oct. 24, 2006
Dated

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of	
Severinsky et al	Examiner: David Dunn
Serial No.: 11/229,762	Group Art Unit: 3616
Filed: January 13, 2006	Att. Dkt.: PAICE201.DIV.2
For: Hybrid Vehicles	

Hon. Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks
Washington, DC 20231

TERMINAL DISCLAIMER

Sir:

Your petitioner, PAICE LLC, residing at 380 SE Mizner Blvd, Suite 1721, Boca Raton Florida 33432, by its undersigned attorney of record, represents that it is the assignee of the entire right, title and interest in the above-identified application by virtue of an Assignment recorded in the records of the Patent and Trademark Office at Reel 011932, Frame 0488. Your petitioner is also the assignee of Patent 7,104,347, issued September 12, 2006, on application Ser. No. 10/382,577. The undersigned has reviewed all the evidentiary documents accompanying or referred to in the instant Terminal Disclaimer and it is certified that, to the best of the undersigned's knowledge and belief, title to the present application and the issued patent is in the assignee identified above.

Your petitioner, PAICE LLC, hereby disclaims the terminal part of any patent granted on the above-identified application which would extend beyond the expiration date of patent 7,104,347, and hereby agrees that any patent so granted on the above-identified application shall be enforceable only for and during such period that the legal title to any such patent shall be the same as the legal title to said patent 7,104,347, this agreement to run with any patent granted on the above-identified application and to be binding upon the grantee, its successors or assigns.

PAICE LLC
by its attorney of record:

10/24/06
Dated

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190

IFW 4

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of	
Severinsky et al	Examiner: David Dunn
Serial No.: 11/229,762	Group Art Unit: 3616
Filed: January 13, 2006	Atty. Dkt.:PAICE201.DIV.2
For: Hybrid Vehicles	

TRANSMITTAL OF AMENDMENT

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P. O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

Sir:

Transmitted herewith is an amendment in the above - identified application.

___ A check for the additional claim fee of $ 0.00 as calculated below is enclosed for this amendment.

X The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any underpayment (or to credit overpayment) to our Deposit Account No. 04-0401. A duplicate copy of this sheet is attached.

X Please charge the fee for this amendment to the credit card specified on the accompanying Credit Card Payment Form.

	TOTAL CLAIMS	CLAIMS PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR		PRESENT EXTRA		LARGE ENTITY ADDITIONAL RATE	
TOTAL	317	59	=	258	Extra	x 50	$12900.00
INDEP.	22	4	=	18	Extra	x 200	$ 3600.00
						TOTAL:	$16500.00

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: 10/24/06

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown RI 02835
401-423-3190

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of :

Severinsky et al	: Examiner: Dunn
Serial No.: 11/229,762	: Group Art Unit: 3616
Filed: January 13, 2006	: Att.Dkt:PAICE201.DIV.2
For: Hybrid Vehicles	

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

AMENDMENT

Sir:

In response to the Office Action mailed August 10, 2006, kindly amend the above-identified application as follows:

IN THE CLAIMS:

Amend the claims to appear as follows:

1 – 16. (Canceled)

17. (Previously Presented) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

one or more wheels;

an internal combustion engine operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a first electric motor coupled to the engine;

a second electric motor operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a battery coupled to the first and second electric motors, operable to:

provide current to the first and/or the second electric motors; and

accept current from the first and second electric motors; and

a controller, operable to control the flow of electrical and mechanical power between the engine, the first and the second electric motors, and the one or more wheels;

wherein the controller is operable to operate the engine when torque required from the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle and/or to drive one or more of the first or the second motors to charge the battery is at least equal to a setpoint (SP) above which the torque produced by the engine is efficiently produced, and wherein the torque produced by the engine when operated at the SP is substantially less than the maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine.

18. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to stop the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

19. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to stop the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

20. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein to operate the engine, the controller is operable to start the engine via the first electric motor if the engine is not already running.

21. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is further operable to monitor patterns of vehicle operation over time and vary the SP accordingly.

22. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is further operable to:

monitor road load (RL) on the hybrid vehicle over time; and

control transition between propulsion of the hybrid vehicle by the first and/or the second electric motors to propulsion by the engine responsive to the RL reaching the SP, wherein the transition only occurs when:

the RL > the SP for at least a first length of time; or

the RL > a second setpoint (SP2), wherein the SP2 > the SP.

23. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 22, wherein if the engine is not started, the controller is operable to start the engine for the transition between propulsion of the hybrid vehicle by the first and/or the second electric motors to propulsion by the engine.

24. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 22, wherein the controller is further operable to control transition from propulsion of the hybrid vehicle by the engine to propulsion by the first and/or the second electric motors such that the transition occurs only when the RL < the SP for at least a second length of time.

25. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 24, wherein the first length of time is the same as the second length of time.

26. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 24, wherein the first length of time and the second length of time are predetermined.

27. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 24, wherein the controller is further operable to stop the engine after the transition between propulsion of the hybrid vehicle by the engine to propulsion by the first and/or the second electric motors.

28. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to vary the SP as a function of speed of the engine.

29. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the SP is at least approximately 20% of the MTO of the engine when normally-aspirated.

30. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO of the engine when normally-aspirated.

31. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the SP is less than approximately 70% of the MTO of the engine when normally-aspirated.

32. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to implement a plurality of operating modes responsive to road load (RL) and the SP, wherein both the RL and the SP are expressed as percentages of the MTO of the engine when normally-aspirated, and wherein the operating modes comprise:

a low-load mode I, wherein, when the RL < the SP, the second electric motor is operable to provide torque to propel the hybrid vehicle;

a highway cruising mode IV, wherein, when the SP < the RL < the MTO, the engine is operable to provide torque to propel the hybrid vehicle, and wherein the controller is operable to start the engine if the engine is not running to enter the highway cruising mode IV; and

an acceleration mode V, wherein, when the RL > the MTO, the engine, the first electric motor, and/or the second electric motor is operable to provide torque to propel the hybrid vehicle, and wherein the controller is operable to start the engine if the engine is not running to enter the acceleration mode V.

33. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 32, wherein the controller is operable to decouple the engine and the first electric motor from the one or more wheels during operation in the mode I and couple the engine and the first electric motor to the one or more wheels during operation in the modes IV and V.

34. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 32, wherein the plurality of operating modes further comprise a low-speed battery charging mode II, wherein, when the RL < the SP and a state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level:

the controller is operable to decouple the engine and the first electric motor from the one or more wheels and start the engine if the engine is not running to enter the battery charging mode II;

the second electric motor is operable to provide torque to propel the hybrid vehicle; and

the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to the first motor for charging the battery.

35. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 32, wherein the controller is operable to control direct transition from operation of the hybrid vehicle in the mode I to operation of the hybrid vehicle in the mode V in response to operator input, and wherein the operator input specifies a rapid increase in torque to be applied to the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

36. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 32, further comprising a turbocharger controllably coupled to the internal combustion engine, operable to increase the MTO of the engine;

wherein the plurality of operation modes further comprise a sustained high-power turbocharged mode VI, wherein, when the RL > the MTO for more than a predetermined time T, the controller is operable to engage the turbocharger to increase the effective MTO of the engine.

37. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 36, wherein the controller is operable to vary the time T with respect to a state of charge of the battery.

38. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, further comprising a turbocharger controllably coupled to the internal combustion engine, operable to increase the MTO of the engine.

39. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to receive operator input of a desired cruising speed, and thereafter control instantaneous torque output of the engine and/or one or more of the first or the second electric motors in accordance with variation in RL so as to maintain a substantially constant vehicle speed.

40. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the battery is operable to be regeneratively charged when instantaneous torque output by the internal combustion engine > the RL, when the RL is negative, and/or when braking is initiated by the operator.

41. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein total torque available to the one or more wheels from the engine is no greater than total torque available from the first and second electric motors combined.

42. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the engine and first electric motor are coupled to a first set of the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle and the second electric motor is coupled to a second set of the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

43. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, further comprising a variable-ratio transmission disposed between the engine and the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

44. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to rotate the engine via the first electric motor before starting the engine such that cylinders of the engine are heated by compression of air therein.

45. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to

limit a rate of change of torque produced by the engine, such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs substantially at a stoichiometric ratio, and wherein if the engine is incapable of supplying an instantaneous torque required, the controller is operable to transfer additional torque from one or more of the first or the second electric motors.

46. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

47. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 46, wherein the clutch connects a first output shaft of or driven by the engine and the first electric motor with a second output shaft of or driven by the second electric motor coupled to the one or more wheels, and wherein the controller is operable to control the speeds of the engine and the first electric motor and of the second motor such that when the clutch is engaged, the speeds of the first and second output shafts are substantially equal.

48. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to start and operate the engine at torque output levels less than SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

49. (Currently Amended) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than a setpoint (SP);

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO; ~~and~~

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO; and monitoring patterns of vehicle operation over time and varying the SP accordingly.

50. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

51. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

52. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to:

store power from the at least one electric motor and/or the engine; and

transmit power to the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle.

53. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery indicates the need to do so, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to propel the hybrid vehicle and to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, wherein a first portion of the torque equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, wherein a second portion of the torque in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

54. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle and said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle, each comprises:

if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

55. (Canceled)

56. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

monitoring the RL over time;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine to propel the hybrid vehicle is performed when:

the RL > the SP for at least a predetermined time; or

the RL > a second setpoint (SP2), wherein the SP2 is a larger percentage of the MTO than the SP.

57. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

monitoring the RL over time;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle is performed when the RL < the SP for at least a predetermined amount of time.

58. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a desired cruising speed;

controlling instantaneous engine torque output and operation of the at least one electric motor in accordance with variation in the RL to maintain the speed of the hybrid vehicle according to the desired cruising speed.

59. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO.

60. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49,

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV; and

wherein said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V.

61. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 60, further comprising:

decoupling the engine from wheels of the hybrid vehicle for operation in mode I; and

coupling the engine to the wheels for operation in modes IV and V.

62. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 60, wherein the at least one electric motors comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to store power from the engine and/or the at least one electric motor and transmit power to the at least one electric motor to propel the vehicle;

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level and when the RL < the SP, wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery composes a low-load battery charging mode II, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises:

decoupling the engine from wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

the engine providing torque at least equal to the SP to the first electric motor to charge the battery;

wherein during said operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level, the hybrid vehicle is propelled by torque provided by the second electric motor in response to energy supplied by the battery.

63. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 60, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a change in required torque to be applied to wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

if the received operator input specifies a rapid increase in the required torque, changing operation from operating mode I directly to operating mode V.

64. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 60, wherein the hybrid vehicle further

comprises a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine, and wherein said operating both the engine and the at least one electric motor occurs when the RL > the MTO for less than a predetermined time T, wherein the method further comprises:

operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine when desired, wherein said operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine occurs when the RL > the MTO for more than the predetermined time T, and wherein said operating the turbocharger composes a turbocharged operation mode VI.

65. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 64, further comprising:

varying the time T responsive to the state of charge of the battery.

66. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, wherein the hybrid vehicle further comprises a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine, wherein the method further comprises:

operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine when desired.

67. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

regeneratively charging a battery of the hybrid vehicle when instantaneous torque output of the engine > the RL, when the RL is negative, and/or when braking is initiated by an operator of the hybrid vehicle.

68. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, wherein the hybrid vehicle comprises a variable-ratio transmission disposed between the engine and the wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

69. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

70. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

controlling the engine such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs substantially at a stoichiometric ratio, wherein said controlling the engine comprises limiting a rate of change of torque output of the engine; and

if the engine is incapable of supplying instantaneous torque required to propel the hybrid vehicle, supplying additional torque from the at least one electric motor.

71. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

rotating the engine before starting the engine such that its cylinders are heated by compression of air therein.

72. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

operating the engine at torque output levels less than the SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

73 - 75 (Canceled).

76. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

77. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 76, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

78. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 76, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

79. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

80. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

81. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the hybrid vehicle further comprises:

a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to said second electric motor, operable to accept AC or DC current and convert the current to DC or AC current respectively;

a second AC-DC converter coupled to said first electric motor, at least operable to accept AC current and convert the current to DC;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters, wherein said battery is operable to store DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and provide DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

82. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 81, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

83. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 81, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

84. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 81, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

85. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 81, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

86. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 43, wherein said variable-ratio transmission disposed between the engine and the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle comprises a planetary gear mechanism.

87. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the second electric motor is sufficiently

powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

88. (New) The method of claim 49,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

89. (New) The method of claim 88, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

90. (New) The method of claim 88, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

91. (New) The method of claim 49,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

92. (New) The method of claim 49,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

93. (New) The method of claim 49, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

94. (New) The method of claim 93, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

95. (New) The method of claim 93, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

96. (New) The method of claim 93, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

97. (New) The method of claim 93, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

98. (New) The method of claim 68, wherein said variable-ratio transmission comprises a planetary gear mechanism.

99. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the second electric motor is sufficiently

powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

100. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

monitoring the RL over time;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than a setpoint (SP);

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO; and

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine to propel the hybrid vehicle is performed when:

the RL > the SP for at least a predetermined time; or

the RL > a second setpoint (SP2), wherein the SP2 is a larger percentage of the MTO than the SP; and

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO.

101. (New) The method of claim 100,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

102. (New) The method of claim 101, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

103. (New) The method of claim 101, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately

150 amperes.

104. (New) The method of claim 100,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

105. (New) The method of claim 100,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

106. (New) The method of claim 100, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

107. (New) The method of claim 106, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

108. (New) The method of claim 106, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

109. (New) The method of claim 106, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

110. (New) The method of claim 106, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

111. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

113. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

114. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to:

store energy from the at least one electric motor and/or the engine; and

transmit energy to the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle.

115. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery indicates the need to do so, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to propel the hybrid vehicle and to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, wherein a first portion of the torque equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, wherein a second portion of the torque in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

116. (New) The method of claim 100, wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle and said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle, each comprises:

if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

117. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

monitoring the RL over time;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle is performed when the RL < the SP for at least a predetermined amount of time.

118. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a desired cruising speed;

controlling instantaneous engine torque output and operation of the at least one electric motor in accordance with variation in the RL to maintain the speed of the hybrid vehicle according to the desired cruising speed.

119. (New) The method of claim 100, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO.

120. (New) The method of claim 100,

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV; and

wherein said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V.

121. (New) The method of claim 120, wherein the engine can be operated in mode I without transmitting power to the wheels.

122. (New) The method of claim 120, wherein the at least one electric motors comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to store power from the engine and/or the at least one electric motor and transmit power to the at least one electric motor to propel the vehicle;

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level and when the RL < the SP, wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery composes a low-load battery charging mode II, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises:

decoupling the engine from wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

the engine providing torque at least equal to the SP to the first electric motor to charge the battery;

wherein during said operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level, the hybrid vehicle is propelled by torque provided by the second electric motor in response to energy supplied by the battery.

123. (New) The method of claim 120, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a change in required torque to be applied to wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

if the received operator input specifies a rapid increase in the required torque, changing operation from operating mode I directly to operating mode V.

124. (New) The method of claim 120, wherein the hybrid vehicle further comprises a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine, and wherein said operating both the engine and the at least one electric motor occurs when the RL > the MTO for less than a predetermined time T, wherein the method further comprises:

operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine when desired, wherein said operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine occurs when the RL > the MTO for more than the predetermined time T, and wherein said operating the turbocharger composes a turbocharged operation mode VI.

125. (New) The method of claim 124, further comprising:

varying the time T responsive to the state of charge of the battery.

126. (New) The method of claim 100, wherein the hybrid vehicle further comprises a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine, wherein the method further comprises:

operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine when desired.

127. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

regeneratively charging a battery of the hybrid vehicle when instantaneous torque output of the engine > the RL, when the RL is negative, and/or when braking is initiated by an operator of the hybrid vehicle.

128. (New) The method of claim 100, wherein the hybrid vehicle comprises a variable-ratio transmission disposed between the engine and the wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

129. (New) The method of claim 128, wherein said variable-ratio transmission comprises a planetary gear mechanism.

130. (New) The method of claim 100, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

131. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

controlling the engine such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs substantially at a stoichiometric ratio, wherein said controlling the engine comprises limiting a rate of change of torque output of the engine; and

if the engine is incapable of supplying instantaneous torque required to propel the hybrid vehicle, supplying additional torque from the at least one electric motor.

132. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

rotating the engine before starting the engine such that its cylinders are heated by compression of air therein.

133. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

operating the engine at torque output levels less than the SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

134. (New) The method of claim 100, wherein the second electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

135. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

monitoring the RL over time;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than a setpoint (SP);

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle is performed when the RL < the SP for at least a predetermined amount of time;

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO; and

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO.

136. (New) The method of claim 135,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

137. (New) The method of claim 136, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

138. (New) The method of claim 136, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

139. (New) The method of claim 135,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

140. (New) The method of claim 135,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

141. (New) The method of claim 135, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side

coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

142. (New) The method of claim 141, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

143. (New) The method of claim 141, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

144. (New) The method of claim 141, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

145. (New) The method of claim 141, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

146. (New) The method of claim 135, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

147. (New) The method of claim 135, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

148. (New) The method of claim 135, further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to:

store energy from the at least one electric motor and/or the engine; and

transmit energy to the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle.

149. (New) The method of claim 135, further comprising:

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery indicates the need to do so, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to propel the hybrid vehicle and to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, wherein a first portion of the torque equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, wherein a second portion of the torque in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

150. (New) The method of claim 135, wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle and said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle, each comprises:

if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

151. (New) The method of claim 135, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a desired cruising speed;

controlling instantaneous engine torque output and operation of the at least one electric motor in accordance with variation in the RL to maintain the speed of the hybrid vehicle according to the desired cruising speed.

152. (New) The method of claim 135, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO.

153. (New) The method of claim 135,

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV; and

wherein said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V.

154. (New) The method of claim 153, wherein the engine can be operated without transfer of power to wheels of the hybrid vehicle in mode I.

155. (New) The method of claim 153, wherein the at least one electric motors comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to store energy from the engine and/or the at least one electric motor and transmit energy to the at least one electric motor to propel the vehicle;

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level and when the RL < the SP, wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery composes a low-load battery charging mode II, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises:

decoupling the engine from wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

the engine providing torque at least equal to the SP to the first electric motor to charge the battery;

wherein during said operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level, the hybrid vehicle is propelled by torque provided by the second electric motor in response to energy supplied by the battery.

156. (New) The method of claim 153, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a change in required torque to be applied to wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

if the received operator input specifies a rapid increase in the required torque, changing operation from operating mode I directly to operating mode V.

157. (New) The method of claim 153, wherein the hybrid vehicle further comprises a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine, and wherein said operating both the engine and the at least one electric motor occurs when the RL > the MTO for less than a predetermined time T, wherein the method further comprises:

operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine when desired, wherein said operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine occurs when the RL > the MTO for more than the predetermined time T, and wherein said operating the turbocharger composes a turbocharged operation mode VI.

158. (New) The method of claim 157, further comprising:

varying the time T responsive to the state of charge of the battery.

159. (New) The method of claim 135, wherein the hybrid vehicle further comprises a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine, wherein the method further comprises:

operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine when desired.

160. (New) The method of claim 135, further comprising:

regeneratively charging a battery of the hybrid vehicle when instantaneous torque output of the engine > the RL, when the RL is negative, and/or when braking is initiated by an operator of the hybrid vehicle.

161. (New) The method of claim 135, wherein the hybrid vehicle comprises a variable-ratio

transmission disposed between the engine and the wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

162. (New) The method of claim 161, wherein said variable-ratio transmission comprises a planetary gear mechanism.

163. (New) The method of claim 135, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

164. (New) The method of claim 135, further comprising:

controlling the engine such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs substantially at a stoichiometric ratio, wherein said controlling the engine comprises limiting a rate of change of torque output of the engine; and

if the engine is incapable of supplying instantaneous torque required to propel the hybrid vehicle, supplying additional torque from the at least one electric motor.

165. (New) The method of claim 135, further comprising:

rotating the engine before starting the engine such that its cylinders are heated by compression of air therein.

166. (New) The method of claim 135, further comprising:

operating the engine at torque output levels less than the SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

167. (New) The method of claim 135, wherein the at least one electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

168. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and a setpoint (SP);

operating at least one first electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one first electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle comprises a low-load operation mode I;

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle comprises a highway cruising operation mode IV;

operating both the at least one first electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO;

wherein said operating both the at least one first electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle comprises an acceleration operation mode V;

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to store power from the engine and/or the at least one first electric motor and transmit power to the at least one first electric motor to propel the vehicle; and

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level and when the RL < the SP, wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises a low-load battery charging mode II, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises:

operating the engine without transferring power to the wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

the engine providing torque at least equal to the SP to the at least one first electric motor to charge the battery;

wherein during said operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level, the hybrid vehicle is propelled by torque provided by at least one second electric motor in response to energy supplied by the battery.

169. (New) The method of claim 168,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

170. (New) The method of claim 169, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

171. (New) The method of claim 169, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

172. (New) The method of claim 168,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

173. (New) The method of claim 168,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

174. (New) The method of claim 168, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

175. (New) The method of claim 174, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

176. (New) The method of claim 174, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

177. (New) The method of claim 174, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

178. (New) The method of claim 174, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

179. (New) The method of claim 168, wherein the engine can be operated without transferring power to the wheels of the hybrid vehicle during operation in mode I.

180. (New) The method of claim 168, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a change in required torque to be applied to wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

if the received operator input specifies a rapid increase in the required torque, changing operation from operating mode I directly to operating mode V.

181. (New) The method of claim 168, wherein the at least one electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

182. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and a setpoint (SP);

operating at least one first electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one first electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV;

operating both the at least one first electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO;

wherein said operating both the at least one first electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V;

receiving operator input specifying a change in required torque to be applied to wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

if the received operator input specifies a rapid increase in the required torque, changing operation from operating mode I directly to operating mode V.

183. (New) The method of claim 182,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

184. (New) The method of claim 182, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

185. (New) The method of claim 182, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

186. (New) The method of claim 182,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

187. (New) The method of claim 182,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

188. (New) The method of claim 182, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

189. (New) The method of claim 188, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

190. (New) The method of claim 188, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

191. (New) The method of claim 188, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

192. (New) The method of claim 188, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

193. (New) The method of claim 182, wherein said engine can be operated without transmitting power to the wheels of the hybrid vehicle during operation in mode I.

194. (New) The method of claim 182, wherein said at least one electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

195. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and a setpoint (SP);

operating at least one first electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one first electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV;

operating both the at least one first electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO;

wherein said operating both the at least one first electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V, and wherein said operating both the engine and the at least one electric motor occurs when the RL > the MTO for less than a predetermined time T; and

operating a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine to increase the MTO of the engine when desired, wherein said operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine occurs when the RL > the MTO for more than the predetermined time T, and wherein said operating the turbocharger composes a turbocharged operation mode VI.

196. (New) The method of claim 195,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

197. (New) The method of claim 195, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

198. (New) The method of claim 195, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

199. (New) The method of claim 195,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

200. (New) The method of claim 195,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

201. (New) The method of claim 195, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

202. (New) The method of claim 201, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

203. (New) The method of claim 201, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

204. (New) The method of claim 201, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

205. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 201, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

206. (New) The method of claim 195, wherein the engine can be operated without transfer of power to the wheels of the hybrid vehicle during operation in mode I.

207. (New) The method of claim 195, further comprising:

varying the time T responsive to the state of charge of the battery.

208. (New) The method of claim 195, wherein the at least one first electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

209. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than a setpoint (SP);

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO; and

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO; and

operating a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine to increase the MTO of the engine when desired.

210. (New) The method of claim 209,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

211. (New) The method of claim 210, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

212. (New) The method of claim 210, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

213. (New) The method of claim 209,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

214. (New) The method of claim 209,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

215. (New) The method of claim 209, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

216. (New) The method of claim 215, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

217. (New) The method of claim 215, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

218. (New) The method of claim 215, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said

battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

219. (New) The method of claim 215, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

220. (New) The method of claim 209, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

221. (New) The method of claim 209, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

222. (New) The method of claim 209, further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to:

store power from the at least one electric motor and/or the engine; and

transmit power to the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle.

223. (New) The method of claim 209, further comprising:

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery indicates the need to do so, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to propel the hybrid vehicle and to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, wherein a first portion of the torque equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, wherein a second portion of the torque in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

224. (New) The method of claim 209, wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle and said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle, each comprises:

if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

225. (New) The method of claim 209, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a desired cruising speed;

controlling instantaneous engine torque output and operation of the at least one electric motor in accordance with variation in the RL to maintain the speed of the hybrid vehicle according to the desired cruising speed.

226. (New) The method of claim 209, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO.

227. (New) The method of claim 209,

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV; and

wherein said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V.

228. (New) The method of claim 209, wherein the engine can be operated without transfer of power to the wheels of the hybrid vehicle during operation in mode I.

229. (New) The method of claim 209, further comprising:

regeneratively charging a battery of the hybrid vehicle when instantaneous torque output of the engine > the RL, when the RL is negative, and/or when braking is initiated by an operator of the hybrid vehicle.

230. (New) The method of claim 209, wherein the hybrid vehicle comprises a variable-ratio

transmission disposed between the engine and the wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

231. (New) The method of claim 230, wherein said variable-ratio transmission comprises a planetary gear mechanism.

232. (New) The method of claim 209, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

233. (New) The method of claim 209, further comprising:

rotating the engine before starting the engine such that its cylinders are heated by compression of air therein.

234. (New) The method of claim 209, further comprising:

operating the engine at torque output levels less than the SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

235. (New) The method of claim 209, wherein at least one electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

236. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than a setpoint (SP);

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO; and

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO; and

regeneratively charging a battery of the hybrid vehicle when instantaneous torque output of the engine > the RL, when the RL is negative, and/or when braking is initiated by an operator of the hybrid vehicle.

237. (New) The method of claim 236,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

238. (New) The method of claim 237, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

239. (New) The method of claim 237, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

240. (New) The method of claim 236,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

241. (New) The method of claim 236,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

242. (New) The method of claim 236, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side

coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

243. (New) The method of claim 242, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

244. (New) The method of claim 242, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

245. (New) The method of claim 242, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

246. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 242, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

247. (New) The method of claim 236, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

248. (New) The method of claim 236, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

249. (New) The method of claim 236, further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to:

store energy from the at least one electric motor and/or the engine; and

transmit energy to the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle.

250. (New) The method of claim 236, further comprising:

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery indicates the need to do so, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to propel the hybrid vehicle and to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, wherein a first portion of the torque equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, wherein a second portion of the torque in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

251. (New) The method of claim 236, wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle and said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle, each comprises:

if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

252. (New) The method of claim 236, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a desired cruising speed;

controlling instantaneous engine torque output and operation of the at least one electric motor in accordance with variation in the RL to maintain the speed of the hybrid vehicle according to the desired cruising speed.

253. (New) The method of claim 236, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO.

254. (New) The method of claim 236,

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV; and

wherein said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V.

255. (New) The method of claim 236, wherein the engine can be operated without transfer of power to the wheels of the hybrid vehicle during operation in mode I.

266. (New) The method of claim 236, wherein the hybrid vehicle comprises a variable-ratio transmission disposed between the engine and the wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

267. (New) The method of claim 266, wherein said variable-ratio transmission comprises a planetary gearbox.

268. (New) The method of claim 236, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

269. (New) The method of claim 236, further comprising:

rotating the engine before starting the engine such that its cylinders are heated by compression of air therein.

270. (New) The method of claim 236, further comprising:

operating the engine at torque output levels less than the SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

271. (New) The method of claim 236, wherein the at least one electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

272. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than a setpoint (SP);

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO; and

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO;

controlling said engine such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs substantially at a stoichiometric ratio, wherein said controlling the engine comprises limiting a rate of change of torque output of the engine; and

if the engine is incapable of supplying instantaneous torque required to propel the hybrid vehicle, supplying additional torque from the at least one electric motor.

273. (New) The method of claim 272,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

274. (New) The method of claim 273, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least

approximately 500 volts.

275. (New) The method of claim 273, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

276. (New) The method of claim 272,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

277. (New) The method of claim 272,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

278. (New) The method of claim 272, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

279. (New) The method of claim 278, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

280. (New) The method of claim 278, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

281. (New) The method of claim 278, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

282. (New) The method of claim 278, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

283. (New) The method of claim 272, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

284. (New) The method of claim 272, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

285. (New) The method of claim 272, further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to:

store energy from the at least one electric motor and/or the engine; and

transmit energy to the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle.

286. (New) The method of claim 272, further comprising:

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery indicates the need to do so, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to propel the hybrid vehicle and to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, wherein a first portion of the torque equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, wherein a second portion of the torque in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

287. (New) The method of claim 272, wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle and said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle, each comprises:

if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

288. (New) The method of claim 272, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a desired cruising speed;

controlling instantaneous engine torque output and operation of the at least one electric motor in accordance with variation in the RL to maintain the speed of the hybrid vehicle according to the desired cruising speed.

289. (New) The method of claim 272, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO.

290. (New) The method of claim 272,

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV; and

wherein said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V.

291. (New) The method of claim 272, wherein the engine can be operated without transfer of power to the wheels of the hybrid vehicle during operation in mode I.

292. (New) The method of claim 272, wherein the hybrid vehicle comprises a variable-ratio transmission disposed between the engine and the wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

293. (New) The method of claim 292, wherein said variable-ratio transmission comprises a planetary gear mechanism.

294. (New) The method of claim 272, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

295. (New) The method of claim 272, further comprising:

rotating the engine before starting the engine such that its cylinders are heated by compression of air therein.

296. (New) The method of claim 272, further comprising:

operating the engine at torque output levels less than the SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

297. (New) The method of claim 272, wherein the at least one electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

298. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than a setpoint (SP);

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO;

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO; and

rotating the engine before starting the engine such that its cylinders are heated by compression of air therein.

299. (New) The method of claim 298,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

300. (New) The method of claim 299, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

301. (New) The method of claim 299, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

302. (New) The method of claim 298,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

303. (New) The method of claim 298,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

304. (New) The method of claim 298, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

305. (New) The method of claim 304, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

306. (New) The method of claim 304, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

307. (New) The method of claim 304, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

308. (New) The method of claim 304, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

309. (New) The method of claim 298, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

310. (New) The method of claim 298, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

311. (New) The method of claim 298, further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to:

store energy from the at least one electric motor and/or the engine; and

transmit energy to the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle.

312. (New) The method of claim 298, further comprising:

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery indicates the need to do so, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to propel the hybrid vehicle and to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, wherein a first portion of the torque equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, wherein a second portion of the torque in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

313. (New) The method of claim 298, wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle and said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle, each comprises:

if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

314. (New) The method of claim 298, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a desired cruising speed;

controlling instantaneous engine torque output and operation of the at least one electric motor in accordance with variation in the RL to maintain the speed of the hybrid vehicle according to the desired cruising speed.

315. (New) The method of claim 298, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO.

316. (New) The method of claim 298,

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV; and

wherein said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V.

317. (New) The method of claim 316, wherein the engine can be operated without transfer of power to the wheels of the hybrid vehicle during operation in mode I.

318. (New) The method of claim 298, wherein the hybrid vehicle comprises a variable-ratio transmission disposed between the engine and the wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

319. (New) The method of claim 318, wherein said variable-ratio transmission comprises a planetary gearbox.

320. (New) The method of claim 298, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to one or

more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

321. (New) The method of claim 298, further comprising:

operating the engine at torque output levels less than the SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

322. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 298, wherein the at least one electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

323. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

a controller capable of accepting inputs indicative of vehicle operating parameters and providing control signals in response to a control program;

a battery bank;

an internal combustion engine operable to provide propulsive torque to road wheels of said vehicle;

a first AC electric starting motor electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to said internal combustion engine, and responsive to commands from said controller for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank, such that said first electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept torque from said engine to charge said battery bank, and (2) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said engine for starting said engine;

a second AC electric traction motor, electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to road wheels of said vehicle, and responsive to commands from said controller, for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank such that said second electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said road wheels to propel said vehicle, and (2) accept torque from said road wheels to charge said battery bank;

a solid state inverter connected to the second AC motor for converting DC to AC and AC to DC;

wherein said controller is provided with signals responsive to the instantaneous road load experienced by said vehicle and to the state of charge of said battery bank, and controls operation of said engine and said first and second motors so that said vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes responsive to said signals; and

wherein energy originating at the battery is supplied to the solid state inverter at a DC voltage having a peak of at least 500 volts.

324. (New) The vehicle of claim 323 wherein energy originating at the battery is supplied to the solid state inverter at a maximum current of no more than about 75 amperes.

325. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

a controller capable of accepting inputs indicative of vehicle operating parameters and providing control signals in response to a control program;

a battery bank;

an internal combustion engine operable to provide propulsive torque to road wheels of said vehicle;

a first AC electric starting motor electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to said internal combustion engine, and responsive to commands from said controller for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank, such that said first electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept torque from said engine to charge said battery bank, and (2) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said engine for starting said engine;

a second AC electric traction motor, electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to road wheels of said vehicle, and responsive to commands from said controller, for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank such that said second electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said road wheels to propel said vehicle, and (2) accept torque from said road wheels to charge said battery bank;

a solid state inverter connected to the second AC motor for converting DC to AC and AC to DC;

wherein said controller is provided with signals responsive to the instantaneous road load experienced by said vehicle and to the state of charge of said battery bank, and controls operation of said engine and said first and second motors so that said vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes responsive to said signals; and

wherein energy originating at the battery is supplied to the solid state inverter at a maximum current of no more than about 75 amperes.

326. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

a controller capable of accepting inputs indicative of vehicle operating parameters and providing control signals in response to a control program;

a battery bank;

an internal combustion engine operable to provide propulsive torque to road wheels of said vehicle;

a first AC electric starting motor electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to said internal combustion engine, and responsive to commands from said controller for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank, such that said first electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept torque from said engine to charge said battery bank, and (2) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said engine for starting said engine;

a second AC electric traction motor, electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to road wheels of said vehicle, and responsive to commands from said controller, for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank such that said second electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said road wheels to propel said vehicle, and (2) accept torque from said road wheels to charge said battery bank;

a solid state inverter connected to the second AC motor for converting DC to AC and AC to DC;

wherein said controller is provided with signals responsive to the instantaneous road load experienced by said vehicle and to the state of charge of said battery bank, and controls operation of said engine and said first and second motors so that said vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes responsive to said signals; and

wherein energy originating at the battery is supplied to the solid state inverter at a voltage and current such that the ratio of voltage to current is at least about 2.5 to 1.

327. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

a controller capable of accepting inputs indicative of vehicle operating parameters and providing control signals in response to a control program;

a battery bank;

an internal combustion engine operable to provide propulsive torque to road wheels of said vehicle;

a first AC electric starting motor electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to said internal combustion engine, and responsive to commands from said controller for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank, such that said first electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept torque from said engine to charge said battery bank, and (2) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said engine for starting said engine;

a second AC electric traction motor, electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to road wheels of said vehicle, and responsive to commands from said controller, for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank such that said second electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said road wheels to propel said vehicle, and (2) accept torque from said road wheels to charge said battery bank;

a solid state inverter connected to the second AC motor for converting DC to AC and AC to DC;

wherein said controller is provided with signals responsive to the instantaneous road load experienced by said vehicle and to the state of charge of said battery bank, and controls operation of said engine and said first and second motors so that said vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes responsive to said signals; and

wherein energy originating at the battery is supplied to the solid state inverter at a voltage having a peak of at least about 800 volts.

328. (New) The vehicle of claim 327 wherein energy originating at the battery is supplied to the solid state inverter at a peak current of no more than 150 amperes.

329. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

a controller capable of accepting inputs indicative of vehicle operating parameters and providing control signals in response to a control program;

a battery bank;

an internal combustion engine operable to provide propulsive torque to road wheels of said vehicle;

a first AC electric starting motor electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to said internal combustion engine, and responsive to commands from said controller for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank, such that said first electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept torque from said engine to charge said battery bank, and (2) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said engine for starting said engine;

a second AC electric traction motor, electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to road wheels of said vehicle, and responsive to commands from said controller, for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank such that said second electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said road wheels to propel said vehicle, and (2) accept torque from said road wheels to charge said battery bank;

a solid state inverter connected to the second AC motor for converting DC to AC and AC to DC;

wherein said controller is provided with signals responsive to the instantaneous road load experienced by said vehicle and to the state of charge of said battery bank, and controls operation of said engine and said first and second motors so that said vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes responsive to said signals; and

wherein energy originating at the battery is supplied to the solid state inverter at a maximum current of no more than 150 amperes.

330. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

a controller capable of accepting inputs indicative of vehicle operating parameters and providing control signals in response to a control program;

a battery bank;

an internal combustion engine operable to provide propulsive torque to road wheels of said vehicle;

a first AC electric starting motor electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to said internal combustion engine, and responsive to commands from said controller for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank, such that said first electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept torque from said engine to charge said battery bank, and (2) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said engine for starting said engine;

a second AC electric traction motor, electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to road wheels of said vehicle, and responsive to commands from said controller, for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank such that said second electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said road wheels to propel said vehicle, and (2) accept torque from said road wheels to charge said battery bank;

a solid state inverter connected to the second AC motor for converting DC to AC and AC to DC;

wherein said controller is provided with signals responsive to the instantaneous road load experienced by said vehicle and to the state of charge of said battery bank, and controls operation of said engine such that said engine is operated only above a setpoint (SP), said setpoint SP varying as a function of said vehicle operating parameters.

331. (New) The vehicle of claim 330, wherein said setpoint SP is varied as a function of vehicle speed.

332. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 330, wherein the second electric motor is sufficiently

powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of power from the engine to propel the vehicle.

333. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

one or more wheels;

an internal combustion engine operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a first electric motor coupled to the engine;

a second electric motor operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a battery coupled to the first and second electric motors, operable to:

provide current to the first and/or the second electric motors; and

accept current from the first and second electric motors; and

a controller, operable to control the flow of electrical and mechanical power between the engine, the first and the second electric motors, and the one or more wheels;

a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter coupled to said first electric motor, at least operable to accept AC current and convert the current to DC;

a second AC-DC converter having an AC side coupled to said second electric motor, operable to accept AC or DC current and convert the current to DC or AC current respectively;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters, wherein said battery is operable to store DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and provide DC energy to at least said second AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied from said battery, measured on the DC side of at least said second AC-DC converter, is at least 2.5; and

wherein the controller is operable to operate the engine when the power required from the engine to satisfy the road load experienced by the vehicle and/or to drive one or more of the first and second motors to charge the battery is at least equal to a minimum value at which power is efficiently produced by said engine but that is substantially less than the maximum power output of the engine.

334. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

one or more wheels;

an internal combustion engine operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a first electric motor coupled to the engine;

a second electric motor operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a battery coupled to the first and second electric motors, operable to:

provide current to the first and/or the second electric motors; and

accept current from the first and second electric motors; and

a controller, operable to control the flow of electrical and mechanical power between the engine, the first and the second electric motors, and the one or more wheels;

a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter coupled to said first electric motor, at least operable to accept AC current and convert the current to DC;

a second AC-DC converter having an AC side coupled to said second electric motor, operable to accept AC or DC current and convert the current to DC or AC current respectively;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters, wherein said battery is operable to store DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and provide DC energy to at least said second AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor;

wherein the peak DC voltage, measured on the DC side of at least said second AC-DC converter, is at least about 500 volts; and

wherein the controller is operable to operate the engine when the power required from the engine to satisfy the road load experienced by the vehicle and/or to drive one or more of the first and second motors to charge the battery is at least equal to a minimum value at which power is efficiently produced by said engine but that is substantially less than the maximum power output of the engine.

335. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

one or more wheels;

an internal combustion engine operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a first electric motor coupled to the engine;

a second electric motor operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a battery coupled to the first and second electric motors, operable to:

provide current to the first and/or the second electric motors; and

accept current from the first and second electric motors; and

a controller, operable to control the flow of electrical and mechanical power between the engine, the first and the second electric motors, and the one or more wheels;

a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter coupled to said first electric motor, at least operable to accept AC current and convert the current to DC;

a second AC-DC converter having an AC side coupled to said second electric motor, operable to accept AC or DC current and convert the current to DC or AC current respectively;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters, wherein said battery is operable to store DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and provide DC energy to at least said second AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor;

wherein the peak DC current, measured on the DC side of at least said second AC-DC converter, is no more than about 150 amperes; and

wherein the controller is operable to operate the engine when the power required from the engine to satisfy the road load experienced by the vehicle and/or to drive one or more of the first and second motors to charge the battery is at least equal to a minimum value at which power is efficiently produced by said engine but that is substantially less than the maximum power output of the engine.

336. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

one or more wheels;

an internal combustion engine operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a first electric motor coupled to the engine;

a second electric motor operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a battery coupled to the first and second electric motors, operable to:

provide current to the first and/or the second electric motors; and

accept current from the first and second electric motors; and

a controller, operable to control the flow of electrical and mechanical power between the engine, the first and the second electric motors, and the one or more wheels;

wherein energy originating at the battery is supplied to the second motor at a peak voltage of at least about 500 volts; and

wherein the controller is operable to operate the engine when the power required from the engine to satisfy the road load experienced by the vehicle and/or to drive one or more of the first and second motors to charge the battery is at least equal to a minimum value at which power is efficiently produced by said engine but that is substantially less than the maximum power output of the engine.

337. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

one or more wheels;

an internal combustion engine operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a first electric motor coupled to the engine;

a second electric motor operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a battery coupled to the first and second electric motors, operable to:

provide current to the first and/or the second electric motors; and

accept current from the first and second electric motors; and

a controller, operable to control the flow of electrical and mechanical power between the engine, the first and the second electric motors, and the one or more wheels;

wherein power originating at the battery is supplied to the second motor at a peak current no greater than about 150 amperes; and

wherein the controller is operable to operate the engine when the power required from the engine to satisfy the road load experienced by the vehicle and/or to drive one or more of the first and second motors to charge the battery is at least equal to a minimum value at which power is efficiently produced by said engine but that is substantially less than the maximum power output of the engine.

Document code: WFEE

United States Patent and Trademark Office
Sales Receipt for Accounting Date: 11/08/2006

LFULTON	SALE	#00000005	Mailroom Dt:	10/25/2006	040401	11229762
		01 FC : 1814		130.00 DA		

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD
Effective October 1, 2003

Application or Docket Number: 11/229762

CLAIMS AS FILED - PART I

	(Column 1)	(Column 2)
TOTAL CLAIMS		
FOR	NUMBER FILED	NUMBER EXTRA
TOTAL CHARGEABLE CLAIMS	minus 20=	*
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS	minus 3 =	*
MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT		☐

* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter "0" in column 2

SMALL ENTITY TYPE ☐ OR OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY

SMALL ENTITY RATE	FEE		OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE	FEE
BASIC FEE	385.00	OR	BASIC FEE	770.00
X$ 9=		OR	X$18=	
X43=		OR	X86=	
+145=		OR	+290=	
TOTAL		OR	TOTAL	

CLAIMS AS AMENDED - PART II

AMENDMENT A

10/25/6	(Column 1) CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		(Column 2) HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	(Column 3) PRESENT EXTRA
Total	* 306	Minus	** 59	= 247
Independent	* 22	Minus	*** 4	= 18
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM				☐

SMALL ENTITY RATE	ADDITIONAL FEE		OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE	ADDITIONAL FEE
~~X$ 9=~~ 25		OR	~~X$18=~~ 50	12350
~~X43=~~ 100		OR	~~X86=~~ 200	3600
+145=		OR	+290=	
TOTAL ADDIT. FEE		OR	TOTAL ADDIT. FEE	15950

1-16 (17) (49) 55 73 74 75 (100) (134) (167) (181) (194) (208) (235) (261) (287) (312) (314) (315) (316) (318) (319) (322) (323) (324) (325) (326)

Paid for a total of 258 claims over.

AMENDMENT B

	(Column 1) CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		(Column 2) HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	(Column 3) PRESENT EXTRA
Total	*	Minus	**	=
Independent	*	Minus	***	=
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM				☐

SMALL ENTITY RATE	ADDITIONAL FEE		OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE	ADDITIONAL FEE
X$ 9=		OR	X$18=	
X43=		OR	X86=	
+145=		OR	+290=	
TOTAL ADDIT. FEE		OR	TOTAL ADDIT. FEE	

AMENDMENT C

	(Column 1) CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		(Column 2) HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR	(Column 3) PRESENT EXTRA
Total	*	Minus	**	=
Independent	*	Minus	***	=
FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM				☐

SMALL ENTITY RATE	ADDITIONAL FEE		OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE	ADDITIONAL FEE
X$ 9=		OR	X$18=	
X43=		OR	X86=	
+145=		OR	+290=	
TOTAL ADDIT. FEE		OR	TOTAL ADDIT. FEE	

* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.
** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20."
*** If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3."
The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" (Total or Independent) is the highest number found in the appropriate box in column 1.

FORM PTO-875 (Rev. 10/03) Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

PTO/SB/06 (07-06)
Approved for use through 1/31/2007. OMB 0651-0032
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

PATENT APPLICATION FEE DETERMINATION RECORD Substitute for Form PTO-875	Application or Docket Number 11/229,762	Filing Date 01/13/2006	☐ To be Mailed

APPLICATION AS FILED – PART I

FOR	NUMBER FILED (Column 1)	NUMBER EXTRA (Column 2)	SMALL ENTITY ☐ RATE ($)	SMALL ENTITY FEE ($)	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY FEE ($)
☐ BASIC FEE (37 CFR 1.16(a), (b), or (c))	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	
☐ SEARCH FEE (37 CFR 1.16(k), (i), or (m))	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	
☐ EXAMINATION FEE (37 CFR 1.16(o), (p), or (q))	N/A	N/A	N/A			N/A	
TOTAL CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(i))	minus 20 =	*	X $ =		OR	X $ =	
INDEPENDENT CLAIMS (37 CFR 1.16(h))	minus 3 =	*	X $ =			X $ =	
☐ APPLICATION SIZE FEE (37 CFR 1.16(s))	If the specification and drawings exceed 100 sheets of paper, the application size fee due is $250 ($125 for small entity) for each additional 50 sheets or fraction thereof. See 35 U.S.C. 41(a)(1)(G) and 37 CFR 1.16(s).						
☐ MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM PRESENT (37 CFR 1.16(j))							
			TOTAL			TOTAL	

* If the difference in column 1 is less than zero, enter “0” in column 2.

APPLICATION AS AMENDED – PART II

AMENDMENT 10/25/2006	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT (Column 1)		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR (Column 2)	PRESENT EXTRA (Column 3)	SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE ($)	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE ($)
Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	* 306	Minus	** 306	= 0	X $ =		OR	X $50=	0
Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	* 22	Minus	***22	= 0	X $ =		OR	X $200=	0
☐ Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))									
☐ FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))							OR		
					TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE	**0**

AMENDMENT	CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT (Column 1)		HIGHEST NUMBER PREVIOUSLY PAID FOR (Column 2)	PRESENT EXTRA (Column 3)	SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE ($)	OR	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY RATE ($)	OTHER THAN SMALL ENTITY ADDITIONAL FEE ($)
Total (37 CFR 1.16(i))	*	Minus	**	=	X $ =		OR	X $ =	
Independent (37 CFR 1.16(h))	*	Minus	***	=	X $ =		OR	X $ =	
☐ Application Size Fee (37 CFR 1.16(s))									
☐ FIRST PRESENTATION OF MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM (37 CFR 1.16(j))							OR		
					TOTAL ADD'L FEE		OR	TOTAL ADD'L FEE	

* If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write “0” in column 3.
** If the “Highest Number Previously Paid For” IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter “20”.
*** If the “Highest Number Previously Paid For” IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter “3”.
The “Highest Number Previously Paid For” (Total or Independent) is the highest number found in the appropriate box in column 1.

Legal Instrument Examiner:
Stella Little

Application Number	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent under Reexamination	
	11/229,762	SEVERINSKY ET AL.	

Document Code - DISQ	Internal Document – DO NOT MAIL

TERMINAL DISCLAIMER	☒ APPROVED	☐ DISAPPROVED
Date Filed : 10/25/06	**This patent is subject to a Terminal Disclaimer**	

Approved/Disapproved by:
D. GOODWYN

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
11/229,762	01/13/2006	Alex J. Severinsky	PAICE201.DIV. 2	3347

7590 11/16/2006

Michael de Angeli
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835

EXAMINER	
DUNN, DAVID R	
ART UNIT	**PAPER NUMBER**
3616	

DATE MAILED: 11/16/2006

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

PTO-90C (Rev. 10/03)

Notice of Non-Compliant Amendment (37 CFR 1.121)	**Application No.** 11/229,762	**Applicant(s)** Alex J. Severinsky
	Examiner Dunn, David R.	**Art Unit** 3616

-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address --

The amendment document filed on _25 October 2006_ is considered non-compliant because it has failed to meet the requirements of 37 CFR 1.121 or 1.4. In order for the amendment document to be compliant, correction of the following item(s) is required.

THE FOLLOWING MARKED (X) ITEM(S) CAUSE THE AMENDMENT DOCUMENT TO BE NON-COMPLIANT:

☐ 1. Amendments to the specification:
- ☐ A. Amended paragraph(s) do not include markings.
- ☐ B. New paragraph(s) should not be underlined.
- ☐ C. Other _____.

☐ 2. Abstract:
- ☐ A. Not presented on a separate sheet. 37 CFR 1.72.
- ☐ B. Other _____.

☐ 3. Amendments to the drawings:
- ☐ A. The drawings are not properly identified in the top margin as "Replacement Sheet," "New Sheet," or "Annotated Sheet" as required by 37 CFR 1.121(d).
- ☐ B. The practice of submitting proposed drawing correction has been eliminated. Replacement drawings showing amended figures, without markings, in compliance with 37 CFR 1.84 are required.
- ☐ C. Other _____.

☒ 4. Amendments to the claims:
- ☒ A. A complete listing of all of the claims is not present.
- ☐ B. The listing of claims does not include the text of all pending claims (including withdrawn claims)
- ☐ C. Each claim has not been provided with the proper status identifier, and as such, the individual status of each claim cannot be identified. Note: the status of every claim must be indicated after its claim number by using one of the following status identifiers: (Original), (Currently amended), (Canceled), (Previously presented), (New), (Not entered), (Withdrawn) and (Withdrawn-currently amended).
- ☒ D. The claims of this amendment paper have not been presented in ascending numerical order.
- ☒ E. Other: _The claims need to be renumbered_.

☐ 5. Other (e.g., the amendment is unsigned or not signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.4):

_____

For further explanation of the amendment format required by 37 CFR 1.121, see MPEP § 714.

TIME PERIODS FOR FILING A REPLY TO THIS NOTICE:

1. Applicant is given **no new time period** if the non-compliant amendment is an after-final amendment, an amendment filed after allowance, or a drawing submission (only). If applicant wishes to resubmit the non-compliant after-final amendment with corrections, the **entire corrected amendment** must be resubmitted.

2. Applicant is given **one month**, or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer, from the mail date of this notice to supply the correction, if the non-compliant amendment is one of the following: a preliminary amendment, a non-final amendment (including a submission for a request for continued examination (RCE) under 37 CFR 1.114), a supplemental amendment filed within a suspension period under 37 CFR 1.103(a) or (c), and an amendment filed in response to a *Quayle* action. If any of above boxes 1. to 4. are checked, the correction required is only the **corrected section** of the non-compliant amendment in compliance with 37 CFR 1.121.

Extensions of time are available under 37 CFR 1.136(a) only if the non-compliant amendment is a non-final amendment or an amendment filed in response to a *Quayle* action.

Failure to timely respond to this notice will result in:
Abandonment of the application if the non-compliant amendment is a non-final amendment or an amendment filed in response to a *Quayle* action; or
Non-entry of the amendment if the non-compliant amendment is a preliminary amendment or supplemental amendment.

Lisa Fulton — (571) 272-4348

Legal Instruments Examiner (LIE), if applicable — Telephone No.

REMARKS

The Examiner is thanked for his courtesy in extending an interview to applicants' undersigned attorney on October 18, 2006, at which amendments to the claims substantially as above were discussed, as recorded in the Examiner Interview Summary form. However, the claim numbering has been revised to correct errors noted in a Notice of Non-Compliant Amendment, mailed in response to the prior version of this Amendment, filed October 25, 2006, and setting a 30-day period for submission of this Revised Amendment.

Applicant is in receipt of the Office Action dated August 10, 2006. An obviousness type double patenting rejection was made with respect to copending Ser. No. 10/382,577, now patent 7,104,347. The Examiner indicated that claims 17 - 48 would be allowable subject to entry of a Terminal Disclaimer. A Terminal Disclaimer in proper form is enclosed herewith.

Additionally, the Examiner indicated that claims 55 - 57, 62 - 67, 70, and 71, would be allowable if rewritten in independent form. Claim 49 has been rewritten to include the subject matter of claim 55, and thus is allowable. Correspondingly, claims 55 and 73 - 75 have been cancelled. Furthermore, new claims 76-311 are based on the allowable subject matter as indicated above and are also allowable.

More specifically, new independent claim 100 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 56; new independent claim 134 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 57; new independent claim 167 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 62; new independent claim 181 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 63; new independent claim 194 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 64; new independent claim 208 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 66; new independent claim 235 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 67; new independent claim 261 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 70; and new independent claim 287 includes the allowable subject matter of claim 71.

Sets of dependent claims have also been added reciting additional aspects of the invention and which are clearly supported by the disclosure of the application as filed. Specifically, several sets of claims, e.g. claims 76 - 85, have been added reciting specifics of the preferred ranges of voltage and current, and their ratio; these are supported at, for example, pages 89 - 91 of the application text. Similarly, claims, e.g., claim 86, have been added specifying that the variable-ratio transmission previously in the claims comprises a planetary gear mechanism; this is clearly supported, at pages 91 - 94. Finally, claims, e.g., claim 87, have been added specifying that the traction motor is sufficiently powerful to satisfy the Federal urban driving cycle without use of torque from the engine; this is supported at page 88, lines 25 - 29 of the application. To the extent this incorporation of a standard which might change over time could be considered to render the claim indefinite, applicants refer to this standard as effective as of September 9, 1999, the filing date of predecessor application Ser. No. 09/392,743, now patent 6,338,391, where support for this limitation first appeared.

Finally, new claims 312 - 326 have been added. These claims are similar in certain respects to claims previously allowed in this and predecessor applications. For example, claims 312 - 321 have similarity in certain respects to claims 1 and 2 of patent 6,209,672, and include limitations related to maximum DC voltage, current, and the ratio therebetween, as above. Claims 322 - 326 have similarity in certain respects to claim 17 of this application, and include a limitation related to control of the engine as well as limitations related to the voltage, current and ratio therebetween, as above.

Reconsideration and allowance of all claims is earnestly solicited.

11/22/06
Dated

Respectfully submitted,

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190

IN THE CLAIMS:

Amend the claims to appear as follows:

1 – 16. (Canceled)

17. (Previously Presented) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

one or more wheels;

an internal combustion engine operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a first electric motor coupled to the engine;

a second electric motor operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a battery coupled to the first and second electric motors, operable to:

provide current to the first and/or the second electric motors; and

accept current from the first and second electric motors; and

a controller, operable to control the flow of electrical and mechanical power between the engine, the first and the second electric motors, and the one or more wheels;

wherein the controller is operable to operate the engine when torque required from the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle and/or to drive one or more of the first or the second motors to charge the battery is at least equal to a setpoint (SP) above which the torque produced by the engine is efficiently produced, and wherein the torque produced by the engine when operated at the SP is substantially less than the maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine.

18. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to stop the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

19. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to stop the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

20. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein to operate the engine, the controller is operable to start the engine via the first electric motor if the engine is not already running.

21. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is further operable to monitor patterns of vehicle operation over time and vary the SP accordingly.

22. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is further operable to:

monitor road load (RL) on the hybrid vehicle over time; and

control transition between propulsion of the hybrid vehicle by the first and/or the second electric motors to propulsion by the engine responsive to the RL reaching the SP, wherein the transition only occurs when:

the RL > the SP for at least a first length of time; or

the RL > a second setpoint (SP2), wherein the SP2 > the SP.

23. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 22, wherein if the engine is not started, the controller is operable to start the engine for the transition between propulsion of the hybrid vehicle by the first and/or the second electric motors to propulsion by the engine.

24. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 22, wherein the controller is further operable to control transition from propulsion of the hybrid vehicle by the engine to propulsion by the first and/or the second electric motors such that the transition occurs only when the RL < the SP for at least a second length of time.

25. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 24, wherein the first length of time is the same as the second length of time.

26. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 24, wherein the first length of time and the second length of time are predetermined.

27. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 24, wherein the controller is further operable to stop the engine after the transition between propulsion of the hybrid vehicle by the engine to propulsion by the first and/or the second electric motors.

28. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to vary the SP as a function of speed of the engine.

29. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the SP is at least approximately 20% of the MTO of the engine when normally-aspirated.

30. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO of the engine when normally-aspirated.

31. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the SP is less than approximately 70% of the MTO of the engine when normally-aspirated.

32. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to implement a plurality of operating modes responsive to road load (RL) and the SP, wherein both the RL and the SP are expressed as percentages of the MTO of the engine when normally-aspirated, and wherein the operating modes comprise:

a low-load mode I, wherein, when the RL < the SP, the second electric motor is operable to provide torque to propel the hybrid vehicle;

a highway cruising mode IV, wherein, when the SP < the RL < the MTO, the engine is operable to provide torque to propel the hybrid vehicle, and wherein the controller is operable to start the engine if the engine is not running to enter the highway cruising mode IV; and

an acceleration mode V, wherein, when the RL > the MTO, the engine, the first electric motor, and/or the second electric motor is operable to provide torque to propel the hybrid vehicle, and wherein the controller is operable to start the engine if the engine is not running to enter the acceleration mode V.

33. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 32, wherein the controller is operable to decouple the engine and the first electric motor from the one or more wheels during operation in the mode I and couple the engine and the first electric motor to the one or more wheels during operation in the modes IV and V.

34. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 32, wherein the plurality of operating modes further comprise a low-speed battery charging mode II, wherein, when the RL < the SP and a state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level:

the controller is operable to decouple the engine and the first electric motor from the one or more wheels and start the engine if the engine is not running to enter the battery charging mode II;

the second electric motor is operable to provide torque to propel the hybrid vehicle; and

the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to the first motor for charging the battery.

35. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 32, wherein the controller is operable to control direct transition from operation of the hybrid vehicle in the mode I to operation of the hybrid vehicle in the mode V in response to operator input, and wherein the operator input specifies a rapid increase in torque to be applied to the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

36. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 32, further comprising a turbocharger controllably coupled to the internal combustion engine, operable to increase the MTO of the engine;

wherein the plurality of operation modes further comprise a sustained high-power turbocharged mode VI, wherein, when the RL > the MTO for more than a predetermined time T, the controller is operable to engage the turbocharger to increase the effective MTO of the engine.

37. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 36, wherein the controller is operable to vary the time T with respect to a state of charge of the battery.

38. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, further comprising a turbocharger controllably coupled to the internal combustion engine, operable to increase the MTO of the engine.

39. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to receive operator input of a desired cruising speed, and thereafter control instantaneous torque output of the engine and/or one or more of the first or the second electric motors in accordance with variation in RL so as to maintain a substantially constant vehicle speed.

40. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the battery is operable to be regeneratively charged when instantaneous torque output by the internal combustion engine > the RL, when the RL is negative, and/or when braking is initiated by the operator.

41. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein total torque available to the one or more wheels from the engine is no greater than total torque available from the first and second electric motors combined.

42. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the engine and first electric motor are coupled to a first set of the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle and the second electric motor is coupled to a second set of the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

43. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, further comprising a variable-ratio transmission disposed between the engine and the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

44. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to rotate the engine via the first electric motor before starting the engine such that cylinders of the engine are heated by compression of air therein.

45. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to

limit a rate of change of torque produced by the engine, such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs substantially at a stoichiometric ratio, and wherein if the engine is incapable of supplying an instantaneous torque required, the controller is operable to transfer additional torque from one or more of the first or the second electric motors.

46. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

47. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 46, wherein the clutch connects a first output shaft of or driven by the engine and the first electric motor with a second output shaft of or driven by the second electric motor coupled to the one or more wheels, and wherein the controller is operable to control the speeds of the engine and the first electric motor and of the second motor such that when the clutch is engaged, the speeds of the first and second output shafts are substantially equal.

48. (Previously Presented) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the controller is operable to start and operate the engine at torque output levels less than SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

49. (Currently Amended) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than a setpoint (SP);

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO; ~~and~~

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO; and monitoring patterns of vehicle operation over time and varying the SP accordingly.

50. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

51. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

52. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to:

store power from the at least one electric motor and/or the engine; and

transmit power to the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle.

53. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery indicates the need to do so, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to propel the hybrid vehicle and to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, wherein a first portion of the torque equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, wherein a second portion of the torque in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

54. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle and said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle, each comprises:

if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

55. (Canceled)

56. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

monitoring the RL over time;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine to propel the hybrid vehicle is performed when:

the RL > the SP for at least a predetermined time; or

the RL > a second setpoint (SP2), wherein the SP2 is a larger percentage of the MTO than the SP.

57. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

monitoring the RL over time;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle is performed when the RL < the SP for at least a predetermined amount of time.

58. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a desired cruising speed;

controlling instantaneous engine torque output and operation of the at least one electric motor in accordance with variation in the RL to maintain the speed of the hybrid vehicle according to the desired cruising speed.

59. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO.

60. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49,

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV; and

wherein said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V.

61. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 60, further comprising:

decoupling the engine from wheels of the hybrid vehicle for operation in mode I; and

coupling the engine to the wheels for operation in modes IV and V.

62. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 60, wherein the at least one electric motors comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to store power from the engine and/or the at least one electric motor and transmit power to the at least one electric motor to propel the vehicle;

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level and when the RL < the SP, wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery composes a low-load battery charging mode II, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises:

decoupling the engine from wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

the engine providing torque at least equal to the SP to the first electric motor to charge the battery;

wherein during said operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level, the hybrid vehicle is propelled by torque provided by the second electric motor in response to energy supplied by the battery.

63. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 60, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a change in required torque to be applied to wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

if the received operator input specifies a rapid increase in the required torque, changing operation from operating mode I directly to operating mode V.

64. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 60, wherein the hybrid vehicle further

comprises a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine, and wherein said operating both the engine and the at least one electric motor occurs when the RL > the MTO for less than a predetermined time T, wherein the method further comprises:

operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine when desired, wherein said operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine occurs when the RL > the MTO for more than the predetermined time T, and wherein said operating the turbocharger composes a turbocharged operation mode VI.

65. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 64, further comprising:

varying the time T responsive to the state of charge of the battery.

66. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, wherein the hybrid vehicle further comprises a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine, wherein the method further comprises:

operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine when desired.

67. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

regeneratively charging a battery of the hybrid vehicle when instantaneous torque output of the engine > the RL, when the RL is negative, and/or when braking is initiated by an operator of the hybrid vehicle.

68. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, wherein the hybrid vehicle comprises a variable-ratio transmission disposed between the engine and the wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

69. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

70. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

controlling the engine such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs substantially at a stoichiometric ratio, wherein said controlling the engine comprises limiting a rate of change of torque output of the engine; and

if the engine is incapable of supplying instantaneous torque required to propel the hybrid vehicle, supplying additional torque from the at least one electric motor.

71. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

rotating the engine before starting the engine such that its cylinders are heated by compression of air therein.

72. (Previously Presented) The method of claim 49, further comprising:

operating the engine at torque output levels less than the SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

73 - 75 (Canceled).

76. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

77. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 76, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

78. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 76, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

79. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

80. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

81. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the hybrid vehicle further comprises:

a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to said second electric motor, operable to accept AC or DC current and convert the current to DC or AC current respectively;

a second AC-DC converter coupled to said first electric motor, at least operable to accept AC current and convert the current to DC;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters, wherein said battery is operable to store DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and provide DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

82. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 81, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

83. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 81, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

84. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 81, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

85. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 81, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

86. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 43, wherein said variable-ratio transmission disposed between the engine and the one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle comprises a planetary gear mechanism.

87. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the second electric motor is sufficiently

powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

88. (New) The method of claim 49,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

89. (New) The method of claim 88, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

90. (New) The method of claim 88, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

91. (New) The method of claim 49,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

92. (New) The method of claim 49,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

93. (New) The method of claim 49, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

94. (New) The method of claim 93, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

95. (New) The method of claim 93, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

96. (New) The method of claim 93, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

97. (New) The method of claim 93, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

98. (New) The method of claim 68, wherein said variable-ratio transmission comprises a planetary gear mechanism.

99. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 17, wherein the second electric motor is sufficiently

powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

100. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

monitoring the RL over time;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than a setpoint (SP);

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO; and

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine to propel the hybrid vehicle is performed when:

the RL > the SP for at least a predetermined time; or

the RL > a second setpoint (SP2), wherein the SP2 is a larger percentage of the MTO than the SP; and

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO.

101. (New) The method of claim 100,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

102. (New) The method of claim 101, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

103. (New) The method of claim 101, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately

150 amperes.

104. (New) The method of claim 100,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

105. (New) The method of claim 100,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

106. (New) The method of claim 100, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

107. (New) The method of claim 106, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

108. (New) The method of claim 106, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

109. (New) The method of claim 106, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

110. (New) The method of claim 106, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

111. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

112. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

113. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to:

store energy from the at least one electric motor and/or the engine; and

transmit energy to the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle.

114. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery indicates the need to do so, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to propel the hybrid vehicle and to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, wherein a first portion of the torque equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, wherein a second portion of the torque in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

115. (New) The method of claim 100, wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle and said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle, each comprises:

if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

116. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

monitoring the RL over time;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle is performed when the RL < the SP for at least a predetermined amount of time.

117. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a desired cruising speed;

controlling instantaneous engine torque output and operation of the at least one electric motor in accordance with variation in the RL to maintain the speed of the hybrid vehicle according to the desired cruising speed.

118. (New) The method of claim 100, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO.

119. (New) The method of claim 100,

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV; and

wherein said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V.

120. (New) The method of claim 119, wherein the engine can be operated in mode I without transmitting power to the wheels.

121. (New) The method of claim 119, wherein the at least one electric motors comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to store power from the engine and/or the at least one electric motor and transmit power to the at least one electric motor to propel the vehicle;

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level and when the RL < the SP, wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery composes a low-load battery charging mode II, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises:

decoupling the engine from wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

the engine providing torque at least equal to the SP to the first electric motor to charge the battery;

wherein during said operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level, the hybrid vehicle is propelled by torque provided by the second electric motor in response to energy supplied by the battery.

122. (New) The method of claim 119, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a change in required torque to be applied to wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

if the received operator input specifies a rapid increase in the required torque, changing operation from operating mode I directly to operating mode V.

123. (New) The method of claim 119, wherein the hybrid vehicle further comprises a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine, and wherein said operating both the engine and the at least one electric motor occurs when the RL > the MTO for less than a predetermined time T, wherein the method further comprises:

operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine when desired, wherein said operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine occurs when the RL > the MTO for more than the predetermined time T, and wherein said operating the turbocharger composes a turbocharged operation mode VI.

124. (New) The method of claim 123, further comprising:

varying the time T responsive to the state of charge of the battery.

125. (New) The method of claim 100, wherein the hybrid vehicle further comprises a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine, wherein the method further comprises:

operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine when desired.

126. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

regeneratively charging a battery of the hybrid vehicle when instantaneous torque output of the engine > the RL, when the RL is negative, and/or when braking is initiated by an operator of the hybrid vehicle.

127. (New) The method of claim 100, wherein the hybrid vehicle comprises a variable-ratio transmission disposed between the engine and the wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

128. (New) The method of claim 127, wherein said variable-ratio transmission comprises a planetary gear mechanism.

129. (New) The method of claim 100, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

130. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

controlling the engine such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs substantially at a stoichiometric ratio, wherein said controlling the engine comprises limiting a rate of change of torque output of the engine; and

if the engine is incapable of supplying instantaneous torque required to propel the hybrid vehicle, supplying additional torque from the at least one electric motor.

131. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

rotating the engine before starting the engine such that its cylinders are heated by compression of air therein.

132. (New) The method of claim 100, further comprising:

operating the engine at torque output levels less than the SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

133. (New) The method of claim 100, wherein the second electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

134. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

monitoring the RL over time;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than a setpoint (SP);

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle is performed when the RL < the SP for at least a predetermined amount of time;

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO; and

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO.

135. (New) The method of claim 134,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

136. (New) The method of claim 135, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

137. (New) The method of claim 135, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes

138. (New) The method of claim 134,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

139. (New) The method of claim 134,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

140. (New) The method of claim 134, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side

coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

141. (New) The method of claim 140, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

142. (New) The method of claim 140, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

143. (New) The method of claim 140, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

144. (New) The method of claim 140, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

145. (New) The method of claim 134, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

146. (New) The method of claim 134, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

147. (New) The method of claim 134, further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to:

store energy from the at least one electric motor and/or the engine; and

transmit energy to the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle.

148. (New) The method of claim 134, further comprising:

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery indicates the need to do so, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to propel the hybrid vehicle and to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, wherein a first portion of the torque equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, wherein a second portion of the torque in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

149. (New) The method of claim 134, wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle and said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle, each comprises:

if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

150. (New) The method of claim 134, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a desired cruising speed;

controlling instantaneous engine torque output and operation of the at least one electric motor in accordance with variation in the RL to maintain the speed of the hybrid vehicle according to the desired cruising speed.

151. (New) The method of claim 134, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO.

152. (New) The method of claim 134,

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV; and

wherein said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V.

153. (New) The method of claim 152, wherein the engine can be operated without transfer of power to wheels of the hybrid vehicle in mode I.

154. (New) The method of claim 152, wherein the at least one electric motors comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to store energy from the engine and/or the at least one electric motor and transmit energy to the at least one electric motor to propel the vehicle;

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level and when the RL < the SP, wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery composes a low-load battery charging mode II, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises:

decoupling the engine from wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

the engine providing torque at least equal to the SP to the first electric motor to charge the battery;

wherein during said operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level, the hybrid vehicle is propelled by torque provided by the second electric motor in response to energy supplied by the battery.

155. (New) The method of claim 152, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a change in required torque to be applied to wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

if the received operator input specifies a rapid increase in the required torque, changing operation from operating mode I directly to operating mode V.

156. (New) The method of claim 152, wherein the hybrid vehicle further comprises a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine, and wherein said operating both the engine and the at least one electric motor occurs when the RL > the MTO for less than a predetermined time T, wherein the method further comprises:

operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine when desired, wherein said operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine occurs when the RL > the MTO for more than the predetermined time T, and wherein said operating the turbocharger composes a turbocharged operation mode VI.

157. (New) The method of claim 156, further comprising:

varying the time T responsive to the state of charge of the battery.

158. (New) The method of claim 134, wherein the hybrid vehicle further comprises a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine, wherein the method further comprises:

operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine when desired.

159. (New) The method of claim 134, further comprising:

regeneratively charging a battery of the hybrid vehicle when instantaneous torque output of the engine > the RL, when the RL is negative, and/or when braking is initiated by an operator of the hybrid vehicle.

160. (New) The method of claim 134, wherein the hybrid vehicle comprises a variable-ratio

transmission disposed between the engine and the wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

161. (New) The method of claim 160, wherein said variable-ratio transmission comprises a planetary gear mechanism.

162. (New) The method of claim 134, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

163. (New) The method of claim 134, further comprising:

controlling the engine such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs substantially at a stoichiometric ratio, wherein said controlling the engine comprises limiting a rate of change of torque output of the engine; and

if the engine is incapable of supplying instantaneous torque required to propel the hybrid vehicle, supplying additional torque from the at least one electric motor.

164. (New) The method of claim 134, further comprising:

rotating the engine before starting the engine such that its cylinders are heated by compression of air therein.

165. (New) The method of claim 134, further comprising:

operating the engine at torque output levels less than the SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

166. (New) The method of claim 134, wherein the at least one electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

167. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and a setpoint (SP);

operating at least one first electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one first electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle comprises a low-load operation mode I;

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle comprises a highway cruising operation mode IV;

operating both the at least one first electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO;

wherein said operating both the at least one first electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle comprises an acceleration operation mode V;

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to store power from the engine and/or the at least one first electric motor and transmit power to the at least one first electric motor to propel the vehicle; and

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level and when the RL < the SP, wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises a low-load battery charging mode II, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises:

operating the engine without transferring power to the wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

the engine providing torque at least equal to the SP to the at least one first electric motor to charge the battery;

wherein during said operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery is below a predetermined level, the hybrid vehicle is propelled by torque provided by at least one second electric motor in response to energy supplied by the battery.

168. (New) The method of claim 167,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

169. (New) The method of claim 168, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

170. (New) The method of claim 168, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

171. (New) The method of claim 167,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

172. (New) The method of claim 167,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

173. (New) The method of claim 167, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

174. (New) The method of claim 173, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

175. (New) The method of claim 173, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

176. (New) The method of claim 173, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

177. (New) The method of claim 173, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

178. (New) The method of claim 167, wherein the engine can be operated without transferring power to the wheels of the hybrid vehicle during operation in mode I.

179. (New) The method of claim 167, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a change in required torque to be applied to wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

if the received operator input specifies a rapid increase in the required torque, changing operation from operating mode I directly to operating mode V.

180. (New) The method of claim 167, wherein the at least one electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

181. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and a setpoint (SP);

operating at least one first electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one first electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV;

operating both the at least one first electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO;

wherein said operating both the at least one first electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V;

receiving operator input specifying a change in required torque to be applied to wheels of the hybrid vehicle; and

if the received operator input specifies a rapid increase in the required torque, changing operation from operating mode I directly to operating mode V.

182. (New) The method of claim 181,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

183. (New) The method of claim 181, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

184. (New) The method of claim 181, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

185. (New) The method of claim 181,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

186. (New) The method of claim 181,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

187. (New) The method of claim 181, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

188. (New) The method of claim 187, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

189. (New) The method of claim 187, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

190. (New) The method of claim 187, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

191. (New) The method of claim 187, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

192. (New) The method of claim 181, wherein said engine can be operated without transmitting power to the wheels of the hybrid vehicle during operation in mode I.

193. (New) The method of claim 181, wherein said at least one electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

194. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and a setpoint (SP);

operating at least one first electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one first electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV;

operating both the at least one first electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO;

wherein said operating both the at least one first electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V, and wherein said operating both the engine and the at least one electric motor occurs when the RL > the MTO for less than a predetermined time T; and

operating a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine to increase the MTO of the engine when desired, wherein said operating the turbocharger to increase the MTO of the engine occurs when the RL > the MTO for more than the predetermined time T, and wherein said operating the turbocharger composes a turbocharged operation mode VI.

195. (New) The method of claim 194,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

196. (New) The method of claim 194, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

197. (New) The method of claim 194, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

198. (New) The method of claim 194,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

199. (New) The method of claim 194,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

200. (New) The method of claim 194, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

201. (New) The method of claim 200, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

202. (New) The method of claim 200, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

203. (New) The method of claim 200, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

204. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 200, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

205. (New) The method of claim 194, wherein the engine can be operated without transfer of power to the wheels of the hybrid vehicle during operation in mode I.

206. (New) The method of claim 194, further comprising:

varying the time T responsive to the state of charge of the battery.

207. (New) The method of claim 194, wherein the at least one first electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

208. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than a setpoint (SP);

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO; and

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO; and

operating a turbocharger controllably coupled to the engine to increase the MTO of the engine when desired.

209. (New) The method of claim 208,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

210. (New) The method of claim 209, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

211. (New) The method of claim 209, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

212. (New) The method of claim 208,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

213. (New) The method of claim 208,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

214. (New) The method of claim 208, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

215. (New) The method of claim 214, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

216. (New) The method of claim 214, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

217. (New) The method of claim 214, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said

battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

218. (New) The method of claim 214, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

219. (New) The method of claim 208, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

220. (New) The method of claim 208, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

221. (New) The method of claim 208, further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to:

store power from the at least one electric motor and/or the engine; and

transmit power to the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle.

222. (New) The method of claim 208, further comprising:

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery indicates the need to do so, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to propel the hybrid vehicle and to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, wherein a first portion of the torque equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, wherein a second portion of the torque in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

223. (New) The method of claim 208, wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle and said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle, each comprises:

if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

224. (New) The method of claim 208, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a desired cruising speed;

controlling instantaneous engine torque output and operation of the at least one electric motor in accordance with variation in the RL to maintain the speed of the hybrid vehicle according to the desired cruising speed.

225. (New) The method of claim 208, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO.

226. (New) The method of claim 208,

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV; and

wherein said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V.

227. (New) The method of claim 208, wherein the engine can be operated without transfer of power to the wheels of the hybrid vehicle during operation in mode I.

228. (New) The method of claim 208, further comprising:

regeneratively charging a battery of the hybrid vehicle when instantaneous torque output of the engine > the RL, when the RL is negative, and/or when braking is initiated by an operator of the hybrid vehicle.

229. (New) The method of claim 208, wherein the hybrid vehicle comprises a variable-ratio

transmission disposed between the engine and the wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

230. (New) The method of claim 229, wherein said variable-ratio transmission comprises a planetary gear mechanism.

231. (New) The method of claim 208, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

232. (New) The method of claim 208, further comprising:

rotating the engine before starting the engine such that its cylinders are heated by compression of air therein.

233. (New) The method of claim 208, further comprising:

operating the engine at torque output levels less than the SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

234. (New) The method of claim 208, wherein at least one electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

235. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than a setpoint (SP);

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO; and

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO; and

regeneratively charging a battery of the hybrid vehicle when instantaneous torque output of the engine > the RL, when the RL is negative, and/or when braking is initiated by an operator of the hybrid vehicle.

236. (New) The method of claim 235,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

237. (New) The method of claim 236, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

238. (New) The method of claim 236, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

239. (New) The method of claim 235,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

240. (New) The method of claim 235,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

241. (New) The method of claim 235, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side

coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

242. (New) The method of claim 241, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

243. (New) The method of claim 241, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

244. (New) The method of claim 241, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

245. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 241, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

246. (New) The method of claim 235, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

247. (New) The method of claim 235, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

248. (New) The method of claim 235, further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to:

store energy from the at least one electric motor and/or the engine; and

transmit energy to the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle.

249. (New) The method of claim 235, further comprising:

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery indicates the need to do so, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to propel the hybrid vehicle and to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, wherein a first portion of the torque equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, wherein a second portion of the torque in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

250. (New) The method of claim 235, wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle and said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle, each comprises:

if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

251. (New) The method of claim 235, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a desired cruising speed;

controlling instantaneous engine torque output and operation of the at least one electric motor in accordance with variation in the RL to maintain the speed of the hybrid vehicle according to the desired cruising speed.

252. (New) The method of claim 235, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO.

253. (New) The method of claim 235,

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV; and

wherein said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V.

254. (New) The method of claim 235, wherein the engine can be operated without transfer of power to the wheels of the hybrid vehicle during operation in mode I.

255. (New) The method of claim 235, wherein the hybrid vehicle comprises a variable-ratio transmission disposed between the engine and the wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

256. (New) The method of claim 255, wherein said variable-ratio transmission comprises a planetary gearbox.

257. (New) The method of claim 235, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

258. (New) The method of claim 235, further comprising:

rotating the engine before starting the engine such that its cylinders are heated by compression of air therein.

259. (New) The method of claim 235, further comprising:

operating the engine at torque output levels less than the SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

260. (New) The method of claim 235, wherein the at least one electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

261. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than a setpoint (SP);

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO; and

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO;

controlling said engine such that combustion of fuel within the engine occurs substantially at a stoichiometric ratio, wherein said controlling the engine comprises limiting a rate of change of torque output of the engine; and

if the engine is incapable of supplying instantaneous torque required to propel the hybrid vehicle, supplying additional torque from the at least one electric motor.

262. (New) The method of claim 261,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

263. (New) The method of claim 262, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least

approximately 500 volts.

264. (New) The method of claim 262, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

265. (New) The method of claim 261,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

266. (New) The method of claim 261,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

267. (New) The method of claim 261, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

268. (New) The method of claim 267, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

269. (New) The method of claim 267, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

270. (New) The method of claim 267, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

271. (New) The method of claim 267, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

272. (New) The method of claim 261, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

273. (New) The method of claim 261, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

274. (New) The method of claim 261, further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to:

store energy from the at least one electric motor and/or the engine; and

transmit energy to the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle.

275. (New) The method of claim 261, further comprising:

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery indicates the need to do so, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to propel the hybrid vehicle and to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, wherein a first portion of the torque equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, wherein a second portion of the torque in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

276. (New) The method of claim 261, wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle and said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle, each comprises:

if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

277. (New) The method of claim 261, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a desired cruising speed;

controlling instantaneous engine torque output and operation of the at least one electric motor in accordance with variation in the RL to maintain the speed of the hybrid vehicle according to the desired cruising speed.

278. (New) The method of claim 261, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO.

279. (New) The method of claim 261,

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV; and

wherein said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V.

280. (New) The method of claim 261, wherein the engine can be operated without transfer of power to the wheels of the hybrid vehicle during operation in mode I.

281. (New) The method of claim 261, wherein the hybrid vehicle comprises a variable-ratio transmission disposed between the engine and the wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

282. (New) The method of claim 281, wherein said variable-ratio transmission comprises a planetary gear mechanism.

283. (New) The method of claim 261, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to one or more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

284. (New) The method of claim 261, further comprising:

rotating the engine before starting the engine such that its cylinders are heated by compression of air therein.

285. (New) The method of claim 261, further comprising:

operating the engine at torque output levels less than the SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

286. (New) The method of claim 261, wherein the at least one electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

287. (New) A method for controlling a hybrid vehicle, comprising:

determining instantaneous road load (RL) required to propel the hybrid vehicle responsive to an operator command;

operating at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is less than a setpoint (SP);

operating an internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle when the RL required to do so is between the SP and a maximum torque output (MTO) of the engine, wherein the engine is operable to efficiently produce torque above the SP, and wherein the SP is substantially less than the MTO;

operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle when the torque RL required to do so is more than the MTO; and

rotating the engine before starting the engine such that its cylinders are heated by compression of air therein.

288. (New) The method of claim 287,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying energy from a battery;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied is at least 2.5.

289. (New) The method of claim 288, wherein the maximum DC voltage is at least approximately 500 volts.

290. (New) The method of claim 288, wherein the maximum current is less than approximately 150 amperes.

291. (New) The method of claim 287,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

292. (New) The method of claim 287,

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

293. (New) The method of claim 287, wherein the at least one electric motor comprises a first electric motor and a second electric motor, the method further comprising:

operating a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter having an AC side coupled to the second electric motor, wherein said operating the first AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC or DC current and converting the current to DC or AC current respectively;

operating a second AC-DC converter coupled to a first electric motor, wherein said operating the second AC-DC converter comprises accepting AC current and converting the current to DC;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor comprises supplying power from a battery;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters;

storing DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and providing DC energy to at least said first AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor; and

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage on the DC side of at least said first AC-DC converter coupled to said second electric motor to current supplied from said battery to at least said first AC-DC converter, when maximum current is so supplied, is at least 2.5.

294. (New) The method of claim 293, wherein the maximum DC voltage on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is at least approximately 500 volts.

295. (New) The method of claim 293, wherein the maximum DC current on the DC side of either of said AC-DC converters is less than approximately 150 amperes.

296. (New) The method of claim 293, wherein a maximum DC voltage supplied from said battery is at least approximately 500 volts.

297. (New) The method of claim 293, wherein a maximum current supplied from said battery is less than approximately 150 amperes.

298. (New) The method of claim 287, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle is less than the SP.

299. (New) The method of claim 287, further comprising:

turning off the engine when the torque required to propel the vehicle and/or charge the battery is less than the SP.

300. (New) The method of claim 287, further comprising:

monitoring a state of charge of a battery comprised in the hybrid vehicle, wherein the battery is operable to:

store energy from the at least one electric motor and/or the engine; and

transmit energy to the at least one electric motor to propel the hybrid vehicle.

301. (New) The method of claim 287, further comprising:

operating the engine to charge the battery when the state of charge of the battery indicates the need to do so, wherein the engine is operable to provide torque at least equal to the SP to propel the hybrid vehicle and to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, wherein a first portion of the torque equal to RL is used to propel the hybrid vehicle, wherein a second portion of the torque in excess of RL is used to drive the at least one electric motor to charge the battery, and wherein said operating the engine to charge the battery comprises if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

302. (New) The method of claim 287, wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle and said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle, each comprises:

if the engine is not already running, starting the engine.

303. (New) The method of claim 287, further comprising:

receiving operator input specifying a desired cruising speed;

controlling instantaneous engine torque output and operation of the at least one electric motor in accordance with variation in the RL to maintain the speed of the hybrid vehicle according to the desired cruising speed.

304. (New) The method of claim 287, wherein the SP is at least approximately 30% of the MTO.

305. (New) The method of claim 287,

wherein the hybrid vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes corresponding to values for the RL and the SP;

wherein said operating the at least one electric motor to drive the hybrid vehicle composes a low-load operation mode I;

wherein said operating the internal combustion engine of the hybrid vehicle to propel the hybrid vehicle composes a high-way cruising operation mode IV; and

wherein said operating both the at least one electric motor and the engine to propel the hybrid vehicle composes an acceleration operation mode V.

306. (New) The method of claim 305, wherein the engine can be operated without transfer of power to the wheels of the hybrid vehicle during operation in mode I.

307. (New) The method of claim 287, wherein the hybrid vehicle comprises a variable-ratio transmission disposed between the engine and the wheels of the hybrid vehicle.

308. (New) The method of claim 307, wherein said variable-ratio transmission comprises a planetary gearbox.

309. (New) The method of claim 287, wherein the engine is controllably coupled to one or

more wheels of the hybrid vehicle by a clutch.

310. (New) The method of claim 287, further comprising:

operating the engine at torque output levels less than the SP under abnormal and transient conditions to satisfy drivability and/or safety considerations.

311. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 287, wherein the at least one electric motor is sufficiently powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of torque from the engine to propel the vehicle.

312. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

a controller capable of accepting inputs indicative of vehicle operating parameters and providing control signals in response to a control program;

a battery bank;

an internal combustion engine operable to provide propulsive torque to road wheels of said vehicle;

a first AC electric starting motor electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to said internal combustion engine, and responsive to commands from said controller for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank, such that said first electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept torque from said engine to charge said battery bank, and (2) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said engine for starting said engine;

a second AC electric traction motor, electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to road wheels of said vehicle, and responsive to commands from said controller, for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank such that said second electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said road wheels to propel said vehicle, and (2) accept torque from said road wheels to charge said battery bank;

a solid state inverter connected to the second AC motor for converting DC to AC and AC to DC;

wherein said controller is provided with signals responsive to the instantaneous road load experienced by said vehicle and to the state of charge of said battery bank, and controls operation of said engine and said first and second motors so that said vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes responsive to said signals; and

wherein energy originating at the battery is supplied to the solid state inverter at a DC voltage having a peak of at least 500 volts.

313. (New) The vehicle of claim 312 wherein energy originating at the battery is supplied to the solid state inverter at a maximum current of no more than about 75 amperes.

314. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

a controller capable of accepting inputs indicative of vehicle operating parameters and providing control signals in response to a control program;

a battery bank;

an internal combustion engine operable to provide propulsive torque to road wheels of said vehicle;

a first AC electric starting motor electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to said internal combustion engine, and responsive to commands from said controller for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank, such that said first electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept torque from said engine to charge said battery bank, and (2) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said engine for starting said engine;

a second AC electric traction motor, electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to road wheels of said vehicle, and responsive to commands from said controller, for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank such that said second electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said road wheels to propel said vehicle, and (2) accept torque from said road wheels to charge said battery bank;

a solid state inverter connected to the second AC motor for converting DC to AC and AC to DC;

wherein said controller is provided with signals responsive to the instantaneous road load experienced by said vehicle and to the state of charge of said battery bank, and controls operation of said engine and said first and second motors so that said vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes responsive to said signals; and

wherein energy originating at the battery is supplied to the solid state inverter at a maximum current of no more than about 75 amperes.

315. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

a controller capable of accepting inputs indicative of vehicle operating parameters and providing control signals in response to a control program;

a battery bank;

an internal combustion engine operable to provide propulsive torque to road wheels of said vehicle;

a first AC electric starting motor electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to said internal combustion engine, and responsive to commands from said controller for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank, such that said first electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept torque from said engine to charge said battery bank, and (2) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said engine for starting said engine;

a second AC electric traction motor, electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to road wheels of said vehicle, and responsive to commands from said controller, for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank such that said second electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said road wheels to propel said vehicle, and (2) accept torque from said road wheels to charge said battery bank;

a solid state inverter connected to the second AC motor for converting DC to AC and AC to DC;

wherein said controller is provided with signals responsive to the instantaneous road load experienced by said vehicle and to the state of charge of said battery bank, and controls operation of said engine and said first and second motors so that said vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes responsive to said signals; and

wherein energy originating at the battery is supplied to the solid state inverter at a voltage and current such that the ratio of voltage to current is at least about 2.5 to 1.

316. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

a controller capable of accepting inputs indicative of vehicle operating parameters and providing control signals in response to a control program;

a battery bank;

an internal combustion engine operable to provide propulsive torque to road wheels of said vehicle;

a first AC electric starting motor electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to said internal combustion engine, and responsive to commands from said controller for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank, such that said first electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept torque from said engine to charge said battery bank, and (2) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said engine for starting said engine;

a second AC electric traction motor, electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to road wheels of said vehicle, and responsive to commands from said controller, for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank such that said second electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said road wheels to propel said vehicle, and (2) accept torque from said road wheels to charge said battery bank;

a solid state inverter connected to the second AC motor for converting DC to AC and AC to DC;

wherein said controller is provided with signals responsive to the instantaneous road load experienced by said vehicle and to the state of charge of said battery bank, and controls operation of said engine and said first and second motors so that said vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes responsive to said signals; and

wherein energy originating at the battery is supplied to the solid state inverter at a voltage having a peak of at least about 800 volts.

317. (New) The vehicle of claim 316 wherein energy originating at the battery is supplied to the solid state inverter at a peak current of no more than 150 amperes.

318. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

a controller capable of accepting inputs indicative of vehicle operating parameters and providing control signals in response to a control program;

a battery bank;

an internal combustion engine operable to provide propulsive torque to road wheels of said vehicle;

a first AC electric starting motor electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to said internal combustion engine, and responsive to commands from said controller for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank, such that said first electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept torque from said engine to charge said battery bank, and (2) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said engine for starting said engine;

a second AC electric traction motor, electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to road wheels of said vehicle, and responsive to commands from said controller, for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank such that said second electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said road wheels to propel said vehicle, and (2) accept torque from said road wheels to charge said battery bank;

a solid state inverter connected to the second AC motor for converting DC to AC and AC to DC;

wherein said controller is provided with signals responsive to the instantaneous road load experienced by said vehicle and to the state of charge of said battery bank, and controls operation of said engine and said first and second motors so that said vehicle is operated in a plurality of operating modes responsive to said signals; and

wherein energy originating at the battery is supplied to the solid state inverter at a maximum current of no more than 150 amperes.

319. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

a controller capable of accepting inputs indicative of vehicle operating parameters and providing control signals in response to a control program;

a battery bank;

an internal combustion engine operable to provide propulsive torque to road wheels of said vehicle;

a first AC electric starting motor electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to said internal combustion engine, and responsive to commands from said controller for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank, such that said first electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept torque from said engine to charge said battery bank, and (2) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said engine for starting said engine;

a second AC electric traction motor, electrically coupled to said battery bank and mechanically coupled to road wheels of said vehicle, and responsive to commands from said controller, for (a) accepting electrical energy from said battery bank and (b) providing electrical energy to said battery bank such that said second electric motor can be controlled to (1) accept energy from said battery bank to apply torque to said road wheels to propel said vehicle, and (2) accept torque from said road wheels to charge said battery bank;

a solid state inverter connected to the second AC motor for converting DC to AC and AC to DC;

wherein said controller is provided with signals responsive to the instantaneous road load experienced by said vehicle and to the state of charge of said battery bank, and controls operation of said engine such that said engine is operated only above a setpoint (SP), said setpoint SP varying as a function of said vehicle operating parameters.

320. (New) The vehicle of claim 319, wherein said setpoint SP is varied as a function of vehicle speed.

321. (New) The hybrid vehicle of claim 319, wherein the second electric motor is sufficiently

powerful to provide acceleration of said vehicle sufficient to conform to the Federal urban cycle driving fuel mileage test without use of power from the engine to propel the vehicle.

322. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

one or more wheels;

an internal combustion engine operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a first electric motor coupled to the engine;

a second electric motor operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a battery coupled to the first and second electric motors, operable to:

provide current to the first and/or the second electric motors; and

accept current from the first and second electric motors; and

a controller, operable to control the flow of electrical and mechanical power between the engine, the first and the second electric motors, and the one or more wheels;

a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter coupled to said first electric motor, at least operable to accept AC current and convert the current to DC;

a second AC-DC converter having an AC side coupled to said second electric motor, operable to accept AC or DC current and convert the current to DC or AC current respectively;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters, wherein said battery is operable to store DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and provide DC energy to at least said second AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor;

wherein a ratio of maximum DC voltage to maximum current supplied from said battery, measured on the DC side of at least said second AC-DC converter, is at least 2.5; and

wherein the controller is operable to operate the engine when the power required from the engine to satisfy the road load experienced by the vehicle and/or to drive one or more of the first and second motors to charge the battery is at least equal to a minimum value at which power is efficiently produced by said engine but that is substantially less than the maximum power output of the engine.

323. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

one or more wheels;

an internal combustion engine operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a first electric motor coupled to the engine;

a second electric motor operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a battery coupled to the first and second electric motors, operable to:

provide current to the first and/or the second electric motors; and

accept current from the first and second electric motors; and

a controller, operable to control the flow of electrical and mechanical power between the engine, the first and the second electric motors, and the one or more wheels;

a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter coupled to said first electric motor, at least operable to accept AC current and convert the current to DC;

a second AC-DC converter having an AC side coupled to said second electric motor, operable to accept AC or DC current and convert the current to DC or AC current respectively;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters, wherein said battery is operable to store DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and provide DC energy to at least said second AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor;

wherein the peak DC voltage, measured on the DC side of at least said second AC-DC converter, is at least about 500 volts; and

wherein the controller is operable to operate the engine when the power required from the engine to satisfy the road load experienced by the vehicle and/or to drive one or more of the first and second motors to charge the battery is at least equal to a minimum value at which power is efficiently produced by said engine but that is substantially less than the maximum power output of the engine.

324. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

one or more wheels;

an internal combustion engine operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a first electric motor coupled to the engine;

a second electric motor operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a battery coupled to the first and second electric motors, operable to:

provide current to the first and/or the second electric motors; and

accept current from the first and second electric motors; and

a controller, operable to control the flow of electrical and mechanical power between the engine, the first and the second electric motors, and the one or more wheels;

a first alternating current-direct current (AC-DC) converter coupled to said first electric motor, at least operable to accept AC current and convert the current to DC;

a second AC-DC converter having an AC side coupled to said second electric motor, operable to accept AC or DC current and convert the current to DC or AC current respectively;

wherein said battery is coupled to a DC side of said AC-DC converters, wherein said battery is operable to store DC energy received from said AC-DC converters and provide DC energy to at least said second AC-DC converter for providing power to at least said second electric motor;

wherein the peak DC current, measured on the DC side of at least said second AC-DC converter, is no more than about 150 amperes; and

wherein the controller is operable to operate the engine when the power required from the engine to satisfy the road load experienced by the vehicle and/or to drive one or more of the first and second motors to charge the battery is at least equal to a minimum value at which power is efficiently produced by said engine but that is substantially less than the maximum power output of the engine.

325. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

one or more wheels;

an internal combustion engine operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a first electric motor coupled to the engine;

a second electric motor operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a battery coupled to the first and second electric motors, operable to:

provide current to the first and/or the second electric motors; and

accept current from the first and second electric motors; and

a controller, operable to control the flow of electrical and mechanical power between the engine, the first and the second electric motors, and the one or more wheels;

wherein energy originating at the battery is supplied to the second motor at a peak voltage of at least about 500 volts; and

wherein the controller is operable to operate the engine when the power required from the engine to satisfy the road load experienced by the vehicle and/or to drive one or more of the first and second motors to charge the battery is at least equal to a minimum value at which power is efficiently produced by said engine but that is substantially less than the maximum power output of the engine.

326. (New) A hybrid vehicle, comprising:

one or more wheels;

an internal combustion engine operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a first electric motor coupled to the engine;

a second electric motor operable to propel the hybrid vehicle by providing torque to the one or more wheels;

a battery coupled to the first and second electric motors, operable to:

provide current to the first and/or the second electric motors; and

accept current from the first and second electric motors; and

a controller, operable to control the flow of electrical and mechanical power between the engine, the first and the second electric motors, and the one or more wheels;

wherein power originating at the battery is supplied to the second motor at a peak current no greater than about 150 amperes; and

wherein the controller is operable to operate the engine when the power required from the engine to satisfy the road load experienced by the vehicle and/or to drive one or more of the first and second motors to charge the battery is at least equal to a minimum value at which power is efficiently produced by said engine but that is substantially less than the maximum power output of the engine.

IFW

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of :

Severinsky et al	: Examiner: Dunn
Serial No.: 11/229,762	: Group Art Unit: 3616
Filed: January 13, 2006	: Att.Dkt:PAICE201.DIV.2
For: Hybrid Vehicles	

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

RESPONSE TO NOTICE OF NON-COMPLIANT AMENDMENT

Sir:

In response to the Notice of Non-Compliant Amendment (copy attached) mailed in connection with this application on November 16, 2006, and setting a thirty-day period for response, attached is a corrected copy of the Amendment filed 25 October 2006, having had the claims renumbered to correct errors therein.

Entry of the Amendment and favorable action on the merits is earnestly solicited.

Respectfully submitted,

11/22/06
Dated

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190

Notice of Non-Compliant Amendment (37 CFR 1.121)	Application No.	Applicant(s)
	11/229,762	Alex J. Severinsky
	Examiner	Art Unit
	Dunn, David R.	3616

-- *The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address* --

The amendment document filed on _25 October 2006_ is considered non-compliant because it has failed to meet the requirements of 37 CFR 1.121 or 1.4. In order for the amendment document to be compliant, correction of the following item(s) is required.

THE FOLLOWING MARKED (X) ITEM(S) CAUSE THE AMENDMENT DOCUMENT TO BE NON-COMPLIANT:

☐ 1. Amendments to the specification:
- ☐ A. Amended paragraph(s) do not include markings.
- ☐ B. New paragraph(s) should not be underlined.
- ☐ C. Other ____.

☐ 2. Abstract:
- ☐ A. Not presented on a separate sheet. 37 CFR 1.72.
- ☐ B. Other ____.

☐ 3. Amendments to the drawings:
- ☐ A. The drawings are not properly identified in the top margin as "Replacement Sheet," "New Sheet," or "Annotated Sheet" as required by 37 CFR 1.121(d).
- ☐ B. The practice of submitting proposed drawing correction has been eliminated. Replacement drawings showing amended figures, without markings, in compliance with 37 CFR 1.84 are required.
- ☐ C. Other ____.

☒ 4. Amendments to the claims:
- ☒ A. A complete listing of all of the claims is not present.
- ☐ B. The listing of claims does not include the text of all pending claims (including withdrawn claims)
- ☐ C. Each claim has not been provided with the proper status identifier, and as such, the individual status of each claim cannot be identified. Note: the status of every claim must be indicated after its claim number by using one of the following status identifiers: (Original), (Currently amended), (Canceled), (Previously presented), (New), (Not entered), (Withdrawn) and (Withdrawn-currently amended).
- ☒ D. The claims of this amendment paper have not been presented in ascending numerical order.
- ☒ E. Other: _The claims need to be renumbered_.

☐ 5. Other (e.g., the amendment is unsigned or not signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.4):

____

For further explanation of the amendment format required by 37 CFR 1.121, see MPEP § 714.

TIME PERIODS FOR FILING A REPLY TO THIS NOTICE:

1. Applicant is given **no new time period** if the non-compliant amendment is an after-final amendment, an amendment filed after allowance, or a drawing submission (only). If applicant wishes to resubmit the non-compliant after-final amendment with corrections, the **entire corrected amendment** must be resubmitted.

2. Applicant is given **one month**, or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer, from the mail date of this notice to supply the correction, if the non-compliant amendment is one of the following: a preliminary amendment, a non-final amendment (including a submission for a request for continued examination (RCE) under 37 CFR 1.114), a supplemental amendment filed within a suspension period under 37 CFR 1.103(a) or (c), and an amendment filed in response to a *Quayle* action. If any of above boxes 1. to 4. are checked, the correction required is only the **corrected section** of the non-compliant amendment in compliance with 37 CFR 1.121.

Extensions of time are available under 37 CFR 1.136(a) only if the non-compliant amendment is a non-final amendment or an amendment filed in response to a *Quayle* action.

Failure to timely respond to this notice will result in:

Abandonment of the application if the non-compliant amendment is a non-final amendment or an amendment filed in response to a *Quayle* action; or

Non-entry of the amendment if the non-compliant amendment is a preliminary amendment or supplemental amendment.

Lisa Fulton (571) 272-4348

Legal Instruments Examiner (LIE), if applicable Telephone No.

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office Part of Paper No.

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of :

Severinsky et al	: Examiner: Dunn
Serial No.: 11/229,762	: Group Art Unit: 3616
Filed: January 13, 2006	: Att.Dkt:PAICE201.DIV.2
For: Hybrid Vehicles	

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

AMENDMENT - REVISED

Sir:

In response to the Office Action mailed August 10, 2006, kindly amend the above-identified application as follows:

EAST Search History

Ref #	Hits	Search Query	DBs	Default Operator	Plurals	Time Stamp
L1	1	("6209672").PN.	USPAT	OR	OFF	2007/02/02 13:19
L2	1	("20060100057").PN.	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2007/02/02 13:19
L3	78	("6209672").URPN.	USPAT	OR	OFF	2007/02/02 13:27
L4	1	("5343970").PN.	USPAT	OR	OFF	2007/02/02 13:36
L5	3823	hybrid adj vehicle	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2007/02/02 13:37
L6	731	road adj load	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2007/02/02 13:37
L7	55	5 and 6	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2007/02/02 13:38
L8	4266	maximum with torque with output	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2007/02/02 13:39
L9	13707	setpoint	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2007/02/02 13:39
L10	17	5 and 8 and 9	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2007/02/02 13:39
L11	2628	((280/65.2) or (180/65.3) or (180/65.4) or (180/65.8) or (180/165) or (477/2) or (477/3) or (701/54)).CCLS.	US-PGPUB; USPAT	OR	OFF	2007/02/02 13:41

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE AND FEE(S) DUE

7590 02/08/2007

Michael de Angeli
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835

EXAMINER	
DUNN, DAVID R	
ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
3636	

DATE MAILED: 02/08/2007

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
11/229,762	01/13/2006	Alex J. Severinsky	PAICE201.DIV. 2	3347

TITLE OF INVENTION: HYBRID VEHICLES

APPLN. TYPE	SMALL ENTITY	ISSUE FEE DUE	PUBLICATION FEE DUE	PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	NO	$1400	$300	$0	$1700	05/08/2007

THE APPLICATION IDENTIFIED ABOVE HAS BEEN EXAMINED AND IS ALLOWED FOR ISSUANCE AS A PATENT. PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS CLOSED. THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS. THIS APPLICATION IS SUBJECT TO WITHDRAWAL FROM ISSUE AT THE INITIATIVE OF THE OFFICE OR UPON PETITION BY THE APPLICANT. SEE 37 CFR 1.313 AND MPEP 1308.

THE ISSUE FEE AND PUBLICATION FEE (IF REQUIRED) MUST BE PAID WITHIN THREE MONTHS FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS NOTICE OR THIS APPLICATION SHALL BE REGARDED AS ABANDONED. THIS STATUTORY PERIOD CANNOT BE EXTENDED. SEE 35 U.S.C. 151. THE ISSUE FEE DUE INDICATED ABOVE DOES NOT REFLECT A CREDIT FOR ANY PREVIOUSLY PAID ISSUE FEE IN THIS APPLICATION. IF AN ISSUE FEE HAS PREVIOUSLY BEEN PAID IN THIS APPLICATION (AS SHOWN ABOVE), THE RETURN OF PART B OF THIS FORM WILL BE CONSIDERED A REQUEST TO REAPPLY THE PREVIOUSLY PAID ISSUE FEE TOWARD THE ISSUE FEE NOW DUE.

HOW TO REPLY TO THIS NOTICE:

I. Review the SMALL ENTITY status shown above.

If the SMALL ENTITY is shown as YES, verify your current SMALL ENTITY status:

A. If the status is the same, pay the TOTAL FEE(S) DUE shown above.

B. If the status above is to be removed, check box 5b on Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal and pay the PUBLICATION FEE (if required) and twice the amount of the ISSUE FEE shown above, or

If the SMALL ENTITY is shown as NO:

A. Pay TOTAL FEE(S) DUE shown above, or

B. If applicant claimed SMALL ENTITY status before, or is now claiming SMALL ENTITY status, check box 5a on Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal and pay the PUBLICATION FEE (if required) and 1/2 the ISSUE FEE shown above.

II. PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL, or its equivalent, must be completed and returned to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) with your ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). If you are charging the fee(s) to your deposit account, section "4b" of Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal should be completed and an extra copy of the form should be submitted. If an equivalent of Part B is filed, a request to reapply a previously paid issue fee must be clearly made, and delays in processing may occur due to the difficulty in recognizing the paper as an equivalent of Part B.

III. All communications regarding this application must give the application number. Please direct all communications prior to issuance to Mail Stop ISSUE FEE unless advised to the contrary.

IMPORTANT REMINDER: Utility patents issuing on applications filed on or after Dec. 12, 1980 may require payment of maintenance fees. It is patentee's responsibility to ensure timely payment of maintenance fees when due.

PTOL-85 (Rev. 07/06) Approved for use through 04/30/2007.

PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL

Complete and send this form, together with applicable fee(s), to: Mail **Mail Stop ISSUE FEE**
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
or Fax (571)-273-2885

INSTRUCTIONS: This form should be used for transmitting the ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). Blocks 1 through 5 should be completed where appropriate. All further correspondence including the Patent, advance orders and notification of maintenance fees will be mailed to the current correspondence address as indicated unless corrected below or directed otherwise in Block 1, by (a) specifying a new correspondence address; and/or (b) indicating a separate "FEE ADDRESS" for maintenance fee notifications.

CURRENT CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS (Note: Use Block 1 for any change of address)

7590 02/08/2007

Michael de Angeli
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835

Note: A certificate of mailing can only be used for domestic mailings of the Fee(s) Transmittal. This certificate cannot be used for any other accompanying papers. Each additional paper, such as an assignment or formal drawing, must have its own certificate of mailing or transmission.

Certificate of Mailing or Transmission

I hereby certify that this Fee(s) Transmittal is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage for first class mail in an envelope addressed to the Mail Stop ISSUE FEE address above, or being facsimile transmitted to the USPTO (571) 273-2885, on the date indicated below.

(Depositor's name)

(Signature)

(Date)

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
11/229,762	01/13/2006	Alex J. Severinsky	PAICE201.DIV. 2	3347

TITLE OF INVENTION: HYBRID VEHICLES

APPLN. TYPE	SMALL ENTITY	ISSUE FEE DUE	PUBLICATION FEE DUE	PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	NO	$1400	$300	$0	$1700	05/08/2007

EXAMINER	ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCLASS
DUNN, DAVID R	3636	180-065400

1. Change of correspondence address or indication of "Fee Address" (37 CFR 1.363).

☐ Change of correspondence address (or Change of Correspondence Address form PTO/SB/122) attached.

☐ "Fee Address" indication (or "Fee Address" Indication form PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 or more recent) attached. **Use of a Customer Number is required.**

2. For printing on the patent front page, list

(1) the names of up to 3 registered patent attorneys or agents OR, alternatively,

(2) the name of a single firm (having as a member a registered attorney or agent) and the names of up to 2 registered patent attorneys or agents. If no name is listed, no name will be printed.

1 ____________________

2 ____________________

3 ____________________

3. ASSIGNEE NAME AND RESIDENCE DATA TO BE PRINTED ON THE PATENT (print or type)

PLEASE NOTE: Unless an assignee is identified below, no assignee data will appear on the patent. If an assignee is identified below, the document has been filed for recordation as set forth in 37 CFR 3.11. Completion of this form is NOT a substitute for filing an assignment.

(A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE

(B) RESIDENCE: (CITY and STATE OR COUNTRY)

Please check the appropriate assignee category or categories (will not be printed on the patent) : ☐ Individual ☐ Corporation or other private group entity ☐ Government

4a. The following fee(s) are submitted:

☐ Issue Fee

☐ Publication Fee (No small entity discount permitted)

☐ Advance Order - # of Copies ____________________

4b. Payment of Fee(s): **(Please first reapply any previously paid issue fee shown above)**

☐ A check is enclosed.

☐ Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached.

☐ The Director is hereby authorized to charge the required fee(s), any deficiency, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account Number ____________ (enclose an extra copy of this form).

5. **Change in Entity Status** (from status indicated above)

☐ a. Applicant claims SMALL ENTITY status. See 37 CFR 1.27.

☐ b. Applicant is no longer claiming SMALL ENTITY status. See 37 CFR 1.27(g)(2).

NOTE: The Issue Fee and Publication Fee (if required) will not be accepted from anyone other than the applicant; a registered attorney or agent; or the assignee or other party in interest as shown by the records of the United States Patent and Trademark Office.

Authorized Signature ____________________ Date ____________________

Typed or printed name ____________________ Registration No. ____________________

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.311. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
11/229,762	01/13/2006	Alex J. Severinsky	PAICE201.DIV. 2	3347

7590 02/08/2007

Michael de Angeli
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835

EXAMINER	
DUNN, DAVID R	
ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
3636	

DATE MAILED: 02/08/2007

Determination of Patent Term Adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154 (b)

(application filed on or after May 29, 2000)

The Patent Term Adjustment to date is 0 day(s). If the issue fee is paid on the date that is three months after the mailing date of this notice and the patent issues on the Tuesday before the date that is 28 weeks (six and a half months) after the mailing date of this notice, the Patent Term Adjustment will be 0 day(s).

If a Continued Prosecution Application (CPA) was filed in the above-identified application, the filing date that determines Patent Term Adjustment is the filing date of the most recent CPA.

Applicant will be able to obtain more detailed information by accessing the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) WEB site (http://pair.uspto.gov).

Any questions regarding the Patent Term Extension or Adjustment determination should be directed to the Office of Patent Legal Administration at (571)-272-7702. Questions relating to issue and publication fee payments should be directed to the Customer Service Center of the Office of Patent Publication at 1-(888)-786-0101 or (571)-272-4200.

PTOL-85 (Rev. 07/06) Approved for use through 04/30/2007.

Search Notes	Application/Control No. 11/229,762	Applicant(s)/Patent under Reexamination SEVERINSKY ET AL.
	Examiner David Dunn	Art Unit 3616

SEARCHED

Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner
180	65.2 65.3 65.4 65.8 165	8/1/2006	DD
477	2, 3		
701	54		
Updated	Above	1/2/07	DD

SEARCH NOTES (INCLUDING SEARCH STRATEGY)

	DATE	EXMR
EAST text search; see enclosed.	8/1/2006	DD

INTERFERENCE SEARCHED

Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner
Interference text search; see enclosed		1/2/07	DD

Notice of Allowability	Application No.	Applicant(s)	
	11/229,762	SEVERINSKY ET AL.	
	Examiner	Art Unit	
	David Dunn	3636	

-- The MAILING DATE of this communication appears on the cover sheet with the correspondence address--

All claims being allowable, PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS (OR REMAINS) CLOSED in this application. If not included herewith (or previously mailed), a Notice of Allowance (PTOL-85) or other appropriate communication will be mailed in due course. **THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWABILITY IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS.** This application is subject to withdrawal from issue at the initiative of the Office or upon petition by the applicant. See 37 CFR 1.313 and MPEP 1308.

1. ☒ This communication is responsive to *the amendment filed 11/22/2006*.
2. ☒ The allowed claim(s) is/are *17-54,56-72 and 76-326*.
3. ☐ Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) or (f).
   a) ☐ All b) ☐ Some* c) ☐ None of the:
   1. ☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received.
   2. ☐ Certified copies of the priority documents have been received in Application No. _____ .
   3. ☐ Copies of the certified copies of the priority documents have been received in this national stage application from the International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).

   * Certified copies not received: _____.

Applicant has THREE MONTHS FROM THE "MAILING DATE" of this communication to file a reply complying with the requirements noted below. Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONMENT of this application.
THIS THREE-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDABLE.

4. ☐ A SUBSTITUTE OATH OR DECLARATION must be submitted. Note the attached EXAMINER'S AMENDMENT or NOTICE OF INFORMAL PATENT APPLICATION (PTO-152) which gives reason(s) why the oath or declaration is deficient.
5. ☐ CORRECTED DRAWINGS (as "replacement sheets") must be submitted.
   (a) ☐ including changes required by the Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948) attached
   1) ☐ hereto or 2) ☐ to Paper No./Mail Date _____.
   (b) ☐ including changes required by the attached Examiner's Amendment / Comment or in the Office action of Paper No./Mail Date _____.

   Identifying indicia such as the application number (see 37 CFR 1.84(c)) should be written on the drawings in the front (not the back) of each sheet. Replacement sheet(s) should be labeled as such in the header according to 37 CFR 1.121(d).
6. ☐ DEPOSIT OF and/or INFORMATION about the deposit of BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL must be submitted. Note the attached Examiner's comment regarding REQUIREMENT FOR THE DEPOSIT OF BIOLOGICAL MATERIAL.

Attachment(s)

1. ☐ Notice of References Cited (PTO-892)
2. ☐ Notice of Draftperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948)
3. ☐ Information Disclosure Statements (PTO/SB/08), Paper No./Mail Date _____
4. ☐ Examiner's Comment Regarding Requirement for Deposit of Biological Material
5. ☐ Notice of Informal Patent Application
6. ☐ Interview Summary (PTO-413), Paper No./Mail Date _____ .
7. ☒ Examiner's Amendment/Comment
8. ☐ Examiner's Statement of Reasons for Allowance
9. ☐ Other _____.

David Dunn
SPE
Art Unit: 3636

DETAILED ACTION

Terminal Disclaimer

1. The terminal disclaimer filed on 10/25/2006 disclaiming the terminal portion of any patent granted on this application which would extend beyond the expiration date of Patent 7,104,347 has been reviewed and is accepted. The terminal disclaimer has been recorded.

Allowable Subject Matter

2. Claims 17-54, 56-72, and 76-326 are allowed.

Any inquiry concerning this communication should be directed to David Dunn at telephone number 571-272-6670.

DAVID R. DUNN
PRIMARY EXAMINER

Issue Classification	Application/Control No.	Applicant(s)/Patent under Reexamination
	11/229,762	SEVERINSKY ET AL.
	Examiner	Art Unit
	David Dunn	3636

ISSUE CLASSIFICATION

ORIGINAL		CROSS REFERENCE(S)							
CLASS	SUBCLASS	CLASS	SUBCLASS (ONE SUBCLASS PER BLOCK)						
180	65.2	180	65.4	701	54				

INTERNATIONAL CLASSIFICATION				
B	6	0	K	6/02
				/
				/
				/
				/

(Assistant Examiner) (Date)

(Legal Instruments Examiner) (Date) 2/6/07

David R. Dunn 1/5/07

(Primary Examiner) (Date)

Total Claims Allowed: 306	
O.G. Print Claim(s)	O.G. Print Fig.
1	3

☒ Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant ☐ CPA ☒ T.D. ☐ R.1.47

Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original	Final	Original
	1		31		61		91		121		151		181
	2		32		62		92		122		152		182
	3		33		63		93		123		153		183
	4		34		64		94		124		154		184
	5		35		65		95		125		155		185
	6		36		66		96		126		156		186
	7		37		67		97		127		157		187
	8		38		68		98		128		158		188
	9		39		69		99		129		159		189
	10		40		70		100		130		160		190
	11		41		71		101		131		161		191
	12		42		72		102		132		162		192
	13		43		73		103		133		163		193
	14		44		74		104		134		164		194
	15		45		75		105		135		165		195
	16		46		76		106		136		166		196
	17		47		77		107		137		167		197
	18		48		78		108		138		168		198
	19		49		79		109		139		169		199
	20		50		80		110		140		170		200
	21		51		81		111		141		171		201
	22		52		82		112		142		172		202
	23		53		83		113		143		173		203
	24		54		84		114		144		174		204
	25		55		85		115		145		175		205
	26		56		86		116		146		176		206
	27		57		87		117		147		177		207
	28		58		88		118		148		178		208
	29		59		89		119		149		179		209
	30		60		90		120		150		180		210

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office

Part of Paper No. 20070202

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

Bib Data Sheet

CONFIRMATION NO. 3347

SERIAL NUMBER	FILING OR 371(c) DATE	CLASS	GROUP ART UNIT	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.
11/229,762	01/13/2006 RULE	180	3636	PAICE201.DIV. 2

APPLICANTS

Alex J. Severinsky, Washington, DC;
Theodore Louckes, Holly, MI;

**** CONTINUING DATA ****************************

This application is a DIV of 10/382,577 03/07/2003 PAT 7,104,347 which is a DIV of 09/822,866 04/02/2001 PAT 6,554,088
which is a CIP of 09/264,817 03/09/1999 PAT 6,209,672
which claims benefit of 60/100,095 09/14/1998
and said 10/382,577 03/07/2003
is a CIP of 09/392,743 09/09/1999 PAT 6,338,391
which claims benefit of 60/122,296 03/01/1999

DD

**** FOREIGN APPLICATIONS ***********************

NONE DD

IF REQUIRED, FOREIGN FILING LICENSE GRANTED **
10/08/2005

Foreign Priority claimed / 35 USC 119 (a-d) conditions met / Verified and Acknowledged	STATE OR COUNTRY	SHEETS DRAWING	TOTAL CLAIMS	INDEPENDENT CLAIMS
Foreign Priority claimed ☐ yes ☒ no 35 USC 119 (a-d) conditions met ☐ yes ☒ no ☐ Met after Allowance Verified and Acknowledged Examiner's Signature ____ Initials ____	DC	17	~~7~~ 306	3

ADDRESS

Michael de Angeli
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI02835

TITLE

HYBRID VEHICLES

FILING FEE RECEIVED	FEES	
19900	FEES: Authority has been given in Paper No. _________ to charge/credit DEPOSIT ACCOUNT No. _________ for following:	☐ All Fees ☐ 1.16 Fees (Filing) ☐ 1.17 Fees (Processing Ext. of time) ☐ 1.18 Fees (Issue) ☐ Other ____________ ☐ Credit

PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL

Complete and send this form, together with applicable fee(s), to: Mail **Mail Stop ISSUE FEE**
Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
or Fax (571)-273-2885

OIPE IAP
FEB 15 2007
PATENT & TRADEMARK OFFICE

INSTRUCTIONS: This form should be used for transmitting the ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). Blocks 1 through 5 should be completed where appropriate. All further correspondence including the Patent, advance orders and notification of maintenance fees will be mailed to the current correspondence address as indicated unless corrected below or directed otherwise in Block 1, by (a) specifying a new correspondence address; and/or (b) indicating a separate "FEE ADDRESS" for maintenance fee notifications.

CURRENT CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS (Note: Use Block 1 for any change of address)

7590 02/08/2007

Michael de Angeli
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835

Note: A certificate of mailing can only be used for domestic mailings of the Fee(s) Transmittal. This certificate cannot be used for any other accompanying papers. Each additional paper, such as an assignment or formal drawing, must have its own certificate of mailing or transmission.

Certificate of Mailing or Transmission

I hereby certify that this Fee(s) Transmittal is being deposited with the United States Postal Service with sufficient postage for first class mail in an envelope addressed to the Mail Stop ISSUE FEE address above, or being facsimile transmitted to the USPTO (571) 273-2885, on the date indicated below.

(Depositor's name)
(Signature)
(Date)

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
11/229,762	01/13/2006	Alex J. Severinsky	PAICE201.DIV. 2	3347

TITLE OF INVENTION: HYBRID VEHICLES

APPLN. TYPE	SMALL ENTITY	ISSUE FEE DUE	PUBLICATION FEE DUE	PREV. PAID ISSUE FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	NO	$1400	$300	$0	$1700	05/08/2007

EXAMINER	ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCLASS
DUNN, DAVID R	3636	180-065400

1. Change of correspondence address or indication of "Fee Address" (37 CFR 1.363).
☐ Change of correspondence address (or Change of Correspondence Address form PTO/SB/122) attached.
☐ "Fee Address" indication (or "Fee Address" Indication form PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 or more recent) attached. **Use of a Customer Number is required.**

2. For printing on the patent front page, list
(1) the names of up to 3 registered patent attorneys or agents OR, alternatively,
(2) the name of a single firm (having as a member a registered attorney or agent) and the names of up to 2 registered patent attorneys or agents. If no name is listed, no name will be printed.
1 Michael de Angeli
2 ______
3 ______

3. ASSIGNEE NAME AND RESIDENCE DATA TO BE PRINTED ON THE PATENT (print or type)

PLEASE NOTE: Unless an assignee is identified below, no assignee data will appear on the patent. If an assignee is identified below, the document has been filed for recordation as set forth in 37 CFR 3.11. Completion of this form is NOT a substitute for filing an assignment.

(A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE: PAICE LLC

(B) RESIDENCE: (CITY and STATE OR COUNTRY): Bonita Springs, FL

Please check the appropriate assignee category or categories (will not be printed on the patent): ☐ Individual ☒ Corporation or other private group entity ☐ Government

4a. The following fee(s) are submitted:
☒ Issue Fee
☒ Publication Fee (No small entity discount permitted)
☒ Advance Order - # of Copies 10

4b. Payment of Fee(s): **(Please first reapply any previously paid issue fee shown above)**
MdA ☒ A check is enclosed.
☒ Payment by credit card. Form PTO-2038 is attached.
☐ The Director is hereby authorized to charge the required fee(s), any deficiency, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account Number ______ (enclose an extra copy of this form).

5. **Change in Entity Status** (from status indicated above)
☐ a. Applicant claims SMALL ENTITY status. See 37 CFR 1.27. ☐ b. Applicant is no longer claiming SMALL ENTITY status. See 37 CFR 1.27(g)(2).

NOTE: The Issue Fee and Publication Fee (if required) will not be accepted from anyone other than the applicant; a registered attorney or agent; or the assignee or other party in interest as shown by the records of the United States Patent and Trademark Office.

02/16/2007 JADDO2 ... 01 FC:2501 1400.00 OP 02 FC:1504 300.00 OP 03 FC:8001 30.00 OP

Authorized Signature [signature] Date 2/13/07

Typed or printed name Michael de Angeli Registration No. 27,869

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.311. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 12 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re the Patent Application of	
Severinsky et al	Examiner: David Dunn
Serial No.: 11/229,762	Group Art Unit: 3616
Filed: January 13, 2006	Att. Dkt.: PAICE201.DIV.2
For: HYBRID VEHICLES	

Mail Stop Issue Fee
Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

RESPONSE TO NOTICE TO FILE CORRECTED APPLICATION PAPERS - NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE MAILED

Dear Sir:

In response to the Notice to File Corrected Application Papers mailed April 13, 2007 (copy attached), enclosed are the following:

____ 1. Properly signed Declaration and Power of Attorney

____ 2. Check for $, calculated as follows (all at small entity rate, a verified statement to establish that status having been previously submitted):

$ for basic filing fee

$ for late filing surcharge

$ for extra claims fee (independent, total claims)

$ for the search fee

$ examination fee

____ 3. Verified statement regarding small entity status.

__X__ 4. One (1) sheet formal drawing - clean copy OF Fig. 3.

____ 5. Claim listing including all claims.

This application has already been allowed and the issue fee paid. Early issue is earnestly solicited.

4/17/07
Dated

Respectfully submitted,

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835
401-423-3190

RECEIVED
APR 18 2007
CUSTOMER SERVICE
PUBLISHING DIVISION

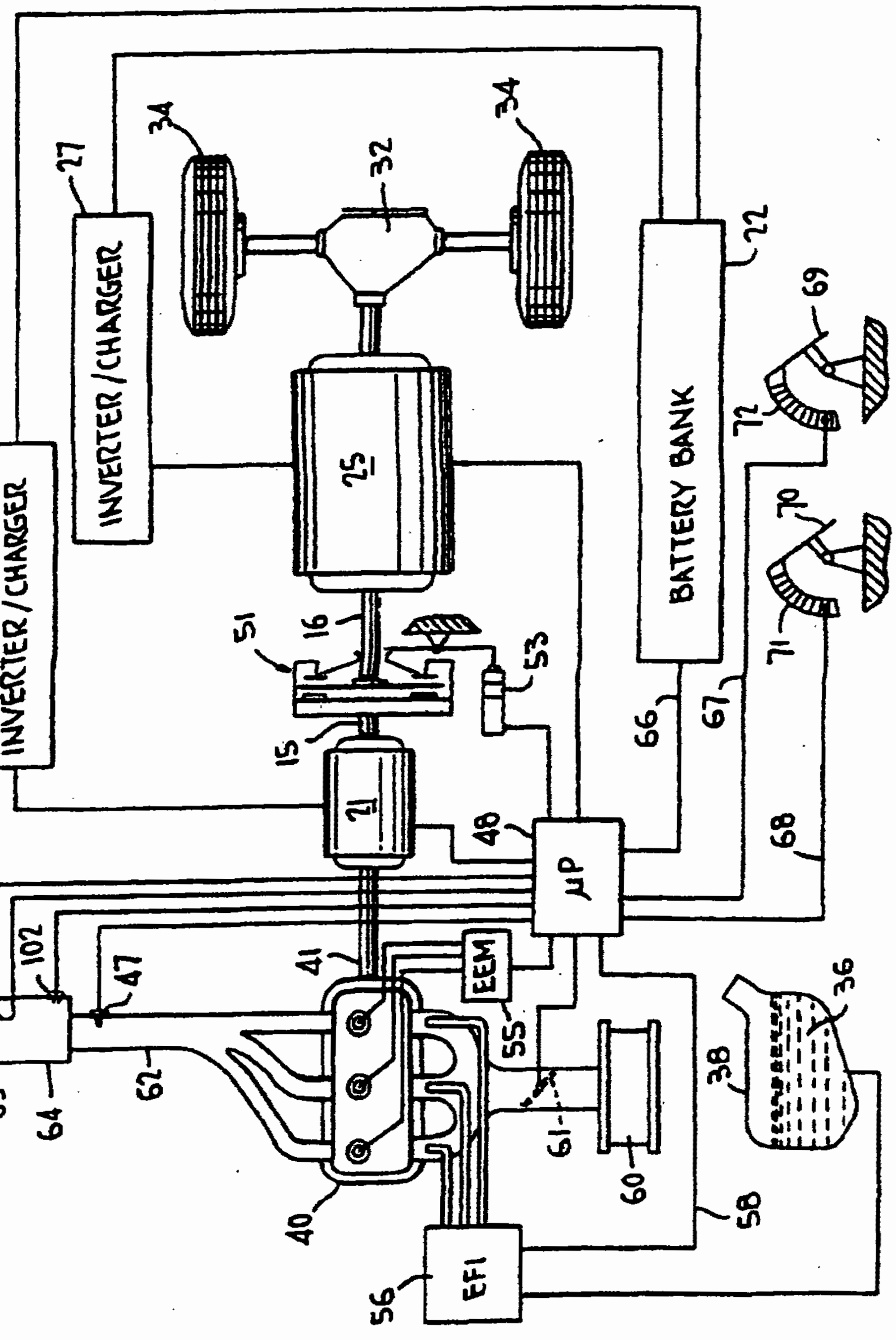

INVERTER / CHARGER
INVERTER / CHARGER
BATTERY BANK
25
21
μP
EEM
EFI
23
27
34
34
32
22
69
72
70
71
51
16
53
15
66
67
68
48
102
47
41
63
64
62
55
61
60
58
38
36
40
56

FIG. 3

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
United States Patent and Trademark Office
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450
www.uspto.gov

APPLICATION NO.	ISSUE DATE	PATENT NO.	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
11/229,762	07/03/2007	7237634	PAICE201.DIV. 2	3347

7590 06/13/2007

Michael de Angeli
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown, RI 02835

ISSUE NOTIFICATION

The projected patent number and issue date are specified above.

Determination of Patent Term Adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154 (b)
(application filed on or after May 29, 2000)

The Patent Term Adjustment is 0 day(s). Any patent to issue from the above-identified application will include an indication of the adjustment on the front page.

If a Continued Prosecution Application (CPA) was filed in the above-identified application, the filing date that determines Patent Term Adjustment is the filing date of the most recent CPA.

Applicant will be able to obtain more detailed information by accessing the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) WEB site (http://pair.uspto.gov).

Any questions regarding the Patent Term Extension or Adjustment determination should be directed to the Office of Patent Legal Administration at (571)-272-7702. Questions relating to issue and publication fee payments should be directed to the Customer Service Center of the Office of Patent Publication at (571)-272-4200.

APPLICANT(s) (Please see PAIR WEB site http://pair.uspto.gov for additional applicants):

Alex J. Severinsky, Washington, DC;
Theodore Louckes, Holly, MI;

IFW

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant: Severinsky et al	: Ser. No. 11/229,762
Patent No.: 7,237,634	: Filed: January 13, 2006
Issued: July 3, 2007	: Atty. Dkt.: PAICE-201.DIV.2
For: Hybrid Vehicles	

CHANGE OF CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS

Hon. Commissioner for Patents
P. O. Box 1450
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

Sir:

Effective November 15, 2011, kindly change the address for correspondence concerning this patent to the following:

Michael de Angeli
34 Court Street
Jamestown RI 02835

Tel: 401-423-3190
Fax: 401-423-3191
Email: Mdeangeli20@gmail.com

Thank you for your attention to this matter.

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: 11/15/11

Michael de Angeli
Reg. No. 27,869
60 Intrepid Lane
Jamestown RI 02835
401-423-3190

AO 120 (Rev. 08/10)

TO: Mail Stop 8 Director of the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, VA 22313-1450	**REPORT ON THE FILING OR DETERMINATION OF AN ACTION REGARDING A PATENT OR TRADEMARK**

In Compliance with 35 U.S.C. § 290 and/or 15 U.S.C. § 1116 you are hereby advised that a court action has been filed in the U.S. District Court for the District of Maryland Baltimore Division on the following

☐ Trademarks or ☑ Patents. (☐ the patent action involves 35 U.S.C. § 292.):

DOCKET NO.	DATE FILED	U.S. DISTRICT COURT
1:14-cv-00492-WDQ	2/19/2014	for the District of Maryland Baltimore Division

PLAINTIFF	DEFENDANT
Paice LLC and The Abell Foundation, Inc.	Ford Motor Company

PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO.	DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK	HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK
1 7,237,634	7/3/2007	Paice LLC and The Abell Foundation, Inc.
2 7,104,347	9/12/2006	Paice LLC and The Abell Foundation, Inc.
3 7,559,388	7/14/2009	Paice LLC and The Abell Foundation, Inc.
4 8,214,097	7/3/2012	Paice LLC and The Abell Foundation, Inc.
5 7,455,134	11/25/2008	Paice LLC and The Abell Foundation, Inc.

In the above—entitled case, the following patent(s)/ trademark(s) have been included:

DATE INCLUDED	INCLUDED BY ☐ Amendment ☐ Answer ☐ Cross Bill ☐ Other Pleading	
PATENT OR TRADEMARK NO.	**DATE OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK**	**HOLDER OF PATENT OR TRADEMARK**
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		

In the above—entitled case, the following decision has been rendered or judgement issued:

DECISION/JUDGEMENT

CLERK	(BY) DEPUTY CLERK	DATE

Copy 1—Upon initiation of action, mail this copy to Director Copy 3—Upon termination of action, mail this copy to Director
Copy 2—Upon filing document adding patent(s), mail this copy to Director Copy 4—Case file copy